

Contents

Unit 1		
Unit 2	Supporting the cor	mmunity 6
O I II -	Al-Adwaa Test 2	
Unit 3	Improving lives	
	Al-Adwaa Test 3	164
Revision 1:		167
	Al-Adwaa Test 1, 2 & 3	177
Unit 4	Making new friend	S
	Al-Adwaa Test 4	232
Unit 5	Communication	235
	Al-Adwaa Test 5	280
Unit 6	Learning from liter	rature 283
ALL	Al-Adwaa Test 6	329
Revision 2:	Units 4, 5 & 6	332
	Al-Adwaa Test 4, 5 & 6	344
Treasure Island		
Chapter 1	349	Chapter 6 368
Chapter 2	353	Video Scripts 372
Chapter 3	356	Open General Ex. Answers 374
Chapter 4		Check Points Answers 380
Chapter 5	365	Irregular Verbs 381





Getting away

Objectives

Reading : An article about ecotourism; two blogs about the summer holidays

Writing : An essay on ecotourism

Listening: A story about travelling and what happened when something went wrong

Speaking : Describe an event

Language: Past simple and past continuous

Life Skills : Collaboration



Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

conservationist (n)	الشخص المحافظ على البيئة	
ecotourism (n)	السياحة البيئية	
endangered (adj)	مهدد بالانقراض	
environment (n)	البيئة	
impact (n)	تأثير	
isolated (adj)	معزول	
lean (v) – ed	يميل/يتكأ	

materials (n)	مواد (خام)	
spicy (adj)	حريف/حار المذاق	
sustainable (adj)	مستدام	
swell up (v) – ed	يتورم	
trek (v) – ked (n)	يترجل/رحلة سيرًا على الأقدام	
unique (adj)	مميز/فريد من نوعه	

Write the word for several times to memorise it.

Vocabulary on Reading

along (adv)	بمحاذاة
avoid (v) – ed	يتجنب
beach (n)	شاطئ (بلاج)
coast (n)	ساحل
coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية
damage (v) – d (n)	يتلف/تلف/ضرر
design (v) – ed (n)	ممما/تصميم
destination (n)	جهة الوصول/وجهة السفر
develop (v) – ed	ينمى/يطور
dive (v) – d	يغطس

dragon (n)	تنین (حیوان أسطوری)
ecosystem (n)	نظام بيئى
educate (v) – d	يعلم/يدرس
exist (v) – ed	يوجد/يتواجد
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
giant (adj) (n)	عملاق
hill (n)	تل/هضبة
including (prep)	مشتملًا على
island (n)	جزيرة
lemur (n)	الليمور (حيوان يشبه القرود)

limited (adj)	مُــُقَيِّـد/محدود	safe (adj)	آمن
local (adj)	محلى	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية
natural (adj)	طبيعى	summarise (v) – d	يلخص
path (n)	مسار/ممر/طريق	teach (v)	يكدرس
pink (adj)	وردى اللون	tourism (n)	سياحة
protect (v) – ed	يحمى	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
provide (v) – d	يمد/يزود	volunteer (n) (v) – ed	متطوع/يتطوع
rebuild (v)	يعيد بناء	wall (n)	سور/حائط
remote (adj)	بعيد	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية

Vocabulary on Listening

alone (adj) (adv)	وحيد/وحيدًا	guide (n)	مرشد (سیاحی)
annoyed (adj)	مضجر/منزعج	insects (n)	حشرات
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء	luggage (n)	أمتعة السفر
biology (n)	علم الأحياء	internal flight (n)	رحلة طيران داخلية
bite (v)	يلدغ	mainly (adv)	بشكل رئيسى/أساسي
book (v) – ed	يحجز	observe (v) – d	يراقب/يرصد
centre (n)	مركز	orangutan (n)	إنسان الغاب
cook (n)	طباخ	pet (n)	حيوان أليف
disaster (n)	كارثة بري بيوا وخ	properly (adv)	بشكل مناسب
drop (v) – ped	بالمقطر المادة	rainforests (n)	الغابات المطيرة
feed (v)	يطعم راسي الاستان	sound (v) – ed	يبدو
fussy eater (n)	شخص صعب الإرضاء في الأكل	spider (n)	عنكبوت يرويان

Workbook Vocabulary

activity (n)	نشاط
attractions (n)	عوامل/مناطق جذب (سیاحی)
carnival (n)	مهرجان/كرنفال
council (n)	مجلس
cruise ships (n)	سفن رحلات سياحية
effect (n)	تاثير
encourage (v) – d	يشجع
plaza (n)	ميدان/ساحة

population (n)	سكان
repeat (v) – ed	يكرر/يعيد
residents (n)	سكان/مقيمون
special (adj)	خاص/مخصوص
sunbathe (v) – d	يأخذ حمام شمس
type (n)	نوع/نمط
victim (n)	ضحية

★ When I go to the desert, I like to trek into the mountains.

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

environmentally friendl	у
للبيئة	محافظ على البيئة/صديق
from all around the wor	ld
	من كل أنحاء العالم
do something different	يقوم بعمل شيء مختلف
go diving	يغطس
at least	على الأقل
catch a flight to	يركب طائرة إلى
find out about	يعرف/يكتشف عن
get back	يستعيد/يعود
go back to	يعود إلى
get to	يصل إلى
introduce to	يقدم ا

make notes	يدون ملاحظات
make dinner	يجهز العشاء
make sure	يتأكد
keep safe	يبقى آمنا
for example	على سبيل المثال
trek into*	يترجل إلى/يشق طريقه بصعوبة
go on holiday	ي دروب في إجازة
leaning out of	يميل إلى الخارج من
disappear from	يختفي من
educate about	يعلم عن
famous for	مشهور بـ

manage to	يتمكن من	give to	يعطى إلى
advantages of	مزایا لـ	important for/to	مهم لـ
blow off	يـُطير (شيئًا)	number of	عدد من
keep as	يحتفظ ب ک	popular with	معروف/مشهور بـ
impact on	تأثير على	stay in	يبقى في

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
conserve	يحفظ	conservationism conservationist بيئة	الحفاظ على البيئة الشخص المحافظ على ال	conservative م للتغيير	مُحافظ/مقاو
design	يصمم	design designer	تصمیم مُصَمِّم	designed	مُضمّم
develop	يطور/ينمى	development	تطوير/تنمية	developed/de	veloping متطور/نام
educate	يعلم	education educator	تعلیم معلم	educational educated	تعلیمی متعلم
endanger	يعرض للخطر	endangerment	التعريض للخطر	endangered ض	معرض للانقر
		environment environmentalist	بيئة مناصر لحماية البيئة	environmenta	بیئی ا
isolate	يعزل	isolation	عزل	isolated	معزول
limit	يحد	limit	حد	limited	محدود
protect	يحمى	protection	حماية/وقاية	protective	واقٍ
spice	يتبل	spice	توابل/بهارات	داق spicy	حريف/حار الد
sustain	يحافظ على	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
swell	يتورم	swelling	تورم	swollen	متورم
volunteer	يتطوع	voluntourist/volunto voluntarism	متطوع العمل التطوعي	voluntary	تطوعي

We should protect our country to stay strong.
 The country needs our protection to stay strong.
 We should think of all the protective methods for our country.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Meaning

vvoru	realing	
avoid*	يتجنب	
develop	يطور	
exist	يوجد/يتواجد	
famous	مشمور	
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	
giant	عملاق	
limited	محدود	
natural	طبيعى	
remote	بعيد	
sustainable	مستدام ف	
uniaue 🚜	ممیز/فرید من نو	

المرادف Synonym

avert/stay away from
promote/progress/
flourish/prosper
remain/stay
well-known/celebrated
luckily/happily
colossal/gigantic
restricted/definite
normal/ordinary
distant/faraway
continual/lasting/
permanent
exceptional/special

المضاد Antonym

يواجه	face/seek
يتدهور/يقل	decline/decrease
يختفي/يرحل	vanish/depart
غير معروف/عاد:	unknown/ordinary
لسوء الحظ İly	unfortunately/unluck
ضئيل الحجم	tiny/minute
مطلق/بلا قيود	unrestricted/unlimited
غیر عادی	abnormal/unnatural
قريب	near/close
able	temporary/unsustain
مؤق <i>ت</i>	
عادى	normal/ordinary

I think number one is (c).

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We should all work together to our environment.
 - a) predict
- b) endanger
- c) protect
- d) destroy
- It is obvious that smoking has a very badon our health.
 - a) contact
- b) cause
- c) product
- d) impact
- 3 I like to go to Sharm El-Sheikh to see the of the Red Sea.
 - a) coral reefs
- b) colour reefs
- c) coral beefs
- d) moral reefs
- 4 When I was in Khan El-Khalili, I was very as I lost my money and didn't buy any souvenirs.
 - a) delighted
- b) excited
- c) annoyed
- d) annoying
- 5 We should encourage our children to know everything about our areas in the desert and Upper Egypt.
 - a) clear
- b) isolated
- c) limited
- d) sustainable



Check the answers at the end of the book-

Ecotourism(1) - is this the future?

What is ecotourism?

Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered⁽²⁾ and isolated⁽³⁾. The holidays are designed to have a limited impact⁽⁴⁾ on the local environment and to educate tourists about conservation.

Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials. When tourists go diving, they are taught how to avoid damaging the fish and keeping the special coral reefs safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem⁽⁵⁾ (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist⁽⁶⁾ anywhere else in the world. Lemurs, for example, only live in Madagascar.









- السياحة البيئية (1)
- مهدد بالخطر (2)
- معزول (3)
- تأثير محدود (4)
- النظام البيئي (5)
- تتواجد (6)
- فريد (7)
- مستدام (8)
- المكان المقصود/مقصد (9)
- الحياة البرية (10)

The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the unique⁽⁷⁾ animals, such as the giant turtles which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is sustainable⁽⁸⁾. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism destination⁽⁹⁾. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife⁽¹⁰⁾, including the Komodo dragon, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

How can you encourage ecotourism without harming the places people visit?

Listening Text

What do you know about orangutans?



علم الأحياء (1)

إنسان الغاب (2)

الغابات المطيرة (3)

امتعة (4)

منزعج (5)

قد م (6)

ترجئل (7)

يشكل مناسب (8)

Luca : Last summer, I decided not to go on holiday to Greece with

my friends, but to do something different.

Klara: So, where did you go?

: Well, as I am studying biology⁽¹⁾, I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the orangutans⁽²⁾ there. So, I booked a holiday with an eco-tourism company and

went to Borneo.

Klara: What was it like?

A bit of disaster although I did love the rainforests⁽³⁾. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an internal flight to Borneo. But my luggage⁽⁴⁾ never arrived, so I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre. And while I was leaning out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera!

Klara: Oh, no! Did you manage to get it back?

Luca: No way! The river is really deep, so I just had to leave it. But I was very annoyed⁽⁵⁾. But at least, I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre, so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the conservationists are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide introduced⁽⁶⁾ us to the people working there. And then, we had dinner.

Klara: What was the food like?

Luca: It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very spicy. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish, though. As I was so hungry.

*Well, I am glad to hear you're not such a fussy eater anymore. What did you do every day?

:We got up at about six every morning as that is when the sun rises, had breakfast and then trekked⁽⁷⁾ into the forest to learn about orangutans from the people who were looking after them.

Klara: Did you feed them?

Luca: No, they're wild animals not pets. We just observe them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a spider bit me while I was sleeping and my arm swelled up.

Klara: So, what happened?

Luca: I had to go to a hospital, but as the nearest hospital was 200 kilometres away, I had to go by a helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre. But as soon as I got back, I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook, he didn't clean the fish properly (8) and everybody was sick. I am staying at

What are the lessons learned from Luca's holiday?

Workbook Text

A popular problem!

Venice is famous for being a city with many canals⁽¹⁾, colourful carnivals⁽²⁾, amazing plazas⁽³⁾ and historic buildings. However, the city is a victim of its own beauty. Venice has a population of only 55,000 but the city is visited by twenty million tourists every year. This tourism creates⁽⁴⁾ a lot of jobs for the local population, but also causes⁽⁵⁾ many problems.

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day enjoy riding on boats along the canals, but the large cruise ships⁽⁶⁾ can damage the historic buildings. The narrow⁽⁷⁾ streets can be very crowded⁽⁸⁾ and it is difficult for local people to move around the city.

قنوات مائية (1)

كرنفالات (2)

ساحات عامة (3)

يخلق (4)

يسبب (5)

سفن سياحية (6)

ضيق (7)

مزىحم (8)

سكان (9)

The local council are trying to find a solution which keeps both the tourists and local residents⁽⁹⁾ happy. They are also trying to encourage tourists to visit other beautiful sites around Venice.

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What a contribution for Dr Zewail in the field of science and medicine!

a) familiar

- b) unique
- c) limited
- d) greed
- 2 We should book early as there are only a/annumber of tickets available.

a) unlimited

- b) great
- c) limited
- d) huge

3 I'd like to study living things. I'd like to be a/an

- a) biologist
- b) geologist
- c) archaeologist
- d) botanist

4 Father! Let me my friend Mohamed to you.

- a) produce
- b) present
- c) conclude
- d) introduce

5 I couldn't get on the bus as it was very

- a) narrow
- b) crowded
- c) empty
- d) sustainable



Check the answers at the end of the book.

?

- a) noun
- b) verb

- c) adverb
- d) adjective

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

المحافظة على البيئة

conservation

the protection of natural things such as animals, plants, forests, etc. to prevent them from being spoiled or destroyed

ecotourism

السياحة البيئية

the business of organising holidays to faraway natural areas, where people can visit and learn about the area in a way that will not hurt the environment

- endangered

مهدد بالانقراض/معرض للخطر

• an endangered animal, bird, etc. is one that may soon no longer exist because there are so few of them

environment

. بيئة

the people and things that are around you in your life, for example the buildings you use, the people you live or work with, and the general situation you are in

impact

۔ تأثیر

the effect or influence that an event, situation, etc. has on someone or something

_ lean

يميل/يتكأ

to move or bend your body in a particular direction

materials

مواد (خام)

solid substances such as wood, plastic or metal

spicy

حار

the spicy food that is spicy and has a pleasantly strong taste, and gives you a pleasant burning feeling in your mouth - sustainable

مستدام

able to continue without causing damage to the environment

_ swell up

يتورم

• to become larger and rounder than normal – usually related to parts of the body

_ trek

يترجل/يشق طريقه يصعوبة

to go on a difficult journey especially on foot

_ unique

مميز/غريد من نوعه

being the only one of its kind

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning

beach
(الجزء الرملى عند حافة البحر)
shore

The boat was about a mile from the shore when the engine suddenly stopped.

coast

Marina is located on the North Coast of Egypt.

They walked home along the river bank.

souvenir هدية تذكارية l bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a souvenir of Paris.

present

prize

I gave her a very special present for her birthday.

هدية (في عيد ميلاد أو مناسبة)

Scientists from Oxford shared the Nobel Prize for Medicine in 1945.

some parents give their children rewards for passing exams.

include يشمل/يتضمن (بعض المكونات) وليس كـل المكـونات - يأتى قبلها الكل وبعدها الجزء،			
يحتوى على شيء بداخله contain	The thieves stole a purse containing banknotes,		
consist of يتكون من (كل المكونات الأساسية)	The buffet consisted of several different Indian dishes.		
يعلم (شخص/شيء)	Mr. Reda teaches us English.		
العلم شيء learn	My son has learnt many languages abroad.		
teach/learn (how) to + inf.	I have taught my children (how) to play the piano. My children learnt (how) to play the piano.		
endangered (adj.) مهدد بالانقراض	Many rare animals are endangered nowadays.		
فی خطر in danger	Many animals are in danger nowadays.		
endanger (v) يعرض للخطر	Smoking endangers our health.		
sound (v) + adjective عبدو = appear/seem + adjective	He sounds/appears/seems happy today.		
sound (n) صوت/ضجة/حس	I tried to open the door without sound as my father was asleep.		
sound (adj.) سليم/معقول	I was happy to see that my mother was in a sound state of health. He always gives me some sound advice.		
drop + object			
- يسقط، أو يرمى شىء - يخفض - ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات - ينسقط، من قائمة/يحذف	 While I was walking, I dropped my mobile. The government should drop the prices. Can you drop me off here, please? It was not good to drop my name from the guest list. 		
لا يأتي بعدها مفعول (يقع/يسقط) fall	While I was walking, I fell and broke my leg.		

In the end, = Finally, في النماية	In the end, the problem was solved by our great teacher.		
At the end of + noun, نى نماية شيء	At the end of the lesson, the teacher asked us some questions.		
By the end of + noun, قبل نهایة شیء	By the end of the year, we will have finished our study.		
everyday + noun صفة بمعنى يومى (كلمة واحدة)	Everyone should work hard to provide his everyday needs.		
every day ظرف بمعنی کل یوم (کلمتین منفصلتین)	Students go to school every day except for Fridays.		
arrive in يصل إلى مكان كبير (مدينة/دولة/قارة). arrive at يصل إلى مكان صغير/محدد	He arrived in Alexandria yesterday. He arrived at Alexandria airport yesterday.		
reach + object یصل إلى (بدون حرف جر).	He reached the airport early yesterday.		
get to يصــل إلى (مكـان صغيراًو كبير).	> They got to Cairo yesterday.		
alone (adj) (adv) بمفرده/منفردًا (صفة/ظرف).	He carried the luggage alone.		
lonely (adj) وحيدًا (يشعر بالوحدة) (صفة).	Despite his friends, he feels lonely.		
lone	The lone survivor of the accident told us what happend.		
isolated منعزل/معزول	The area is extremely isolated because of the hills that surround it.		
insulated . معزول (حراریـُـًا/عن الکھریاء)	Houses in very hot or cold areas should be wel		

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials. ن الممكن حذف V. to be وضمير الوصل والإبقاء على التصريف الثالث من الفعل في صيغة المبنى للمجمول. حيث إن
يل الجعلة: in hotels (which/that) are built of environmentally
The plants that live there don't exist anywhere else in the world.
anywhere تأتى في الجملة المنفية بدلًا من كلمة somewhere التي تأتى في الجملة المثبتة.
Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife, can only be found here.
كلمة Much of تأتى قبل الكلمات غير المعدودة (اسماء الكمية) مثل wildlife.
I decided not to go on holiday to Greece with my friends
الفعل decide يأتى بعده .to + inf في حالة الإثبات أو .not to + inf في حالة النفي.
تستخدم كلمة a bit قبل الأسماء كجزء (partitive) بمعنى قليل أو بعض من.
It took two days to get to the centre,
لاحظ استخدام .take + time + to + inf بمعنى يستغرقلكى
المة sounded really exciting. اتاتي كفعل بمعنى (يبدو) يتبعه صفة مثل الفعل sounded really exciting.
When we arrived, the guide introduced us to the people working there.
من الممكن حذف ضمير الوصل وإضافة ing للفعل في حالة المبنى للمعلوم لأن أصل الجملة: the people who work there.

I am staying at home this summer. يستخدم المضارع المستمر (am/is/are + v.+ ing) للتعبير عن أحداث تم الترتيب لها في المستقبل، They are taught how to avoid damaging the fish and keeping the special coral reefs safe. الفعل avoid بمعنى يتجنب يتبع بـ avoid ب v - لاحظ هنا استخدام .how to + inf كيفية القيام بالفعل بعد كلمة teach - لاحظ أيضا ان ما بعد and يكون نفس شكل ما قبلما - لاحظ ليضا استخدام keep + object + adjectivel did love the rainforests. يعكن استخدام ٧, to do ليعلن الأصلى للجملة للتوكيد. Let's check our new vocabularu! Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 I like walking on the of the Nile with my friends when the sun sets. d) bank c) coast b) beach a) shore 2 The list of the players doesn't my name. I am so disappointed. d) enclose c) consist b) include a) contain 3 I took my son in my car andhim in front of school and went to work. d) dropped c) bit b) threw a) fell 4 The hole that we dugabout 20 meters deep. d) came b) arrived c) got a) reached 5 The police offered a/anfor those who helped them to find the criminal. d) present c) reward b) award a) prize



Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary Exercises

O F	Rem	embering Understanding	Applying Analysing	Evaluating Creating		
٠,	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:					
1	Cu and correct allswer from a, b, c or a.					
	(Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary					
	1	Good citizens ar	e those who are ready	to their cou	intry all their line	
		a) predict	b) protect	c) inspect	d) provent	
	2	There are many	animals in the	world which we ne	ed to save	
			ammas III (II)	e world, writer we rie	ed to save,	
		a) endangered	h) isolated	c) inculated	إدارة الواسطى التعليمية ٢٠٢٢	
н	3	I think this webs	b) isolated ite willyou w	ith the information v	ouwant	
		a) give	b) agree	c) provide	d) andanger	
	4	Most scientists a	gree that much	is affected by hun	nan activities	
			DI WIIGHTO		- 1	
4	5	Nowadays, most	t people only have a/a	an amount	of free time as the	
		work hard to live	well.	arr	or nee time as they	
J,		a) unlimited	b) limit	c) lot of	d) limited	
	6	ir is very imports	ant for all of us to find	solutions for	the problems of our	
		country.				
	_	a) sustainable	b) terrible	c) insulated	d) leaning	
	7	iviv little protner	IS a eater He	doesn't like to eat me	n man a Alla tara a	
D.)		a) voluntary	nrotected	e) fuccy	. 1)	
. 1	8					
N		a) insulated	b) limited	c) excited	d) isolated	
١,	9	Each person's fin	gerprints are		كفر صقر بنات - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢	
	10	a) the same	b) limited gerprints are b) unique of the new job is be	c) typical	d) similar	
	10		of the new job is ha	aving a respectable s	alary with many	
M		other perients.				
N .	1-4	a) disadvantages	b) demerits	c) productions	d) attractions	
1	1 1	Luxor and Aswan	have always been a	for most tour	ists who visit Egypt.	
		a) acstill	UI COUSELVAHON	CI IOCation	.11\ 1\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	
1		her mobile.	out of the window	watching the crowd	when she dropped	
		a) leaning	h) swalling	a) = 44°		
1	13	Passengers travel	b) swelling ling on the night	c) getting	d) making	
		2 hours earlier.	ing on the riight	snould check in a	at the airport	
Þ			la) tuale			
1	4	a) flight	b) trek	c) journey	d) carnival	
•	-8"	a) Conversations	esting against the plan	to destroy parts of t		
1	5	al Conversations	Conservationists	CI (Onservations	As an analysis of the second s	
1		a) trekked	ous friends to b) swelled	take us all in his car	for free.	
		a) lickkeu	W) SWEIIEU	c) volunteered	d) forced	

16	6is all the animals and plant	s that exist in a	a place.	الدارة العرج التعليمية ٢٠٠٠		
	a) Ecosystem b) Economics	c) Biolog	v d) Population		
17	The president's speech made a great on all the attendants.					
	لدارة الشامط التعليمية - القليومية ٢٠٣٠					
	a) act b) fact	c) react	d) impact		
18	8 After her husband's death, she cried			with tears.		
	a) swelled b) swallowed					
19	9 The explorers spent the day					
	a) diving b) trekking					
20						
1	natural environment.			الدارة ندع معادى * * ، *		
1	a) Ecosystem b) Ecotourism	c) Conve	rsation d) Education		
(Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Deriv	rativas Synony	me & Antonya	ns		
6	Expressions, faioms, Prepositions, Den	ratives, Syllolly	ins a Antonyn			
2	21 Finally, I managed to the a	-		Aswan.		
	a) arrive inb) reach to) get at		
	22 These statues are made of ma	terials. We mu	stn't pollute o	our environment.		
).)	a) friendly environmentally	b) enviro	nmentally frie	endly		
	c) unfriendly environmentally	d) non-e	nvironmental	ly friendly		
23	1 was climbing to the top of a hill w					
	a) on b) of	-,	d) out		
24	24 The lesson me two hours t					
	a) makes b) takes	c) spend) lasts		
2	My mother is the best one to	meals for u	is. She is my fa	avourite cook.		
8	a) have b) eat	c) repair		l) make		
20	Thechecked the region we	ell and decided	tnat the wild	life there needed		
	more attention. a) conserve b) conservationis	el conco	ryationist o	1) conservative		
	a) conserve b) conservations	of the Five	ntions:	i) conservative		
C	hoose the Two correct answers	Of the five t	perons.	eact tham		
2	27 Many kids of animals are	lowadays and	we must prot	ect them.		
1	a) endangered b) dangerous) danger	oung	e) iii daiigeious		
2	28 I had been taught pictures a) draw b) how to draw	to drawing	d) to drawin	ng e) to draw		
)	a) draw b) how to draw lt was a unique achievement as no	one has ever	won the chan	poionship five		
2	29 It was a unique achievement as no times before. The synonyms of the	word "unique"	'are	and		
		overntional	d) special	e) restricted		
	a) close b) normal	desert area T	he antonyms	of the word		
3	a) close b) Horrial The helicopter crashed in a remote	uesert area. I	ne untonymis	o, the fold		
	"remote" areand	· ·) unknown	d) close	e) near		
	a) abnormal b) temporary	-) unknown				
			Unit 1	Lessons 1 & 2 21		



Lessons 1 & 2



Language

1 The Past Simple Tense

Present Future TIMELINE Past Form Positive التصريف الثاني للفعل 🕨 Subject •I/He/They attended the party yesterday. Negative Subject ▶ didn't ▶ inf. • I/He/They didn't study their lessons well. Question Wh-word ▶ did ▶ subject ▶ inf.? What did you buy yesterday? Did ▶ subject ▶ inf.? Did he buy a new car? Passive

Object ▶ was/were ▶ P.P.

• The police arrested the criminal.

(Active)

The criminal was arrested.

(Passive)

For completed actions in the past:

أفعال اكتملت في الماضي.

She studied all her lessons yesterday.

For repeated actions or habits in the past:

أحداث متكررة أو عادات في الماضي.

When he was in Alexandria, he went to the beach every day.

For retelling situations or stories:

سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي.

Yesterday, I went out to the café, then I ordered a cup of coffee.

For actions which happened immediately one after the other:

للأحداث التي حدثت تباعًا واحدًا تلو الآخر (بدون فارق زمني)

First, he paid the money, then he received his new mobile.

Usage الاستخدام

Key words ,,

... ago just now

from (2000 to 2006) How long ago

once the other day

in + (2000)

in the past
in the ancient times
once upon a time

I ate ten minutes ago.

Important Notes



	التعبيرعن العادات في الماضي
عله الآن. Subject + used to + inf.	اعتاد على فعل الشيء في الماضي ولم يعد يه
He used to smoke a lot, but now he doesn't.	<u> </u>
مضارع بسیط Subject + no longer + present simple	لم يعد
He no longer smokes a lot.	
Subject + negative form + any longer/anymore	لم يعد
He doesn't smoke a lot any longer/anymore.	
(lt was + (someone's/ صفة ملكية) + habit to + inf.	لقد كانت عادة شخص
It was his habit to smoke a lot.	
(Subject + (was/were) + in the habit of + (v-ing)	كانت لدى عادة
He was in the habit of smoking a lot.	
(Subject + got into the habit of + (v-ing)	لقد انخرط في عادة الـ
He got into the habit of smoking a lot.	
(Subject + (was/were/got) + used to + (v-ing)	كان معتادًا على
He was/got used to smoking a lot.	
ا + (ضمير مفعول/for + (someone + معتاد (tt was + habitual + for + (someone	كان من المعتاد لـ أن
It was habitual for him to smoke a lot.	

Subject + didn't use to + inf.

لم يكن معتادًا على فعل شيء ولكنه يفعله الآن.

He never used to sleep early.

(am/is/are)

معتاد على عمل شيء. (للتعبير عن عادة في الحاضر)

Subject + (get) used to + (v-ing) OR (Noun) OR (Pronoun) (become)

- She (is/gets/becomes) used to cleaning her house alone.
- I am used to the noise in my street.
- It is very cold here, but I am used to it.

Got it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- It was my father's habit the windows before sleeping.

a) to shutting

b) shut

c) to shut

d) shutting

الإجابة هي (c) لأن بعد هذه العبارة يأتي .to + inf.



used to + inf. Object + (be) used for + (v-ing) - تأتي Used بمعنى «يستخدم لـ» (في المبنى للمجهول).

- This camera is used to take photographs.
- This camera is used for taking photographs.

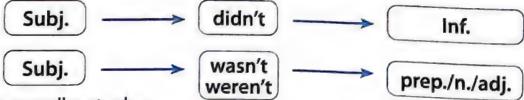
Did + Subj. + use to + inf.?

- صيغة السؤال في used to

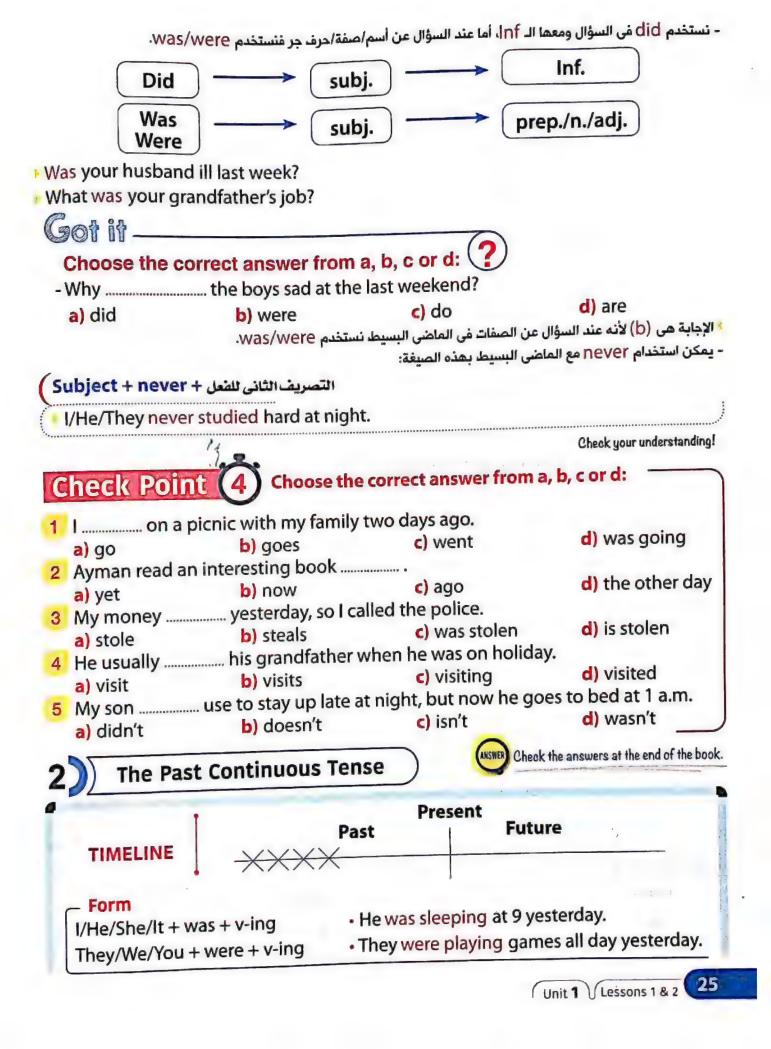
Question word + did + subj. + use to + inf.?

Where did you use to live? Did you use to sleep early?

- تستخدم didn't لنفي الفعل ويأتي بعدها الـ .inf، أما مع الاسم/صفة/حرف جر فنستخدم wasn't/weren't



- I didn't sleep well yesterday.
- We weren't tired, so we played again.



Negative

I/He/She/It + wasn't + v-ing

· I wasn't working when you phoned me.

They/We/You + weren't + v-ing

• My parents weren't watching TV when the light went out.

Interrogative

Was/Were + subject + v-ing?

- · Was Samy having a shower when they came?
- Were you playing when it rained?

Wh-word + was/were + subject + v-ing?

• Where were you playing yesterday morning?

Passive

Usage

الاستخدام

Object + was/were + being + P.P.

· He was watching a football match.

(Active)

= A football match was being watched.

(Passive)

To show that an action was in progress at a certain time.

حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت محدد.

At 6 o'clock yesterday, I was looking at the orangutans.

To show that a shorter action happened during another longer action. (with the past simple) حدث کان مستمرًّا وقطعه حدث آخر.

I was leaning out of the boat when I dropped my camera.

To describe two actions that were in progress at the same time.

للتعبير عن حدثين مستمرين في نفس الوقت دون قاطع.

Just as I was sleeping, my father was doing his work.

To describe the event in progress, at sometime between its beginning and its end. حدث کان مستمرًا فی وقت ما بین بدایته ونمایته.

From nine to eleven yesterday, I was writing some important essays.

Key words 🕠

while

بينما

when

for all

as

بيئما

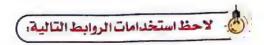
just as

(في اللحظة التي)

all (day, night,)

طوال (مدة زمنية في الماضي)

Now, do you know when we use the past continuous tense? And how do we link it with the past simple tense?



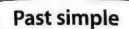
- حدثان قطع أحدهما الآخر. (الأحدث قطع الحدث الأقدم الذي بدء أولاً).



Past continuous

Past simple

While he was playing the game, it rained.



while/as/just as/when

Past continuous

The phone rang while he was studying his lessons.

- حدثان في نفس الوقت بدون قاطع.

While/As/Just as/When

Past continuous

Past continuous

While I was studying my lessons, my sister was watching TV.

Past continuous

while/as/just as/when

Past continuous

He was eating his food while his mother was ironing his clothes.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My father at 5 o'clock yesterday.
 - a) sleeps
- b) sleeping
- c) was sleeping
- d) had slept
- 2 While Nabil was running, he to the ground.
 - a) falls
- b) fell

- c) was falling
- d) fall
- 3 As I was watching TV, my wife our lunch.
 - a) was cooked
- b) cooks
- c) is cooking
- d) was cooking
- When Rana came home, her sister the dishes.
 - a) was washed
- b) is washing
- c) was washing
- d) has washed
- 5 From 10 to 12 last Friday, an important match
 - a) was watching
 - c) was watched

- b) had watched
- d) was being watched



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2



Language Exercises

Re	me	mbering • Understanding	Applying Analysing E	Evaluating O Creating	
Ch	00	se the correct an	swer from a, b, c or d	•	
	1	They studied the	English Literature	2006.	
		a) since	b) at	c) in	d) for
	2	Sameer	b) at a call from his friend ye	esterday.	
		a) receives	b) is received	c) received	d) was receiving
	3	My mother never	r let my little brother p	lav while food	
			,		مدرسة بني محمد سلطان - العنيا٢٠٢٠
		a) is cooking		b) is being cooke	
		c) was cooking		d) was being coo	
	4	I was having my I	lunch when the phone	1	
		a) ring	b) had rung	c) was rung	d) rang
	5	Ahmed was writing	ng a letter while his br	others TV.	-,9
		a) were watching	b) watched	c) were watched	d) are watching
	6	I used my brothe	r's camera while mine		a, are watering
		a) is repaired			ed
		c) was repairing		d) was being repa	
	7	Whatyou	ı doing when the light	went out last night?	iii Cu
D.		a) was	b) were	c) are	d) have
1	8	My son w	atch Egyptian movies,	but now he does.	
		a) used to	b) didn't use to	c) wasn't used to	d) used to not
9	9	The underground	metro is used to	people to their de	stinations
		a) carry	b) carrying	c) carries	d) carried
1	0	Did your mother.	to cook the foo	od well?	u) carried
		a) used	b) use	c) using	d) usage
1 1	1	I was doir	ng my homework, my l	brother was playing co	mnuter games
		a) Before	D) Arter	c) During	d) While
12	2	My brother	his lessons when he	heard a cry in the stre	et
		a) studied	b) studying	c) was studying	d) had studied
13	3	Yousef sle	eps early as he used to	when he was young	,
		a) used to	b) is used to	c) no longer	d) any langer
14	4	When I went to my	y friend's home, he	lunch and asked	me to chare him
		a) had	nad nad	c) is having	all and a language
15)	wniie we	i v, my cousin suadeni	V arrived	
		a) watching	b) are watching	c) were watching	d) watched
16	6	lunch at h	ome yesterday?		مدرسة الكوسد - اداره العينره - الاس
		a) Had to		- 1 1/	d) Do you have

	17	Nesmalate when she was young.	She is no longer no	إدارة القناطر - القليوبية ٢٠٢٢ . W.
1		a) usually sleeps	b) is used to sleep	oing
ļ		used to sleep d) is usually sleeping		
2	18	"He doesn't smoke heavily any longer." I m	ean that he	مدرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات٢٠٢
0		a) used to be a heavy smoker	b) smokes heavily	1
ĺ		c) no longer smokes	d) didn't use to sr	noke
l	19	I became usedup in the early mor	ning.	
		a) get b) to get		d) to be got
	20	When I reached home, I immediately		
ı		a) was having b) had had	c) had	d) have
Ą	21	A: Did you hear what she said?		
		B: No, I to do something else.		
100		a) was planned b) plan	c) have planned	d) was planning
	22	Did you see that? The car by the h		
Y		a) was chasing	b) was being cha	sed
		c) will be chased	d) has been chase	ed
ľ	23	The television was on, but nobody	it.	
ľ		a) is watching b) was watching	c) has watched	d) was watched
	24	He save money. Now, he has a lot	of money in his bar	nk account.
ا		a) used to b) didn't use to	c) uses to	d) is used to
	25	Solyman didn't use to sleep early. This me	eans	
۱		a) he sleeps early now	b) he doesn't slee	ep early now
Į		he never sleeps now	d) he is sleeping	
	26	During the football match, Hossam broke	his leg. This means	*************
		a) his leg was broken after the match	b) he was a fan w	atching the match
١		-) he wasn't interested in the match	d) he was a playe	er in the match
	27	I was eating my lunch when my father ran	g the doorbell. This	means that ringing
		the bell happened		
		a) after my lunch	b) during my lun	
ì		c) before my lunch	d) as soon as my	lunch
1	28	He used to eat spicy food. This means he	***************************************	
¢		a) likes it now	b) doesn't like it	
	3	c) no longer liked it	d) no longer like	IT
100	29	Which one of the following sentences is o	correct?	
-	4	a) She didn't met her friends yesterday.	p) He alan i got i	ny e-mail last week.
		c) I used to going to the club on Fridays.	d) We didn't go	out last night.
	30	Which of the following isn't correct?		
	3	a) Did you use to sleep early?		
	9	b) I was watching the match when you c	alled.	
	200	c) Did you liked my present?		
		d) I used to study my lessons at night.		

Test Yourself "20





Unit 1

Lessons 1 & 2

Ren	nembering	Understanding	Anniving	Analyzina	Evaluating	Creating	
	CHOOS	se the correc	t answer f	rom a, b	o, c or d:		
		of Eg				llion.	
-	a) re	esidents	h) pol	lution	[0 20 111	nonulation	d) peoples
1 2	2 The	re were a lot	of (u	iution	+ + + - + +	orrible accide	ent on the highway.
8	a) si	urvivors	ا	as a resu	iit of the t	errible accide	int of the nighway.
3	A lo	t of the build	in as in sec	ims	C)	criminais	d) inhabitants
	a) re	shuilt	ings in oui	city had	to be	arter the	= 1992 earthquake.
4	We	should prote	D) dar	naged	C)	leaned	d) reflected
	ala	should protect	ct the natu	ıral envir	onment	the Re	ed Sea coast.
	i Wa	don't want to	b) Ion	g	c)	along	d) longer
		o) Jilaw Tilon	interfere i	n the	affai	of oth شئون rs	er countries
6	You	don't have t	b) insi	de	c)	internal	d) privacy
1	104	don t nave to	pay for yo	ur fliahts	s: they're	in the	price of your holid-
	4/ 6	Jilailleu	D) con	cluded		enclosed	d) included
15	i use	ed to be cleve	r at	which	made my	teacher call r	ne "The doctor of
1 24	CITC I	ciass.					
Ι,	a) go	eology	b) biol	ogy	c)	anthropolog	d) sociology
(O.)	104	mast get up	earry II you	i want to	\ \	our flight to i	andan
-01	4 / 111	1122	b) mai	(e	c)	catch	d) loso
9	VVIII	e my son was	s trying to	catch the	e bus he	· his nh	one
* 4	a) W	as gropping	b) dro	oped	c)	has dropped	المرابع والمرابع
10	Oui	iditeli	while I wa	as doing	my school	homework	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	a) w	as preparing as being prep			b)	is prepared	
	C) Wa	as being prep	ared		d)	has been pre	pared
11	wnii	e I was drivin	g along th	is mornii	na. l	about wha	pared at they had said.
	a) vv	as trilliking	D) thou	Jnpi	c)	had thought	d) am thinking
12	Inev	er to	play any n	nusical ir	nstrument	as a child.	
1	a) wa	as learned	b) leari	nt	c)	have learnt	d) was learning
13	Hast	watched an I	Egyptian fi	lm	I was 2	5 years old.	, cras realiting
1	a) sir	ice	b) whil	e	c) 1	when	d) after
14	I cou	ldn't go out v	vith my frie	ends as I	n	y mother wit	d) after th the housework.
	4/110	ibeu	UI Was	nemma	₽	1 lad bee	
15	Work	ing till 10 p.n	n. isn't a pr	oblem. I	la	ite. I did it in i	d) help ny last job, too.
	u) an	i used to mins	illig		D)	used to finish	
	c) use	ed to be finish	ning		d)	have used to	£:
16	Inol	onger sleep la	ate as I	whe	en I was st	ill a young m	an.
2 2	al am	used	b) am u	ised to	c) i	used	d) used to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Motor cars are highly desirable for obvious reasons. We should recognise this and adjust ourselves to accept this as a must. It is no use complaining and attacking the motorists; most of us are motorists. It is nonsense⁽¹⁾ to say that the countryside is polluted and cities and towns are spoilt as a result of traffic. If cars were banned, the alternative⁽²⁾ is the return to the isolated communities of the past. Also, motorists make possible huge industries all over the world and provide employment to millions of workers and employees. Making stricter⁽³⁾ laws is not the best solution. The best solution is to provide better road facilities. One-way streets in big cities, towns and roads can better⁽⁴⁾ conditions. There would be a world-wide network for motorways. The use of multi-storey and underground car parks can do wonders. Possible introduction of small electric cars for cities in the future and cars on rails is what designers are planning for tomorrow's world.

Again, exceeding⁽⁵⁾ speed limits should be too severe⁽⁶⁾ and more costly to reduce the annual toll of human life. Some governments are to blame because motorists pay vast sums on road tax, purchase tax, oil tax, etc. But it is a pity that only a small proportion⁽⁷⁾ of the money paid is used to improve road conditions.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

.no	ose the correct difamer from a by co.	
1	a) are of no use c) are the result of strict laws	b) have beneficial effect d) are undesirable for obvious reasons
	 a) is the only alternative b) brings about primitive and isolated c) will cost huge sums of money d) needs stricter laws 	d communities
	a) to improve road conditions	b) to solve the accident problem d) to plan for tomorrow's world
4	Motor cars are highly desirable. This n a) they have high desire b) people very much like to have cars	

d) motor cars are to blame for the accident problem

c) people very much dislike cars

(1) لا شيء (2) مدا

(6) شدید/قاس



(2) بديل

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2

	The underlined word "toll" in the passage means						
		oav					
	b) the number of accidents on roads						
		killed or injured					
		d) the amount of oil people use					
	6	One advantage of motorists is the	at they				
		a) provide job opportunities	b) reduce pollution				
(4)		c) provide road facilities	•				
	7	Designers are planning to design	d) plan for the future				
		a) electric cars					
		c) cars on rails	b) steam cars				
	8	A suitable title for the passage ma	d) a & c				
		ıy be					
	a) parning motor cars						
		b) Solving the problems of cars ar	nd roads				
		c) Speed limits					
		d) The return of isolated commun	ities				
3		ranslate into Arabic:					
1		children to share in their country	ive role in pushing and encouraging their 's progress.				

	2	2. There is no doubt that the reform ⁽¹⁾ of education is a must ⁽²⁾ even if we spend					
		billions of money on it.					
:	3	. We should consider money a mea	ins and not an end. That/al.				
80		3. We should consider money a means and not an end. That's why we shouldn't collect money only but invest ⁽³⁾ it in useful projects.					
V.	4	4. For children, parents provide a model for how disagreements should be					
		resolved in close relationships.	disagreements should be				
	5	5. Some adults and teachers may think young people want to spend all of their					
		time using social media. But a rece	ent survey (4) shows that may not be true.				
E			***************************************				

ل مجالات الحياة	ىن جميعا نعتبر الإنترنت معجزة () هذا العصر حيث إنه أصبح ضرورة لا يمكن الاستغناء (١ عنها في كا واء الشخصية أو العامة.
عاعدنا في إعداد	تبر التعليم هو أساس التقدم(›) والتنمية ْ الشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة منها أو النامية؛ لأنه يس يال(١) من المواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.
حيث إن الأطفال	مستقبل أى أمة تريد التقدم والنهوض ومواكبة (۱۰۰ الدول المتحضرة لن يتحقق إلا بأطفالها و شبابها ـ م الأمل و الشباب هم العمود الفقرى(۱۰۰ لأى دولة.
التحتية(١٤)	شك(١٠١ أننا جميعنا كمصريين نرفض كل أشكال الإرهاب(١٦) والعنف وقتل الأبرياء وكذلك تدمير البنية ولة ولذلك نقف جميعنا مع الحكومة في حربها ضد الإرهابيين(١٠١).

e How	جمة (هو – هى) إذا كان الغرض منها التعريف يكون v. to be. عة (حيث إنه) تعبر عن السبب و من هنا يتم ترجمتها إلى as – because.
	as - because Gi
	مة (كل) إذا جاء بعدها جمع تترجم إلى all ولكن إذا كان بعدها مفرد فتترجم إلى every. مة a must اسم و ترجمتها (ضرورة - شيء لازم) ولكن must فقط بمعنى (يجب).
Write an ess	مة (كل) إذا جاء بعدها جمع تترجم إلى all ولكن إذا كان بعدها مفرد فتترجم إلى every. مة a must اسم و ترجمتها (ضرورة - شيء لازم) ولكن must فقط بمعنى (يجب).
1. Encourad	مة (كل) إذا جاء بعدها جمع تترجم إلى all ولكن إذا كان بعدها مفرد فتترجم إلى every. مة a must اسم و ترجمتها (ضرورة - شيء لازم) ولكن must فقط بمعنى (يجب).
1. Encourad	عة (كل) إذا جاء بعدها جمع تترجم إلى all ولكن إذا كان بعدها مفرد فتترجم إلى every. عة must اسم و ترجمتها (ضرورة - شيء لازم) ولكن must فقط بمعنى (يجب). ه a must من a must ضرورة - شيء لازم) ولكن all ولكن all وعجب). Say of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the follow ging tourists to come to Egypt.
1. Encourad	عة (كل) إذا جاء بعدها جمع تترجم إلى all ولكن إذا كان بعدها مفرد فتترجم إلى every. عة must اسم و ترجمتها (ضرورة - شيء لازم) ولكن must فقط بمعنى (يجب). ه a must من a must ضرورة - شيء لازم) ولكن all ولكن all وعجب). Say of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the follow ging tourists to come to Egypt.

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2

Study (

Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

active (adj)	نشيط	modern (adj)*	مديث/عصري
ancient (adj)	قديم (أثرى)	new (adj)	متعت
beautiful (adj)	جميل	noisy (adj)	مزعج
boring (adj)	ممل	old (adj)	قديم .
busy (adj)	مزدحم/مشغول	peaceful (adj)	هادئ/آمن/سلمی
calm (adj)	هادئ	quiet (adj) (n)	هادئ/هدوء
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	relax (v) – ed	يسترخي/يستريح
exotic (adj)	غريب	relaxing (adj)	מעיל

*Can you put the word "modern" in a sentence?

Vocabulary on Reading

actually (adv)	مَى الواقع	cry (v) (y-ied)	يبكى
amazing (adj)	مدهش	expect (v) – ed	يتوقع
away (adv)	اغيدا	fascinating (adj)	ساحر/خلاب
awful (adj)	فظيع	gardening (n)	أعمال الحديقة
balcony (n)	بلكونة	glad (adj)	गढण
brilliant (adj)	رائع	grow (v)	يزرع
castle (n)	قلعة	hobby (n)	هواية
cheap (adj)	رخيص	lettuce (n)	نبات الخس

resort (n)	منتجع	tiny (<mark>ad</mark> j)	صغير الحجم (ضليل)
steal (v)	يسرق	try (v) (y ied)	يحاول/يجرب
teenager (n)	مراهق	underwater (adi) (adv)	تحت الماء
temple (n)	معبد	underwater (adj) (adv)	ر الله الله ا

Workbook Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	on board (adv)	على متن (سفينة أو طائرة)
break (n)	فسحة/نزهة	paradise (n)	جنة
distance (n)	مسافة	stressed (adj)	مضغوط/مجمد
eco-trip (n)	رحلة ميدانية بيئية	support (v) – ed	يدعم
explore (v) – d	يستكشف	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

	•		
(be) stuck	عالق (غير قادر على الخروج)	tired of	متعب من
have a holiday	يأخذ إجازة	take photos	يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية
go away	يرحل	interested in	مهتم ب
go down	ينخفض/تغرب (الشمس)	over the moon	سعید جدًا
make good use of	يستغل	walk around	يتنزه
busy with	مشغول بـ	live in	يعيش في
dive with	يغطس مع	loads of	كميات من
leave behind	يترك خلفه	on balcony	فى البلكونة

Deriva	tives
--------	-------

Verb		
awe	يهاب/يرهب	
bore	ينضئجنر	
calm	يهدأ/يُهُدُئُ	
crowd	يحشد/يدفع	
fascinate	یفتن/یسدر	
pacify	يهدأ/يسكن	
quieten	اعما	
stick	يُقدم/يلصق	

The second of the last			
Nou	n		
awfulness	فظاعة		
boredom	ملل		
calmness	هدوء		
crowd	حشد/جمع من الناس		
fascination	جاذبية/افتتان		
peace	سلام		
peacefulness	هدوء		
quiet/quietness	هدوء/سكينة		
sticker	ملصق		
stickiness	لزوجة		

Adjective	
awful	ميل/فظيع
boring	Uaa
calm	فادئ
crowded	مزددم
fascinating	ساحر
peaceful	أمن
quiet	ھادئ
stuck	عالق

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Meaning

active	نشيط
amazing	مدهش/مذهل
ancient	قديم
beautiful	جميل
boring	ممل
busy	مزىحم
calm	ھادئ
fascinating	ساحر/خلاب
relaxing	مريح

Word

energetic/dynamic
astonishing/fascinating
old/antique
pretty/cute/handsome
dull/uninteresting
crowded/jammed
peaceful/quiet
charming/interesting
comfortable/calm

المرايف Synonym

inactive/lazy/idle	كسول/خامل
believable/ordinary	معقول/عادی
modern/new	ددیث/عصری
ugly/awful	قبيح
exciting/interesting	مثير
empty/free	فارغ اخال
nervous/upset/noisy	,
مزعج	متوتر اعصبي ا
boring/dull	ممل
noisy/worrled قلق	مزعع اصلفب

المضاد Antonym

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1) You have to to be able to think carefully about your problems. c) frighten d) fight a) worry b) relax 2 Our players wereand we all were very proud of them. d) amazing c) awful a) boring b) noisy 3 Why don't we go to a to spend the summer holiday? d) temple a) resort c) bridge b) boat 4 Nader is interested doing exercise to be fit. d) in c) with b) of 5 Computer and the Internet have become an essential part of ourlife.

Check the answers at the end of the book.

d) crowded

Reading Text (1)

This is me on our hotel balcony⁽¹⁾ in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's brilliant⁽²⁾ here and there are loads⁽³⁾ of things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.

b) modern

a) old

My sister and I are learning to dive with some other teenagers⁽⁴⁾ at the resort. I love diving; it's so relaxing⁽⁵⁾ and



c) antique

بلكونة (1)

رائع (2)

كميات (3)

مراهقون (4)

مريح (5)

معابد (6)

ساحر/خلاب (7)

you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an underwater camera so I can take photos of them.

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples⁽⁶⁾ there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I actually found them fascinating⁽⁷⁾ and am really glad we went there.

Reading Text (2)

Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so bored⁽¹⁾ – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm stuck⁽²⁾ here at home. The weather's awful⁽³⁾ and there's nothing to do.

Last week, I went to stay with my grandparents for a few days, which was nice,

but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He grows all his own vegetables – he says it's cheaper than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some lettuce⁽⁴⁾ in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about gardening⁽⁵⁾ – maybe I'll have a new hobby!



- عالق (2)
- فظيع (3)
- رات الخسر (4)
- يمال الحديقة (5)

Reading Text (3)

- a) As I was photographing⁽¹⁾ the castle, my little brother started crying.
- b) We walked around Lisbon and I took lots of photos.
- c) We went to the shops, they are a bit(2) expensive but my mum was happy.
- d) My uncle met us at the airport and drove us to the old part of town. It's very quiet and peaceful.
- e) We sailed⁽³⁾ along the river to see the sun going down⁽⁴⁾. It was beautiful and very relaxing!
- f) We went to Europe to visit my cousins in Portugal.
- g) My uncle decided to take us to a restaurant for lunch.
- h) He was eating an ice cream and a bird stole it! He was very upset(5).

71	1.12
21	مس
-,	V

أبحر (3	
---------	--

4)	تغرب

Workbook Text

Holidays Adverts

A beach break

Do you want to relax in a quiet and peaceful(1) place? Escape from noisy streets and leave your busy city life behind(2). Visit this amazing paradise(3). Enjoy the sunshine(4) on isolated beaches and swim in clean, clear water.

Adventure time

Are you tired of the same old, boring places? Are you looking for an active holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving(5), then day two takes you climbing(6) in the beautiful Alpine mountains⁽⁷⁾.

Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of traveller(8). You can go trekking through the Andes (9) and explore (10) ancient Machu Picchu with a local guide(11). You can enjoy peace and quiet or you can meet the local people, all without damaging the environment.

آمن/مسالم (1) خلف (2) جنة (3) إشراق (نور) الشمس (4) غوص (5) تسلق (6) جبال الألب (7) مسافر (8) جبال الأنديز (9) يكتشف (10) مرشد (11) مخاوف (12) مشاهد (13)

A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm cruise around the Caribbean? On board our modern cruise ship, you can enjoy great food and forget your worries(12) in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded markets and see many unusual sights(13).

I have become s	Choose the o tired my da	ily routine.	
a) in	b) of	c) by	d) on
It was a	piece of cake. I felt as	if I ate nothing.	
a) tiny	b) huge	c) big	d) massive
Llive in a very of	uiet andvillag	e. I am happy to live	here.
-) poscoful	b) crowded	c) noisy	a) peace
The teacher was	on hearing t	hat his students got b	oad marks.
	b) pleaded	c) excited	d) upset
a) happy	d in our new village, v	ve began toi	t.
a) pave	b) explore	c) expand	d) adventure

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary in Use



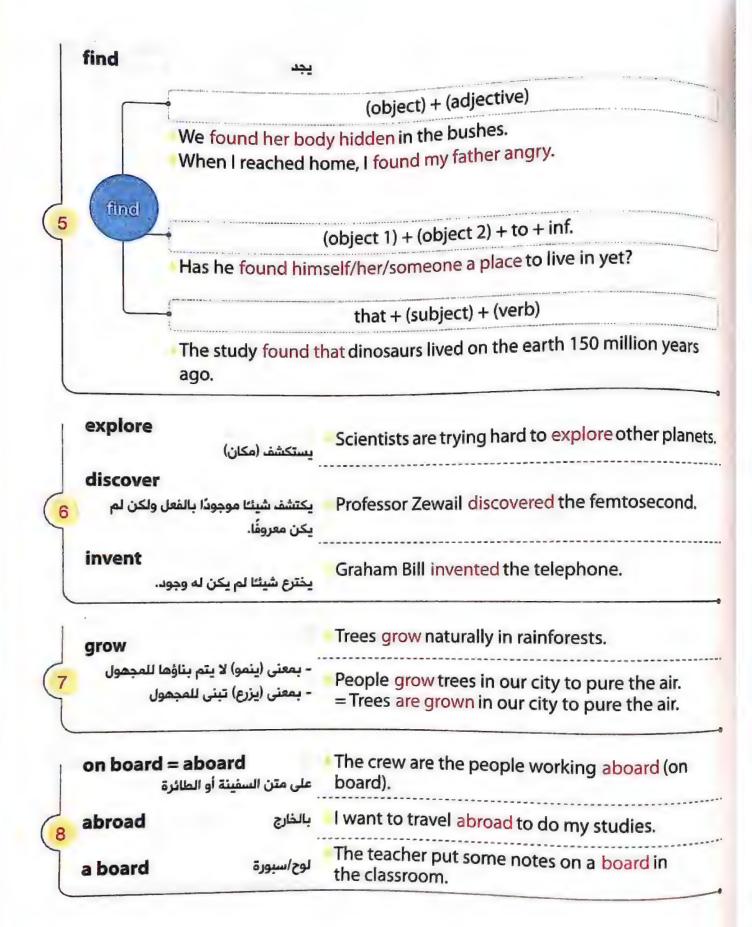
FOCUS on Vocabulary

isolated	_ معزول
used to describe a place far away from any others	
ancient	_ قديم/أثرى
something that is very old	
crowded	_ مزدحم
when a place has lots of people	
— exotic	_ غرىب
this is unusual and often from a different country	
modern	ـــ حدیث/عصری
something which is new and connected to the present	
— peaceful	— هادئ/آمن/سلمي
• feeling calm, quiet, without any problems	
relaxing	ـــ مريح
something that makes you feel relaxed and not stressed	
exciting	ـــ مثیر
something that makes you feel excited	-

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

	child = kid مفير	The hotel is ideal for families with young children.
	dab يتعلم المشى dab	Atoddler is a very young child who is just learning to walk.
1	teenager = adolescent مراهق	A teenager is someone who is between 13 and 19 years old.
	youth شاب	The police had questioned three youths, but then later released them without charge.
	adult فخص بالغ	The cost of the trip is \$60 for adults and \$30 for children.
	weather الطقس (حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة)	> What's the weather like today?
2	climate المناخ (حالة الجو لفترة طويلة)	The climate is cooler in the east of the country.
	atmosphere الغلاف الجوى (ما يحيط بالأرض)	These factories are releasing toxic gases into the atmosphere.
	underwater (adj) (adv) - تحت المياه (صفة تأتى قبل اسم)	I bought an expensive underwater camera yesterday.
3	- تحت المياه (حال أو ظرف)	This is a camera specially designed to be used underwater.
	steal + (something) يسرق (شيئًا)	He stole money from his neighbours, so he went to prison.
4	rob + (place) يسرق (من مكان أو شخص)	• They killed four policemen while robbing a bank.
	rob + (somebody) of (something) يسرق شيئًا (من شخص أو مكان)	• They threatened to shoot him and robbed him of all his possessions.



Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

The weather's rea	ally hot so we spend m	ost of the time in the	water.
	my not so we spend m		
. مسبقنا.	t ولكن هنا تشير إلى مكان محدد	لغالب لا يسبقها أداة التعريف ٦٠	علمة Water اسم لا يعد وفي اا
• to see th	e sun going down.		
	ؤية جزء من الحدث،	See + c عندما يقوم الفاعل برز	سخدم الصيغة bj. + v-ing
▶ He was eating ar	ice cream		
.(an i	ce cream cone) ئىس كريم	دودة إلا إذا أريد بها واحدة من الا	للمة ice cream لا تكون معا
I went to stay wi	th my grandparents fo	r a few days, which wa	as nice.
		ملة الكاملة التي تسبقها.	لمة Which هنا تشير إلى الج
▶ I was watching a	programme on TV thi	s morning about gard	lening.
	TV تأخذ حرف الجر on	– radio – the internet	کلمات مثل: computer –
			per one is (b), what do you think?
Check Point	Choose the co	orrect answer from a	b, c or d:
1 I was very angry	to the truth al	oout his bad behaviou	ır.
a) invent	b) discover	c) explore	d) found
2 Because of the b	ad storm, people on	the ship were f	rightened.
a) abroad	b) broad	c) aboard	d) board
3 The bad boys	their neighbour	of his money.	
a) robbed	b) stole	c) took	d) kidnapped
4 Most of our cust	omers arewho	are at most 19 years	old.
a) adults	b) kids	c) toddlers	d) teenagers
5 Many people pre	efer to live in countries	where theis	fine most of the year.
a) weather	b) climate	c) atmosphere	d) sun
a) weather	b) climate	c) atmosphere	a) sun



Vocabulary Exercises

- Keille	embering • Understanding	Applying Analysing	Evaluating	
CI	noose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
(Key Vocabularia B		,, a. t. Maashulaw	
1	Toy vocabulary, Re	eading, Listening & Wo	rkbook vocabulary	
	On getting on t	he train, we found it so	o that we had	d to stand all way to
6	- w. acadilation			
2	a) empty	b) crowded t our national team wi	c) relaxing	d) noisy
•	a) accept	t our national team wi	ll be better in the futu	ire.
: 3	Mr Adel is the h	b) except	c) prescript	a) expect
F	himself works.	estI have ever	r met. He has a very hi	ce garden where he
1	a) gardening	h) teacher	c) director	d) gardener
. 4	sometimes Leni	OV my English Jessons	but at other times I fin	nd them really
5	realit believe th	at I am going	to Mecca for pilgrima	age الحج. It is mv
	010119 111311.			
6	The actor got an	b) unfortunately	c) actually	d) impossibly
	The actor got an	i dward for diving a/an	nerformance	a in his last film
7	a) arriazed	b) boring awhere we co	c) needless	d) amazina
)	a) balcony	b) ceiling	an sit and look at a nic	te lake.
8	Tamer was happ	b) ceiling / y to find some	gold coins inside th	a) stair
	a) quiet	b) busy	c) modern	d) ancient
9	The thieves	a huge sum of mo	oney from the bank.	a) ancient
40	a) robbed	b) stole the bank and tool	c) bought	d) borrowed
10				
	al lopped	DI 21OIE	C) househa	
• •	The park was full	withchildren	n wno were all runnin	g around.
	a) noisy	b) peaceful		مدرسة الزنكلون الثانوية إدارة شرق الزقا
12	I feltwh	en the other team sco	red a goal in the bear	d) quiet
	a) hungry	b) pleased	c) stressed	nning of the match.
13	Have you seen he	er perform fantastically b) brilliant	y on stage? She's absorber	d) grateful
				d) ordinary
14	The in E	gypt is not going to be	e nice this week.	w ordinary
	a) weather	b) climate	c) atmosphere	d) whether
15		gypt is fine all the year b) climate		,
	a) weather	b) Cililiate	c) atmosphere	d) whether

ı	16	The true friend is the	one who gives	at both happy a	and difficult times.
		a) frustration b)	disappointment	c) encourage	d) support
	17	The engineers	the old area very	vell before they instal	led the equipment.
		a) discovered b)	explored	c) scanned	d) created
	18	He spent the summe	er learning	with his blindness.	
				c) how to cope	d) both b and c
	19	It was to hea	ar that our compan	y was going to close	because of its
		financial problems.		, 3 3	
		a) pleasant b)	awful	c) wonderful	d) terrific
	20	In some parts of the	e world, plants and	some kinds of tree	s without
ŀ		man's interference.			
		a) are grown b)	have been grown	c) grow	d) growing
	21	Your handwriting is s		_	
					الزنكلون الثانوية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣
		a) fantastic b)	tiny	c) amazing	d) beautiful
	(F	xpressions, Idioms, Pre	anositions Darivative	se Synonyme & Anton	vms
	(-	Apressions, idioms, Fre	epositions, Derivative	es, Synonyms & Anton	
		I went to the old con		_	
J.				c) peaceful	
	23	My grandparents live			
		a) with b)			
	24	My hobby is			
		a) making b)			
	25	My parents took us o			
				c) beneath	d) along
	26	We got a load			
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	of	c) by	d) in
		oose the Two corr			
,	27	I liked the time I spe			velling to Paris.
				oard d) broad	e) aboard
Ŋ,	28	Cairo is so beautiful.	. The antonyms of th		
[مدرسة السيدة نفيسة الثانوية بنات - مد
			tractive c) wond		e) pretty
	29	I always take my you	ing to the	park every Friday.	a)
1		a) adults b) gro	own-ups c) kids	d) children	
	30	Luxor is one of the			ie antonyms of the
		word "fascinating" a	- •		a) actoniching
],		a) exciting b) du	ıll c) charn	ning d) boring	e) astonishing

Study

Lessons 3 & 4



Language

Notes on the past simple and past continuous

ـ استخدام الزمن بعد because - 50 حسب معنى الجملة وليس لها زمن ثابت.

I couldn't see him because I was studying.

I didn't play the match because I hadn't trained enough.

- While playing, he fell down. While + (v-ing) بدون فاعل - When arriving, I had a shower. When - During my stay in England, I learnt English. During + أثناء (noun)

- During my stay in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places. (While)
 - = While I was staying in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places.

لابد أن يكون فاعل الجملة الأولى هو نفسه فاعل الجملة الثانية عند استخدام (while + v-ing)

(When + past simple = On + v-ing)

- When the thief saw the police, he ran away. (On)
 - = On seeing the police, the thief ran away.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: - During, we got hot and wanted to leave.

a) watching the play

b) to watch

c) the play

d) being watching

الإجابة هي (c) لأن بعد During يأتي الاسم.



ا) من الممكن استخدام الماضى المستمر مع تعبيرات ||a|| مع الماضى:

(all day/all night/all morning/all evening yesterday) I was watching television all day yesterday.

٢) بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم في الماضي المستمر ولكن تستخدم في الماضي البسيط حتى مع علامات الماضي المستمر وهي:

see – hear – smell – taste – touch – feel الحواس - ١

امعال العاطفة love – like – hate – dislike – prefer

understand – forget – remember – know – remind - أفعال التفكير

owe - own - possess - have - belong - want أفعال التملك

When my teacher was illustrating the lesson, I understood it.

٢) من الممكن استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط للإشارة إلى حدث تم في الماضي لم يـُــذكر وقت وقوعه ولكن معروف (كمعلومة) أنه تم في الماضي (الماضي البديهي)

The Chinese built the Great Wall of China to stop the enemies' attacks.

It's (high) time 'd rather It's time I travelled abroad. (التصريف الثاني) + (Subject) + l wish I wish I attended the party. Suppose - أما إذا وجدنا كلمة دالة على الماضي مع أي من التعبيرات السابقة فنستخدم زمن الماضي التام. It's time I had travelled abroad two years ago. I wish I had attended the party yesterday. - التعبيرات السابقة إذا لم يأت بعدها فاعل تصبح قاعدتها كالأتي: - It's time + (to + inf.) - I'd rather + (inf.) - I wish + (to + inf.) It's time to travel abroad. I wish to attend the party. (0 (حرف حر) + While While on holiday, I had a great time. = While + subject + v. to (be) + (حرف جرا) While I was on holiday, I had a great time. ٦) يمكن استخدام .did + inf للدلالة على التأكيد. I visited him yesterday. = I did visit him yesterday. ٧) كلمة for أصلًا كلمة دالة على زمن المضارع التام ولكن من الممكن اسـتخدامها في الماضي البسـيط عند وجود ما يدل على انتماء الحيث My father worked for this company for 20 years. Now, he has his own company. My father has worked for this company for 20 years. ٨) من الممكن اسـتخدام الكلمات الدالة على العادة في المضارع البســيط، مع الماضي البســيط، لتعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي. (التصريف الثاني) + (always/often/usually/sometimes ...) + (التصريف الثاني) > She always sleeps early on school days. She always slept early on school days when she was a student. ٩) لاحظ الجمل التالية : He used to be clever, but now he isn't. He used to study hard, but now he doesn't.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1studying at Oxford, I visited many attractions in London.

a) As

a) tell

a) On

b) While

b) As

c) Just as

d) During

2 I'd rather theyus about the accident.

b) have told

c) told

d) were telling

3running down the road, I crashed into a tree.

c) As soon as

d) By



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4



Language Exercises

0	Ren	nembering	anding Applying Analysing	Evaluating Creating	
C	ho	ose the correc	ct answer from a, b, c	or d:	
ı	1	At a quarter	to ten. I home	with some of my friends	5.
	2	Anneel	all yesterday evenin	c) was walking g, so he didn't watch the	e match.
	3	a) is sleeping	b) had slept ing the bad news, I hur	c) was sleeping	d) was slept
	4	a) As	b) While	c) Having	d) On
		a) examining c) being exam	, the baby smiled to the	b) was examinir	
	5	Dalia couldn	't see us passing her be	d) was being ex cause sheon he	er work.
	6	c) was conce	ntrating	d) would concer	ntrate
	7	u) 13	(a) was being	ered the room while she	was cleaning it. d) was
	8	a) During	b) When	aw a lot of monuments. c) While	d) As
D,		a) didn't hear c) haven't hea		b) wasn't hearing	g
	9	During	in Sharm, I swam in the	d) hearing e sea every morning.	To TTaisaidle walde a side our
ŀ	10	When	. my old friend in the st	c) my stay	
		a) met	Was meeting	c) meeting the African champions	
		a) was willilli	g b) won e yesterday, my father	c) dial	hip. d) b & c
		a) working	DI has worked	c) worked sI broke my leg.	d) was working
			E#1 C#1	c) as venty years before he re	
				y years belore he re	tired.
18	5	a) works I didn't accept	b) worked my friend's invitation t	c) has worked to dinner as I for	مرسة الفتح - الباجور - المنوفية ٢٠٢٢ d) used to work
	ā	a) revised	b) are revising	c) was revising	d) had revised

1	16	My wife used to coo	ok the food well, but n	ow she	
		a) isn't	b) doesn't		d) hasn't
	17	the age of 1	10, I was taught how to		_,,,,
l		a) In	b) At	c) For	d) Since
	18	While we	n holiday in Alexandria	a, we met many of o	our old friends.
l			, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		مدرسة ساقلته الثانوية بنين - سوهاج ٢
ľ		a) were being	b) are	c) have been	d) were
	19	Suppose you	a bag of money, wh		
		a) found	b) has found	c) will find	d) was finding
	20	I'd ratherea		•	•
		a) sleep		c) slept	d) had slept
	21		onhard last yea	ar.	
l		a) studied			d) to study
Ĭ	22	I hadn't spoken to I	nim much, but he	to be a very nice	e man.
,		a) seeming	b) is seeming	c) was seeming	d) seemed
	23	I for this co	mpany for 5 years, but	I like my current co	empany more.
Ø		a) have worked	b) working	c) worked	d) has worked
	24	Salwa always set th	e table for lunch. This	sentence	
		a) is a present habi		b) was a past hab	
		c) always takes plac		d) never took pla	
U,	25	While on holiday, se	ome thieves robbed or		holiday?
	•)	a) My family		b) The thieves	
		c) Our neighbours		d) No one	
	26		my for a long time. This		
		a) I no longer work		b) I still work for i	
		c) I didn't work for i	t	d) I have always v	
J	27	While drinking juic	e, Mona and her friend	s were watching I v	. This means
		a) Mona was watch	ing TV alone and her f	rienas were arinkin	ig Juice.
		b) Mona's friends w	ere drinking juice whi	ie watching i v.	F\/
		c) Mona and her fri	ends were drinking jui	ise while watching	IV.
1		d) Mona said her fr	iends were drinking ju	friend to ask him a	IV.
	28	•	lessons, I phoned my	mena to ask nim at	out the party.
i		Who was studying		b) It was me.	
		a) It was my friend.		d) Neither my frie	and nor ma
-44		c) Both my friend a	na me.		ena noi me.
-	29		s means I amr b) no longer thin	c) not fat	d) overweight
-		a) fat	early. This means the s	neaker un	late.
Change .	30		b) didn't get	c) has got	d) never gets
1		a) got	ululi t get	-7 11d3 got	-,evel gets

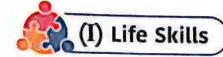
Study

Lessons 3 & 4



General Skills

ية عه الغرخ والتسويات برجي الرجوع لعادة العصالات.



Collaboration

التعاون

To offer help

- · Can I help you?
- · What can I do to help you?

To ask for help

· Can you help me, please?

To accept help

- · Yes, of course.
- · No, thanks. I can do this myself.

- ·Would you like me to help you?
- · Can we help each other to do this ...?
- · I would like you to help me, please.
- · Yes, please. I really need your help.
- · It is better to do this together.



(II) Writing

- To write about tourism, you can focus on the following:
 - 1. The importance of tourism for our country.
 - 2. Talk about the well-known attractions in your country.
 - 3. Speak about some kinds of tourism.
 - 4. What ecotourism is and why it is so important.
 - 5. How individuals and government can encourage tourists to come to Egypt.

Model Essay

Tourism

It is known that tourism is very important for the state and the individuals as well. Tourism helps countries to increase their national income and brings hard currency that helps to improve their economy. Also, tourism is very helpful in exchanging different cultures. However, tourism may have some disadvantages, especially for the country's inhabitants. Streets and roads, towns and cities, all places became very noisy and crowded, so people can't shop or go to their work easily.

There are some kinds of tourism, such as ecotourism, health tourism and business tourism. Ecotourism is the one in which tourists should keep the country they visit clean without doing any damage to the environment.

We all must cooperate to encourage tourists to visit Egypt. The government should build modern hotels, restaurants, good roads and resorts for tourists. In addition, we as individuals should be friendly and respectful towards tourists.

Test Yourself "20





Unit 1

Lessons 3 & 4

n Rei	men	bering • Understanding	Applying Analysing E	valuating Creating	
D	C	hoose the correct a	answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
dire.				sit to Al-Azhar Park ir	Cairo The word
	•	"exotic" here mean	- plants during my vi	SIL LO AI-AZHAI FAIKII	Callo, The Word
		a) familiar	h) known	c) strange	d) common
١.	2	Sharm El-Sheikh is	one of the world's m	ost important and w	onderfulon
		the sea.	one of the world 3 in	ost important and w	offactial
			b) resorts	c) banks	d) beaches
1	3			n to be a pioneer in v	
		a) peaceful	b) serious	c) careless	d) sure
	4	Mohamed Salah w	as the moon w	hen he won the Char	npions League Cup.
		a) under		c) over	
	5	Aunt Nawal is one		es who I don't often i	
				c) close	
}	6	I adore the peace a	and of the co	untryside.	
		a) quite	b) quit	c) silent	d) quiet
П	7		n well, but he still car		
				c) underground	
١., ١	8			ou have a lot of work	
).)			b) do		
Ĭ	9	Heshamus	s to the public library	when the car broke	down.
١.				c) was taking	
1	0	He was very annoy	red, as he was travelli	ng by bus and some	one nis watch.
Ι,		a) was stealing	b) nas stolen	c) had stolen	a) stole
] 1	1	Huda from	the early morning to	the noon. I couldn't	see ner.
١.		a) was studying	b) is studying	c) has studied to my broth	a) studied
1	2			b) hadn't belong	
1		a) wasn't belonging	g	d) doesn't belong	
ı,		c) didn't belong	Lwas using m	T	9
1	3		, I was using m	b) was fixing	
0		a) was fixed		d) was being fixe	ed
١,	4	c) had fixed	we saw most of our o	old friends. We were s	
'	*	a) When	b) During	c) While	d) Until
1	5	Yourra used to live	in Cairo, but now sh		•
,	-	a) hasn't	b) didn't	c) isn't	d) doesn't
1	6	I wish we	meeting to discuss	our problems.	
0	-	a) to have	b) will have	c) had	d) are having
		a) to have	•		3

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In 1874, an Englishman living in Brazil sent his son across the Atlantic to be educated in England. Charles Miller went to school, then to university. During his English years, Charles grew passionately keen on football, and when in 1894, he packed his bags to return to his family in Brazil, among the things he took with him were half a dozen footballs. He tried to get other people interested in the game. At first, he had little success; the only people who showed any interest were other expatriate(1) Brits; thus the first game of football in Brazil was played between two teams of young Englishmen, on a field from which the goats had first been removed. Charles asked some journalists to come and see this new English game, but none came along. On the other hand, as the weeks went past, the spectacle(2) of twenty-two young Englishmen running round after a ball began attracting spectators from houses nearby. "Balls" is perhaps the wrong word - the only footballs in Brazil at the time were the ones that Charles Miller had brought back with him from England. The first Brazilian amateurs (3) had to concoct (4) their own balls. The journalists who had originally laughed at the crazy English sport, were jumping on the bandwagon, writing enthusiastically(5) about the popular new game. The rest, as they say, is history.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 When Charles returned to his family in Brazil, he brought with him
 - a) three footballs only
- b) three footballs and other things
- c) six footballs and other things
- d) twelve football and other things
- 2 Charles' father was
 - a) a Brazilian living in Brazil
 - b) an Englishman living all his life in England
 - c) a Brazilian footballer living in England
 - d) an Englishman living in Brazil
- 3 Which of the following statements is not correct?
 - a) Charles Miller was educated in England in the 18th century.
 - b) Charles Miller was educated in England in the 19th century.
 - c) Charles was keen on football.
 - d) Charles returned to Brazil again.



(5) بحماس

(3) هواة

(4) يخترع

(1) مغترب (2)

	4	The best title for this passage is	•		
		 a) How football came to Englar 	nd		
		b) The story of the World Cup			
		c) How football came to Brazil			
		d) The importance of sport			
	5	What did the first Brazilian amat	eurs have to do?		
		 a) To concoct their own balls. 			
		b) To travel to England to buy balls.			
		c) To travel to England to play f	ootball.		
			d) The answer is not mentioned in the passage.		
5)	6		t game of football played in Brazil?		
		a) It was played between two to			
		b) It was played between two t			
		c) It was played on a field from which the goats had first been removed.			
		d) Both "b" & "c".			
	7	The underlined word "Brits" is cl	osest in meaning to		
		a) the people of Brazil	b) the people of Berlin		
		c) the people of Sao Paolo	d) the people of Great Britain		
	8	The pronoun 'they' in the last se	entence refers to		
		a) Charles and his father	b) historians		
		c) the journalists	d) the young Englishmen		
3	A) T	Franslate into Arabic:			
10			over nation and the base of its progress(2)		
1 .			ny nation and the base of its progress ⁽²⁾ .		
		So, governments should help t	riem be better citizens.		
1 1					
			mixture ⁽³⁾ of success and failure. With that in		
		mind, it should be filled with h	ard work.		

9		***************************************			
			tention ⁽⁴⁾ to women and provides them with		
		education, jobs and health and	d social care.		
		***************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		
		***************************************	·		

صعوبة في الحصول على شقة.	رت(١) مشكلة الإسكان الكثير من الشباب على رفض(١) الزواج بسبب الد
نوى ^(۱) المعيشة لكل المواطنين.	_{تكو} مة أن تهتم بالمشروعات الإنتاجية ^(۱) وذلك لزيادة الإنتاج ورفع مست
How to translate	
>	الصفة يتم ترجمتها كالتالى .lt is + adj. + to + inf.
	س) يعبر عن المستقبل ويترجم إلى .will + inf.
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Mar تعنى الإنسان بوجه عام و تعامل معاملة المفرد.
- have ما لم نجد كلمة دالة على زمن الخ	لقد) بعدها زمن الماضي يتم ترجمتها إلى (مضارع تام) .has + p.p
Write an essay of about ONE 1. If you are a good citizen, w 2. The pros of ecotourism in y	hat will you do for your country?
 If you are a good citizen, w 	hat will you do for your country?
 If you are a good citizen, w 	hat will you do for your country?
 If you are a good citizen, w 	HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the folio that will you do for your country? your country.
 If you are a good citizen, w 	hat will you do for your country?
 If you are a good citizen, w 	hat will you do for your country?
 If you are a good citizen, w 	hat will you do for your country?
 If you are a good citizen, w 	hat will you do for your country?
 If you are a good citizen, w 	hat will you do for your country?
 If you are a good citizen, w 	hat will you do for your country?
 If you are a good citizen, w 	hat will you do for your country? your country.

Study

Chapter 1 (Treasure Island)

Key Vocabulary

Vocabulary

admiral	أميرال (رتبة بحرية)
adventures	مغامرات
blind	أعمى/كفيف
cliffs	منحدرات صخرية
captain	قبطان
dare	يجرؤ
dead	ميت
frightened	ڈائف
grab	يجذب/ينتزع
guarding	حراسة
gun	بندقية
inn	حانة
island	جزيرة
neighbours	الجيران

pale	باهت/شاحب اللون
perhaps	ربما
point	يشير
probably	من المحتمل
quiet	ھادئ
realise	يدرك
sailor	بحار
scar	ندب/أثر جرح
suddenly	فجأة
surprised	مندهش
sword	سيف
terrible	فظيع
treasure	كنز
village	قرية

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

as quickly as we could	بأسرع ما يمكننا
be frightened by	خائف من
come down	ينزل
continue + (v-ing)	يستمر في
dare to	يجرؤ على
decide to	يقرر أن
fall over	يسقط
fall to the floor	يسقط على الأرض
look around	ينظر حول
look pale	تبدو باهتة

point towards	يشير نحو
point to	يشير إلى
run outside	يجرى للخارج
spend + (v-ing)	يقضى
talk about	يتحدث عن
tell about	يحكى عن
walk back into	يعود إلى
walk into	يدخل
write about	يكتب عن

Unit 1 Chapter 1



Novel Exercises

Chapter (1)

Remembering

Understanding

Applying

Analysing

Evaluating

Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	The doctor said th	at the wound is all	ite deep, and will I	orobably leave a
	a) scare	h) ccar	c) quard	u) icai
2	The boy	my bag and disant	peared quickly into	the crowd.
	a) quarded	h) released	c) grabbed	d) frightened
3	Hundreds of year	r ago soldiors carr	to figh	t with during wars,
	a) swords	b) submarines	c) tanks	d) treasures
4	We were very tire	ad and hungry so y	ve stopped at a/ar	to rest and have
	a meal.	d and nungry, so v	ve stopped at an a.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		b) island	c) inn	d) cliff
5	My neighbour wa			
•		b) healthy		
6	You should be ve			•
Ū	dangerous.	ry carerar writte arr	virig. 111C	s very steep and
		b) cliff	c) man	d) key
7	I don't tel		-	
-		b) grab		
8	We need to have	weapons to	these isolated fa	rms against attack.
)		b) hide		d) own
9	The operation lef			•
	-	b) big	_	
10	Mr Kamal			
	repay it.		,	g can the can to
		b) owns	c) owes	d) grabs
11	As a young man,	he went off to Afric	a, and had a lot of	during his
	expedition there.			
	a) neighbours	b) adventures	c) fingers	d) jackets
12	She was exhauste	d but she	who the man in th	e photograph was.
	a) realised	b) left	c) turned	d) pointed
13	A/An is a	high rank in the Bri	itish or US navy.	, perited
	a) captain	b) guard	c) clerk	d) admiral
14	The mother clean	ed her child up be	cause heir	the mud yesterday.
	a) looked around	b) based in	c) fell over	d) depended on
15	The officer manag	ed to take the	from the thief	's hand.
	a) arrow	b) tank	c) gun	d) rocket

Unit 1

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

Rememberin	
	и.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Walid has given	up smoking, but he stil	l has an occasional cio	arette on the
	a) distance	b) quiet	c) quietly	d) distant
2	I tried to	my students out abo	out our results of the	exams.
	a) seem	b) vote	c) tell	d) sound
3	, each pr	oblem does not seem	had, but together th	ev are quite
	serious.	The section of the se	bad, but together th	c) are quite
	a) Isolated	b) In isolated	c) In isolation	d) Insulated
4	Nabila is	but I think she is in g	ood health.	
	a) lean	b) active	c) sound	d) leak
5	I was my teache	er's when I was	at school. I was his fa	avourite.
	a) fussy	b) better	c) bite	_
6	_	the of the country	-	•
		b) location		
7	If you want to fi	nish your work on tim	e, you have to	now.
	a) busy yourself	b) get busybody	c) make busy	d) get busy
8	My father	with anger when he	knew that I failed th	e exam.
		b) spiced		
9	Medhat is a fash	nion He alway	s wears the most fas	hionable clothes
	even if he does	not look good in them	١.	
		b) conservationist		d) giant
10 A lot of people hate this actress as she is very				
	a) swell-legged	b) swell-necked	c) swell-handed	d) swell-headed
11	People who owe	e huge amounts of mo	oney sometimes	to selling their
	houses or cars.			
	a) restore	b) lend	c) look forward	d) resort
12	My wife has got	a bad cold so I must	until she gets	better.
	a) keep ahead	b) keep my distance	c) keep my close	d) keep alive
13	At the accident,	the force of the	made my car turn	over three times.
	a) isolation	b) danger	c) impact	d) conservation
14	Khaled was a/ar	, quiet man. H	le is unfriendly, and r	not interested in
	people.			
	a) safe	b) limited	c) isolated	d) remote
15	Heba thinks she	's over the, bu	t she's only 40. She sa	ays she is no
	longer young, o	r good at doing thing	S.	
	a) moon	b) hill	c) environment	d) island

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

,	16	While I	n Alexandria I met m	y friends in the street	
		a) were	b) was being	c) was	d) had been
	17	Whileth	e lessons, Ali was coo	king the food.	
		a) studying	h) was studying	c) I was studying	d) studied
	18	Hurghad	da, I went to the beac	h every day.	
		a) While	b) When	c) On	d) While in
ı	19	My brother	the extreme cold	of Russia.	
0		a) used to	b) didn't use to	c) was using	d) got used to
۱	20	I wish I were god	nd at maths. This mea	ns that the speaker	of the hoop
		a) is	b) isn't	c) was	d) wasn't
	21	Mona has lived i	n England for 5 years	, so she the d	ifferent cultures
		there.	· · · glaria for 5 years	, 30 3116	carrates
		a) is used to	b) didn't use to	c) he used to	d) used to
Ď	22	The meal	bad, that's why I wa	nted to vomit.	, 4554 (0
ı		a) taste	b) tasted	c) was tasting	d) was tasted
	23	While	was crying out of pai	n at hospital.	a, mas tasted
4					
ı		c) I was examinin	ng .	d) being examined	
M.	24	Youssef	watching the Turkish	Series last night.	
D,	<u>s</u>)	a) used to enjoy	b) would enjoy	c) was enjoying	d) enjoyed
ì	25	seeing t	he snake, she scream	ed and ran away.	a, anjoyed
		a) During	b) While	c) On	d) Before
	26	While she	the driving lesson,	her father called her.	.,
		a) had	b) was having	c) has had	d) had had
1	27	They were going	onto the highway	a flat tire.	
,		a) while on getti	•	b) just as getting	
		c) when they got		d) because they got	
;	28	It takes drivers a	long time to	on the left side of the	road when they
		visit England.			
		a) use to drive		b) get used to drivir	ng
3		c) be used to driv	/e	d) get used to delice	
	29	She was studying	g her lessons at 10 o'c	clock yesterday. This n	neans that
ı		a) she started stu	idying at 10 octock		
ŀ		-	udying at 10 o'clock		
-			vith her lessons at 10		
-			ke her lessons at 10 o'	clock	
	30		y lessons next year.		
		a) studied	b) to study	c) would study	d) had studied

Unit 1



Al-Adwaa Test



0		nbering • Understanding	Applying Analysing	Evaluating • Creating	
F 7	Ch	oose the Two cor	rect answers of the F	ive options:	
		Mohamed Salah the word "amazi	is an amazing player ing" areand .	to watch. The antonyr	
,	2	l was waiting for	b) pretty c) astomy father when he	onishing d) believal Cairo Airport.	ble e) ordinary
ı		a) reached	b) arrived in c) got	d) arrived	at e) went
	Ch	oose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	rd:	
	3	His father bough there.	nt some bird	s from New Guinea w	hich exist only
		a) exotic	b) ancient	c) old	d) relaxing
	4		y angry because of be		with too much
		housework.		3	
		a) comfortable	b) active	c) stuck	d) beautiful
ő	5	She found it very	y hard teaching a class	full of at a s	secondary school as
No.		she was very you			
V		a) teenagers	b) infants	c) babies	d) toddlers
		The shock of her	son's accident		
0)	a) stole		c) robbed	
8	7	These flowers wi	ill grow in a cold		e to be grown in
. (Russia.			
ď		a) weather	b) climate	c) atmosphere	d) day
ľ	8		o keep, so yo	ou have to practise sp	orts.
		a) crowded	b) active	c) exotic	d) away
	9		dership of the compar	ny, ne achieved a lot.	d) \\/h an
		a) While	b) On	c) During	d) When
0 0 10	10		esterday, he	to nospital. I offered t	to go with him.
		a) went	b) was going	c) nau gone	d) going
2	11		ring the plants, it	to faill.	d) was beginning
		a) began	b) begins	c) has begun	d) was beginning
1	12		when I entered the roo	b) you were doing	
-		a) you did		d) were you doing	
1350		c) are you doing	f. b. fire vectorde		
	13		ut of the fire yesterday	c) is coming	d) comes
		a) came	b) was coming	husy?	u) comes
1	14	Did you go out la	ast night or you	c) have	d) are
		a) did	b) were	e) Have	a) are

15	The pharaohs the Pyran	nids and the Sphinx.	d) wa
16	a) have build b) built Ali lived in Luxor for 10 years. This	means that he	d) were building
	a) is still living there	b) lives there now d) lives in another city	
Read	c) never used to live there the following passage, then ans		

Jack lay, quiet and unmoving, for thirty minutes while a stranger repeatedly stabbed(1) him with sharp needles, causing blood to pour steadily out of his leg Jack was getting a tattoo. His friend Tony had recently got a tattoo, and Jack was so impressed by Tony's bravery. Getting a tattoo because your friends and peers have ones is just one of the reasons why a lot of young people in North America get tattoos. Peer pressure⁽²⁾, media influence, and personal expression are some of the common reasons for wearing tattoos today. Sometimes, wearing a tattoo can be a sign that you belong to a certain group. Some of these groups wear only brand-name clothes. When one's friends are all doing something, that person is more likely to do the same thing. The media is another big influence behind the popularity(3) of tattoos in North America. Tattoos can be seen on people appearing in commercials selling expensive cars. Famous sports heroes with tattoos are shown in magazines. Fashion models are often seen in magazines and on TV wearing designer clothes that show their bodies tattooed with detailed and colourful patterns. These media images link tattoos to ideas of wealth, success, and status. As a result, many people decide to geta tattoo for its fashion and status value.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

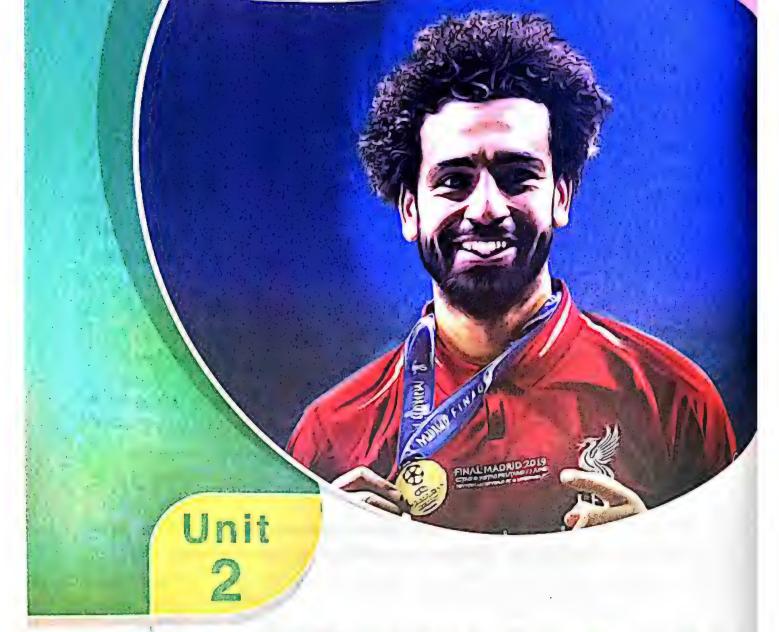
- a) he was getting a tattoo b) he was getting his ears pierced c) he was getting acupuncture d) he was getting a nose ring 18 According to the passage, some people get tattoos because b) they think it will wash off in the bath a) they like pain c) they are religious d) they think it is fashionable 19 Jack thinks people who get tattoos are a) old-fashioned b) cowardly d) foolish c) brave
- 20 The reason Jack wanted to get a tattoo was
 - a) the influence of friends
 - b) a desire to express himself
 - c) the influence of the media

d) all the previous answers

(3) شيوع اشعرة

	21	The best title for this passage is					
		a) The benefits of tattons	b) Where people of	iet tattoos			
		c) The dangers of tattoos	d) Why people get				
	22	According to the passage, medi	ia images are linked to				
		a) wealth b) terrorism	c) failure	d) a, b & c			
b)	23	The underlined word "his" refers	s to				
		a) lony b) Jack	c) Tony's friend	d) Jack's father			
	24	According to the passage, which	h of the following are wa	ys that the media			
		uses tattoos in advertising?					
		a) To sell cars.	b) By using fashion	n models.			
		c) By using sports stars.	d) b & c				
	25	Translate into English:					
		ئات ومشاهدة الأفلام الأجنبية والاستماع لبعض	ن الممكن أن يكون من خلال المحادث	- إن اكتساب اللغة الانجليزية م			
			ة القصص والكتب باللغة الإنجليزية.				
			J				
			***************************************	***************************************			
	26	Translate into Arabic:					
		Our need of water in Egypt is expected to increase in the near future, so we					
		must rationalise our use of water or we will face serious problems.					
			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	***************************************			
		***************************************);;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;			
and a	27	Write an essay of about ONE H	UNDRED AND FIFTY (15	(0) words on			
		the following:	•				
		Why people travel abroad.					
		willy people traver abroad.					
		***************************************	***************************************	***************************************			

B		••••	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	***************************************			
		***************************************	***************************************	***************************************			
		••••	***************************************	***************************************			
8		•	***************************************	***************************************			
		***************************************	***************************************	***************************************			
		***************************************	***************************************	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			
î.							
		Assess your <50%	50:64% 65:	84% 85:100%			
		progress AAAA	Practise more Take mo	ye exams Well done!			
		V					
			Uni	it 1 Al-Adwaa Test 61			
			. 0111	,			





Supporting the Community

bjectives

Reading : A text about Egyptian people who help their communities

Writing: Write a blog on a famous person; a biography of Dr Leelah Hazzah

Listening : An interview with Dr Leelah Hazzah

Speaking : Discussion about helping people; making arrangements

Language : Present and past simple; Present simple passive

Life Skills : Empathy



Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blood pressure	ضغط الدم (n)	
generous (adj)	کریم	
iron (n) (v) – ed	حدید/یکوی	
iron levels (n)	نسبة مستويات الحديد (في الدم)	
prestige (n)	احترام (نفوذ/هيبة/وجاهة)	

*roar(n)(v) – ed	زئير/زمجرةٰ/يزأر
role model (n)	مثل أعلى/قدوة حسنة
speed (n) (v)	سرعة/يسرع
support (v) (n) – ed	يدعم/دعم/مساندة
transplant (n) (v) – ed	زراعة الأعضاء/ينقل عضوًا

Can you hear theroar of the lion? It's roaring loudly.

Vocabulary on Reading

ability (n)	قدرة
admire (v) – d	ب جعد
around (adv)	حول
benefits (n)	فوائد
blood (n)	دم
call (v) – ed	يسمى
cancer (n)	سرطان
chance (n)	فرصة
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية/العمل الخيري
check (v) – ed (n)	يفحص/فحص
community (n)	مجتمع
desire (v) – d (n)	يرغب/رغبة
donate (v) – d	يتبرع بـ
finals (n)	نهائيات
happen (v) – ed	يحدث

happiness (n)	سعادة
health (n)	صحة
hometown (n)	موطن
illness (n)	مرض
injured (adj)	مصاب
long-term (adj)	طويل المدى
reduce (v) – d	يقلل
regular (adj)	منتظم/معتاد
respect (v) – ed	يحترم
save (v) – d	ينقذ/يوفر
score (v) – d	يحرز
share (v) – d	يشارك
succeed (v) – ed	ينجح
the World Cup (n)	كأس العالم
wish (n)	أمنية

Vocabulary on Listening

amongst (prep.)	فيما بين/وسط
conservation (n)	حماية البيئة
fondness (n)	- ·- ولع/شغف/إعجاب
founder (n)	مئۇ'سىس
generation (n)	جيل
grow up (v)	ينضج
hunt (v) – ed	يصطاد
income (n)	دخل
instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
knowledge (n)	معرفة
persuade (v) – d	يقنع

reason (n)	سوالمعا
recognise (v) – d	بقرف
research (n) (v) – ed	
ىل بحث علمى	بحث علمي/يقوم بعم
shopping (n)	التسوق
task (n)	مممة
teenager (n)	مراهق
traditionally (adv)	اثيميلقت
track (v) – ed	وبنتي
views (n)	آراء

You don't need to memorise all at once. You can divide them over 7 days.

Workbook Vocabulary

agreement (n)	اتفاق
compassion (n)	رحمة
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقى
great (adj)	عظيم

intelligence (n)	ذكاء/جهاز المخابرات	
movements (n)	حركات	
run past (v)	يسبق (في الجري)	
soccer (n)	كرة القدم	

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

badly injured	أصيب بشدة
give a chance	يعطى فرصة
love-hate relations	hip
	علاقة حب ممزوجة بالكراهية
on the roof of	على سطح
sense of purpose	الشعور بالهدف/المسئولية
(be) admired for	يعجب لأجل

benefit of	
benefit of	فائدة اـ
find out	يكتشف
(be) praised for	يُعدح لأجل
role model to	مثل أعلى لـ
give a nickname	ينعطى لقبنا
give blood	يتبرع بالدم

get angry with	يغضب من شخص	learn from	يتعلم من
send to	يرسل ك	move to	ينتقل إلى
take part in	يشارك في	was at fue we	احترام من
take the chance	ينتهز الفرصة	respect from	الحدرام هن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjec	tive
admire	يعجب بـ	admiration admirer	إعجاب معجب	admirable admired admiring	مثير للإعجاب معجب معبر عن الإعجار
benefit*	يستفيد	benefit beneficiary	مْائدة مستفيد	beneficial	مفيد/نافع
desire	يرغب/يطلب	desirability desire	جاذبية/كون الشىء مرغوبـًا فيه رغبة	desirable	مرغوب فیه
donate	يتبرع	donation donor	تبرع متبرع		
found	يؤسس	founder foundation	مۇسس تأسىس/مۇسسة	مرتكز على/مؤسس founded	
		generosity	كرم	generous	كريم
injure	يجرح	injury	إساءة/إصابة	injured	مصاب/جريح
regulate	يضبط/ينظم	regulation regulator	نظام/ترتیب مراقب/منظم	regulatory تنظیمی/تقریری	
succeed	ينجح	succession successor	نجاح تتابع/تداول/تعاقب خلیفة/من یخلف غیره/وریث	successful successive	ناجح متتابع/تسلسلی
traditionalis	e يجعل شيئًا تقلي	tradition traditionalis	تقليد شخص متمسك بالتقاليد t	traditional	تقليدى

<sup>My sister benefits from the online videos.
The internet has lots of benefits.
My allowance is no longer beneficial to me.</sup>

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word Meaning

المرادف Synonym

المضاد Antonym

benefits	فوائد
find out	يكتشف
generous	كريم
happen	ثممي
happiness	سعادة
injured	مصاب
long-term	طويل المدى
praise	يمدح
prestige	
يبة/وجاهة)	احترام (نفوذ/ه
support	يدعم
reduce	يقلل
take part in	يشارك في

advantages/profits
discover/detect
open-handed/ big-hearted
occur/take place
pleasure/joy
wounded/hurt
lasting/durable/ continuing
appreciate/glorify
esteem/influence
aid/assist
decrease/cut down
participate in/share with

disadvantages/hind	rances	
	عيوب/عوائق	
conceal/hide	رخف	
mean	بليفيا	
cease/stop	يتوقف	
displeasure/sadness	مزن	
healthy	معافى	
short-term/temporary		
بؤقت	قصير المدى/ه	
condemn/criticise	بنتقد/يدين	
insignificance/unimportance/		
disrespect ماهمية	عدم احترام/عد	
desert/abandon	يتظى عن	
increase/enlarge/expand		
	يزيد/يوسع	
avoid/hinder/block	يتجنب/يعيق	

a) transport

Check Point (1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My grandmother'sgrew up without electricity or computers. a) admiration **b)** generation c) tradition d) donation
- The increase of committing crimes has disturbed the whole
- b) communication a) research c) social d) community
- I don't think that exams are the best way to measure
- **b)** intelligent a) intelligence c) desire

b) transplant

- 4 My father needs a kidney and we are waiting for a donor. c) transform
- d) transfer 5 We all shouldour parents for all their efforts to raise us well.
- - b) recognise c) deny a) criticise d) praise

Check the answers at the end of the book

d) compassion

Reading Text (1)

People who help

Mohamed Salah

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He is admired (1) for his speed and ability(2) to score goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals since 1990.

Salah has been praised (3) for his kind and generous(4) donations to charity in Egypt. He

donated(5) money to his hometown of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer hospital in Cairo.



- يكمترم (1)
- القدرة (2)
- امتدح (3)
- کریم *اسخی* (4)
- تبرع ا
- رغبة الكا
- مثل أعلى/قدوة [7]
- القب/كنية (8)

Salah's desire(6) to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. He is a role model⁽⁷⁾ to millions of Egyptians who gave him the nickname⁽⁸⁾ 'The Happiness Maker'.

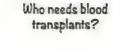
Reading Text

Blood donors

Every year on 14th June, countries around the world take part in World Blood Donor Day(1) to share information about the importance of giving blood.

Why should people donate blood? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly injured (2) or need regular blood transplants(3) because they have a long-term(4) illness.

Giving blood can also have health benefits(5). All donors have their blood pressure(6) and iron levels(7) checked before donation, so people who donate blood can find out quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can save(8) lives and it is easy to do! (8) ينقذ



- اليوم العالمي للتبرع بالدم (1)
- مصاب (2)
- زراعة خلايا الدم (النخاع) (3)
- طويل الأمد (4)
- فوائد (5)
- ضغط الدم (6)
- مستوبات الحديد (١

How do blood donors have benefits?

Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2

Listening Text

Interviewer: In today's programme we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation(1) biologist and founder(2) of Lion Guardians, a conservation project in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in

lions?

Martin

: Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions roaring (4) at night when he was sleeping on the roof of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up (5), she would find out how to save them in other countries.

Interviewer: What happened next?

Martin

: She went to America to study conservation biology(6) and then moved to Kenya to research lions amongst the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing(7). Did you know that sixty or fifty years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20,000 now?

Interviewer: So why are lions disappearing so quickly?

Martin

: There are several reasons. People have built houses in the areas that lions traditionally(8) hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack(9) the villagers' livestock(10), you know, their cows and goats. The villagers get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another

reason is prestige(11) - in Maasai culture, young men get a lot of respect(12) from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which

shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

Interviewer: What did Leelah do?

Martin

: She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their views (13) about lions. She learnt that they have a love-hate relationship with lions; they admire their beauty but hate them for eating their cattle. She also understood the prestige that came from being a lion killer [14] and realised that she needed to persuade(15) the young men that



- محافظة على البيئة (1)
- مؤسس (2)
- مشروع (3)
- يزار (صوت الأسد) (4)
- يكبر (5)
- علم حماية الأحياء (6)
- يختفي (7)
- تقليديًا (8)
- يهجم (9)
- ماشية (١٥)
- هيبة (11)
- احترام (12)
- الأراء (13)
- قاتل (14)
- يقنع (15)

keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the advantages of protecting lions instead.

Interviewer: Is that when she started Lion Guardians?

Martin

employs local people⁽¹⁷⁾ to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to track⁽¹⁶⁾ lions in the wild, so they are taught to become lion guardians rather than lion killers. The

organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

Interviewer: How successful is the programme?

*Wery successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular income 19 and

a sense of purpose⁽²⁰⁾. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with fondness.

Interviewer: And finally, what can other conservation ists learn from Lion Guardians?

*The importance of listening to people in the community and to

recognise how much knowledge local people have. By working together both the locals and conservations can benefit.

Interviewer: Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a ...

What did Dr Leelah Hazzah do to keep lions?

مرايا (16)

يتتبع (18)

دخل منتظم (۱۱۹

شغف/حب ر21

مجتمع ر22

معرفة (23)

الشعور بالمحف/المسئولية (20)

السكان المحليين (17)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Check Point (2 1 Our soldierssome enemy planes on the radar screen. d) tracked c) ticked b) trucked a) tricked 2 I've alwayshim for being such a wonderful teacher. c) despised d) liked b) hated a) admired 3 My daughter's was "the little queen" when she was young. c) nickname d) pen name b) surname a) first name 4 I had a very severe headache because of the high blood c) donation d) pressure b) levels a) stress 5 Dr. Magdy Yacoub is the of Aswan Heart Centre. d) finding c) foundation b) founder a) finder

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

blood pressure

- ضغط الدم

▶ a measure of the pressure at which blood flows through the body

generous

کریم

willing to give money, help, etc. especially more than is usual

iron levels

مستويات الحديد (في الدم)

iron is a chemical element (symbol Fe) which exists in small amounts in the blood. The level is the amount or quantity of iron present.

long-term

طويل المدى

continuing for a long time into the future

prestige

احترام

the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society

roar

زئير

a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion

role model

مثل أعلى

a person who people admire and whose behaviour they try to copy

speed

سرعة

how fast something moves or travels

desire

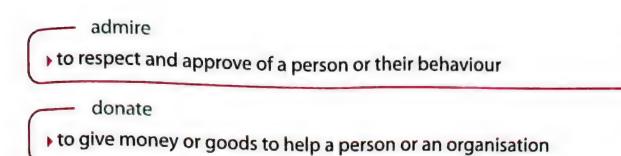
رغبة

a strong feeling that you want something

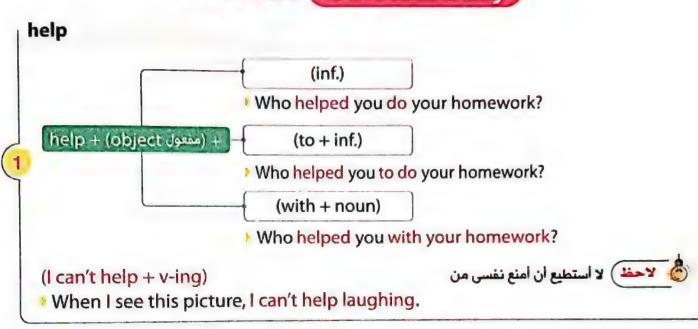
transplant

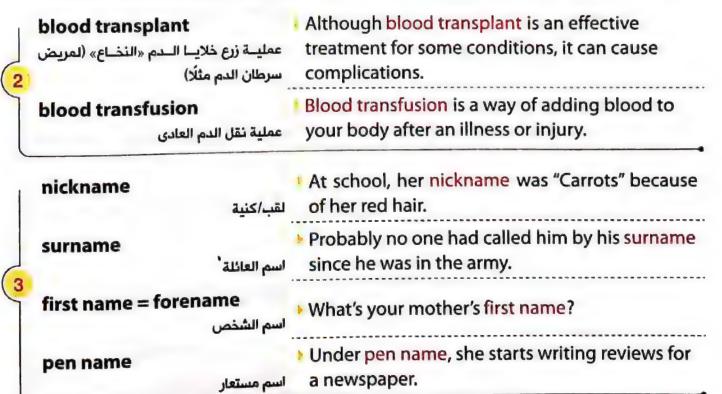
زراعة الأعضاء

medical operations in which a new organ is put into someone's body



Notes on Vocabulary





يتبرع بـ

(للمفرد) (شــىء آخر إضافــى أو مختلف) ثاتى بعــد another (الكميــات – المســافات – فترات الوقت – المبالغ المالية) :	I like this cake. Can I have another piece? This pen is broken. Give me another one, please, I want to stay in this hotel for another 6 days.
فعل + Others الآخرون (لا يأتي بعدها اسم، وتفيد الجمع أيضـُا)	Some people like English. Other people don't like it. Some people like English. Others don't like it.
اسم مفرد أو جمع + the other فعل + فعل + the others الأخرون (للجمع) يأتى بعدها فعل وقد لا يأتى	You gave me one pen. Where is the other (pen)? You gave me one pen. Where are the other pens? You gave me one pen. Where are the others? There are 50 students in my class; 30 like English but the others don't.
	> She decided to go out.
decide on + noun پختار/یحدد	You have to decide on your goal in life.
decide that + subject + verb یقرر ان	* He decided that you should attend.
reason for + noun/(v-ing) اسبب ا	The police asked her about the reason for her visit. Could you explain your reasons for choosing this job?
The reason why + (subject) + (verb)	The reason why so many people caught the flu is still not clear.
reason with + شخص پجادل (شخص)	Please, don't reason with me, the matter is over.
cause of + noun/(v-ing)	The major cause of these accidents is that drivers go too fast.

	instead of + (noun/v-ing) بدلًا من	He travelled to Alexandria instead of staying at home.
4	instead, + subject + verb بدلًا من ذلك	Instead, he travelled to Alexandria to attend the conference.
	Subject + verb +, instead بدلًا من ذلك	He travelled to Alexandria to attend the conference, instead.
respecte	respected یلقی الاحترام (محترم)	My friend is a respected doctor. All people respect him.
8	respectful يظهر الاحترام للآخرين (محترم)	All of us should be respectful to authority.
	respectable محترم أو مناسب من وجهة نظر المجتمع	She comes from a respectable family. Please, try to wear something respectable to the party.

To be fluent, focus on these notes well.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Donating blood can help people if they have been badly injured.

غالبًا يسبق الحال الصفة خاصة إذا كانت الصفة منتهية ب ed.

All donors have their blood pressure and iron levels checked.

عند اســتخدام (P.P.) + something + (P.P.) والتي تســمي قاعدة الســببية وتعنى أن شخصــًا آخر قام بالفعل وليس فاعل الجملة،

The organisation works with the community to help both the lions and the livestock.

كلمة community تعنى مجتمعـًا (أشخاصـًا يعيشون في نفس المكان أو لهم نفس المهنة) ... أما كلمة society فهي تعنى المجتمع بشكل عام.

Salah has been praised for his kind and generous donations to charity. We should donate money to charities to help the poor.

كلمة Charity إذا جاءت بمعنى (جمعية خيرية) فهي اسم يعد ... أما إذا جاءت بمعنى (العمل الخيري) فهي اسم لا يعد.

Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers.

my – his – her – our – your – their لوجود الملكية 5' أو أي صفة ملكية 1be لوجود الملكية 5

How successful is the programme?

منا كلمة How سواء للتعجب أو الاستفهام يأتي بعدها الصفة أما مع الاسم نستخدم What.

What a success the programme achieved!

People who donate blood can find out if they have any health problems.

هنا كلمة health مع المشكلات بمعنى مشاكل صحية ولا يصح استخدام healthy problems بالترجمة الحرفية.

Check Point (3) Choose the

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Drivers mustn't exceed thelimit on highways.
 - a) spot

b) speed

c) fast

- d) speedy
- 2 Mr Shreif suffered from many problems before he was taken to
 - a hospital in Germany.
 - a) health

b) healthy

c) death

- d) wealth
- 3 Our teacher gave us manychances to improve our marks.
 - a) another

b) the other

c) other

- d) the others
- 4 Can you help me my homework, Mom?
 - a) in

b) to

c) for

- d) with
- 5 To live well, one should get a salary.
 - a) respect

b) respective

c) respectable

d) respectful





Vocabulary Exercises

) F	Remem	bering • Understanding	Applying • Analysing	Evaluating				
1	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:							
	(Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary							
1								
	1	It was very	of your brother to	o help you and lend	you all that i	noney.		
4		a) greedy	b) generous	c) mean	d) miser	able		
200	2	Many famous act	ors support	that help disabled	people.			
1		a) generations	b) locations	c) clubs	d) chari	ties		
3	3		n high blood					
		a) sugar	b) transplant	c) force	d) press	ure		
ľ	4	The Egyptian eco	nomy is in a bad ne	ed for our sincere	***************************************			
è		a) disagreement	b) supposition	c) oppression	d) supp	ort		
	5	Donating blood	can help people if th	ey need regular blo	od ۲۰۲۲	إدارة المرح التعليمية		
		a) transports	b) transmits	c) transforms	d) trans	plants		
	6	After a long argu	ment with my collea	agues, I had no	to say anot	ther word.		
N		a) desire	b) hatred	c) design	d) affect	tion		
1	7	I the ma	n who I met last we	ek, but I couldn't rer	nember his n	iame.		
		a) realised	b) understood	c) organised	d) recog	gnisea		
	8	Many people are	attracted by the	of working to	r a top comp	any.		
D,					رقیة ۲۰۲۲ مصامل الم	كفر صقر بنات - الشا		
-	,	a) livestock	b) party	c) prestige	a) Dioo	d erestures		
0.0	9	Yesterday, I watch	ned a very wonderful	about som	e rare marine	creatures.		
		a) documentary	b) document	c) research	a) COM	Heritary		
0	10	The headmaster	gave me the	of organising the	school trip.	tion		
		a) profession	b) work	c) task	d) loca	uon		
1	11	The builders have	e only just started to	lay theor	to d) four	dations		
1 2		a) situations	b) organisations	c) establishmen	of the	nations		
	12	Before the opera	tion, a nurse should	CHECK the plood	d) treas	ura		
		a) leisure	b) temperature	c) pressure	act for few m	onths		
	13	The company ha	d a fairlyco	c) short-term	d) long	-term		
1000		a) full-term	b) half-term	came had	k with two a	nals in		
	14	In the second ha	If, our national team	Carrie Daci	Y . YY . 2 . WELL . 2	مدرسة الزنكلون الثان		
		five minutes.	t t	c) noisy	ریاد عرفال d) roari			
Short .		a) crying	b) weeping	absence is frequent	these days	3		
1	15	I don't know the	reason his	c) why	d) of	No, it's not		
		a) for	b) with	frequent absence t	hese days	a repeated		
	16	I don't know the	reasonhis	c) why	d) of	question.		
100		a) for	b) with	C) WITY	۵, ٥١			

	Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms				Ollyms	
	17	7 Mr Magdy always angry with the students if they do something wro				do something wrong
		a) gives	b) gets	c) m	akes	d) does
	18	The rich sho	uldmor	nev to charities t	o help the po	Or. ٢٠٢٢علية ١٠٠١ الدقطلية ٢٠٢٢
		a) donate	b) steal	c) ro	b	d) own
	19		to cand	er research was	very generou	IS.
			b) donatio		onor	d) donating
	20	It was very d	lifficult to	the child to te	ll us what hac	I happened to her,
			b) persuas			d) persuades
	21	I was not	enough to	make the child	tell us what h	ad happened to her.
		a) persuade	b) persuas	ion c) pe	ersuasive	d) persuades
	22	Studying ha	rd is really	to every stude	ent.	
		a) benefit	b) benefici	ary c) be	neficial	d) benefits
	23	The players v	were completely	ready to take	in the c	competition.
		a) place			are	d) part
	24	Parents shou	uld be the role m	odels th	neir children.	
0,		a) to		c) wi		d) at
	25		all the Egyptians			
			b) generos			d) genre
	Ch	loose the Tw	vo correct ansi	wers of the Fin	re options:	
	26	Our teacher	always helps us	our lesso	ons easily.	
		a) study	b) studying	c) to study	d) to stud	ying e) studies
	27	We all should	d try hard to	our goals in	life.	
ı		a) score	b) sit	c) arrive	d) reach	e) achieve
1	28	تضافة Hosting	the Handball است	World Cup add	ed to our co	untry's international
			synonyms of the	e word "prestige"	'are	and
1		a) esteem	b) influence	c) profit	d) satisfac	tion e) displeasure
ï	29	A terrible acc	cident happened	on the way to	Cairo yesterda	ay. The meanings of
Į,		• •	areand .			
		a) occurred	b) took place	c) increased	d) stopped	e) ceased
A	30	Passing my e	xams is one or th	and	or my happine	ss. The opposites of
		•	ppiness" are	c) sorrow		
-		a) pleasure	b) joy	C) SUITOW	a) amusen	nent e) sadness



Lessons 1 & 2



Language

1)

The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Form

Positive

He/She/It + v. + s/es/(y-ies)

· He visits his uncle every weekend.

I/They/We/You + inf.

• I like oranges and bananas.

Negative

He/She/It + doesn't + inf.

Nada doesn't eat fish.

I/They/We/You + don't + inf.

My parents don't watch TV.

Question

Does (he/she/it) + inf.?

• Does Mona study her lessons?

Do (I/they/we/you) + inf.?

Do they work hard?

Wh-word + do/does + subj. + inf.?

• Where do you live?

Passive

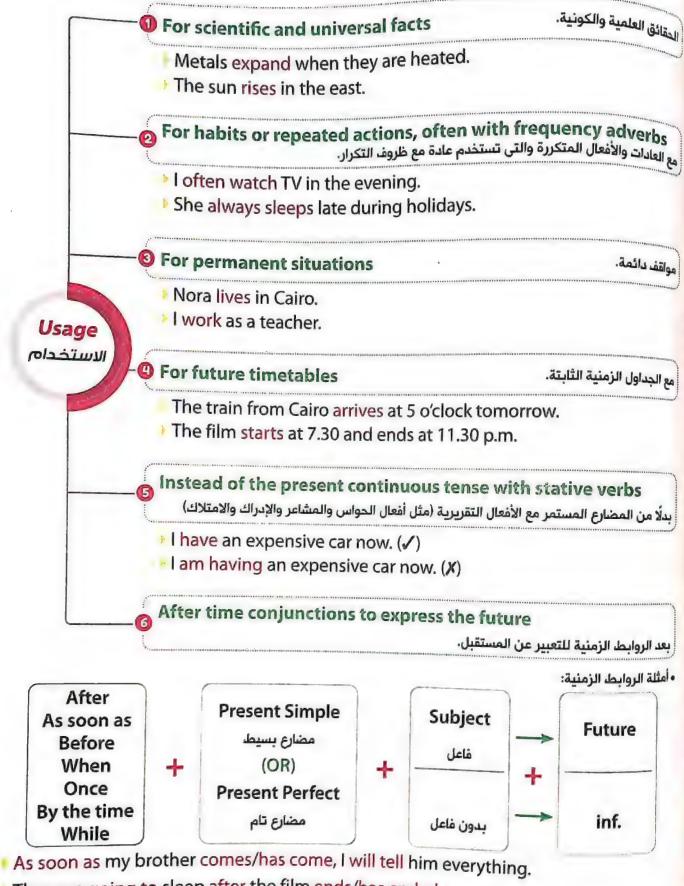
Obj. + am/is/are + P.P.

People speak English all over the world.

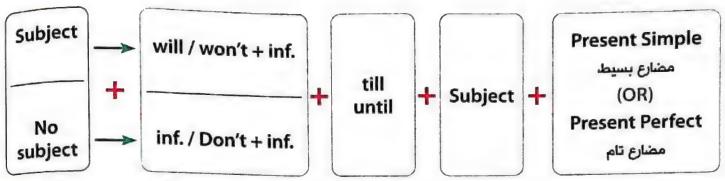
English is spoken all over the world.

(Active)

(Passive)



- They are going to sleep after the film ends/has ended.
- By the time she sleeps/has slept, try to phone her.



- I won't go out until I phone/have phoned my friends.
- I will wait till my father comes/has come.
- Wait until he calls his father to come.
- Don't sleep till you finish/have finished studying your lessons.

Present Habits

العادات في المضارع

(1) Subject + (am/is/are) + used to + (v-ing), noun or a pronoun.

He is used to sleeping early.

(2) It is + (someone's/قيد ملكية) + habit to + inf.

It is her habit to study at night.

(3) Subject + (am/is/are) + in the habit of + (v-ing/Noun)

He is in the habit of going to the shops early.

(4) Subject + (always/usually /often/...) + فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط + for + (someone/ضمير مفعول) + to + inf.

It is habitual for him to watch TV at night.



- Weto having breakfast at the terrace. We feel more comfortable.

a) used

b) are used

c) use

d) using

﴾ الإجابة هي (b) لأن العادة ما زالت قائمة بدليل وجود المضارع البسيط في الجملة التالية، وللتعبير عن العادات القائمة نستخدم v. to be + used to + v.ing

Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2

Key words 🕠

1. Adverbs of Frequency

ظروف التكرار

always	
How often	

sometimes

often

regularly

seldom

generally

usually

occasionally

frequently

never

rarely

hardly ever

scarcely

in general

always = at all times

usually = as usual = as ever

occasionally = from time to time = now and again

- Rasha always sleeps late. = Rasha sleeps late at all times.
- I go to the zoo with my children from time to time.
- = I occasionally go to the zoo with my children.

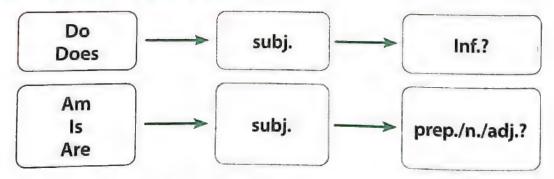
2. Adverbs of Time

ظروف زمنية

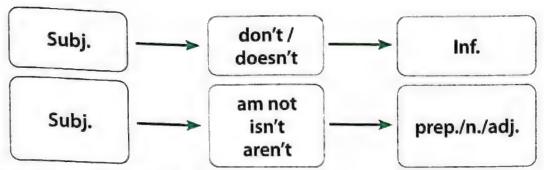
- every/each (week/month/year/...)
- in the (morning, afternoon/evening)
- at night/at noon/on (Fridays/Sundays/...)
- at the weekend/once/twice/three times a (week/month/year/...)
- daily/weekly/monthly/yearly = annually

Important Notes





- Are you busy studying your lessons today?
- What is your father's job?
- Do you study on Fridays?
- Where does your father work?



- She doesn't like watching football matches.
- They aren't happy because of losing the match.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Are the children the garden now?

a) playing

b) play

c) played

d) in

الإجابة هي (d) لأن السؤال عن حروف الجر يكون باستخدام v. to be ولا يمكن استعمال playing لعدم وجود حرف الجر in بعدها.



١ ﴾ تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد (٧. to be).

- He usually comes to work early.
- He is always proud of his country.

٢ ﴾ من الممكن أن تأتي (usually/sometimes) في بداية الجملة أو في آخرها.

- Usually I drive my car to school.
- I play football with my friends sometimes.

٣) تأتى الظروف الزمنية إما في بداية الجملة وإما في نهايتها.

- I go to school every day.
- Every day, I go to school.

٤) لاحظ أن never لا تلغى (s/es) المضافة للفعل في المضارع مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب.

Nora never comes late.

don't + inf. = never + inf.

ه ﴾ ظروف التكرار الدالة على العادة مثل: every – usually – often – always من الممكن أن تستخدم للتعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي مع وجود إشارة للماضي.

- They went to the club every day during the last holiday.
- Hana always slept early when she was young.

Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2 81

نمشرح زمن الماضى البسيط في الوحدة السابقة، وللمراجعة السريعة عليه نتذكر ما يلى،

We travelled to Tanta yesterday.

He often slept late when he was young.

علدة كانت تحدث في الماضي

First, we met our friends and then we went to the cinema together.

I didn't see my friend when I went to the party.

نفي الماضي البسيط

How did you win the last football match?

السؤال في الماضي البسيط

A very good match between Egypt and Nigeria was played yesterday.

من الممكن استخدام for مع زمن الماضي البسيط، عند وجود دليل على انتهاء الحدث تمامًا.

He worked in this company for 20 years. He retired a month ago.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 In the solar system, all planetsaround the sun in orbits.
 - a) move

b) moves

c) moved

- d) moving
- 2 Water into steam when you boil it.
 - a) turns

b) turn

c) is turning

- d) has turned
- 3 MonaTV and goes to bed late every day.
 - a) watch

b) watches

c) is watching

- d) watched
- 4 Hegets up early. He is always late.
 - a) doesn't

b) never

c) didn't

d) won't

- 5 Many people to the stadium to watch the final match yesterday.
 - a) had gone

b) went

c) have been

d) was going



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

1 The shop opens at 9 a.m. and	_	Rememi		Applying Analysing nswer from a, b, c	• Evaluating • Creating	I think number one is (b), isn't it?	
a) closing b) closes c) close d) is closing 2 Hamed sometimes articles for his school magazine. a) write b) was writing c) is writing d) writes 3 We usually our grandparents before their death. a) visit b) visits c) visited d) have visited 4 It rarely in Egypt except in some areas of Sinai. a) snow b) snowed c) snows d) is snowing 5 In the past, it in Egypt all the winter and the weather was warm and sunny a) didn't rain b) doesn't rain c) hadn't rained d) hasn't rained 6 As soon as my father home, I will tell him to take us on a picnic. a) came b) have come c) comes d) come 7 They English novels and books very often. They rarely do. a) don't read b) always read c) didn't read d) never read 8 I last my friend Magda when we were in Alexandria. a) have seen b) see c) had seen d) saw 9 The sun rises from the west. a) doesn't b) always c) never d) no longer 10 Most shops in Cairo until 9:00. a) opens b) don't open c) aren't opening d) is opened 11 When I was 15 years old, I usually much time with my friends outside home a) spend b) was spending c) had spent d) spent 12 Maya to her school in her father's car. She rarely walks to school. a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually d) usually go 13 A: Magdy usually late for school? B: Yes, Sir. a) Does b) Has c) was used to d) is used to							
2 Hamed sometimes	-	1	the shop opens a			d) is closing	
a) write b) was writing c) is writing d) writes 3 We usually our grandparents before their death. a) visit b) visits c) visited d) have visited 4 It rarely in Egypt except in some areas of Sinai. a) snow b) snowed c) snows d) is snowing 5 In the past, it in Egypt all the winter and the weather was warm and sunny a) didn't rain b) doesn't rain c) hadn't rained d) hasn't rained 6 As soon as my father home, I will tell him to take us on a picnic. a) came b) have come c) comes d) come 7 They English novels and books very often. They rarely do. a) don't read b) always read c) didn't read d) never read 8 I last my friend Magda when we were in Alexandria. a) have seen b) see c) had seen d) saw 9 The sun rises from the west. a) doesn't b) always c) never d) no longer 10 Most shops in Cairo until 9:00. a) opens b) don't open c) aren't opening d) is opened 11 When I was 15 years old, I usually much time with my friends outside home a) spend b) was spending c) had spent d) spent 12 Maya to her school in her father's car. She rarely walks to school. a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually d) usually go 13 A: Magdy usually late for school? B: Yes, Sir. a) Does b) Has 14 It is her habit to sleep late. She this. b) has been used c) was used to d) is used to	-		•	•	•		
3 We usually our grandparents before their death. a) visit b) visits c) visited d) have visited 4 It rarely in Egypt except in some areas of Sinai. a) snow b) snowed c) snows d) is snowing 5 In the past, it in Egypt all the winter and the weather was warm and sunny. a) didn't rain b) doesn't rain c) hadn't rained d) hasn't rained 6 As soon as my father home, I will tell him to take us on a picnic. a) came b) have come c) comes d) come 7 They English novels and books very often. They rarely do. a) don't read b) always read c) didn't read d) never read 8 I last my friend Magda when we were in Alexandria. a) have seen b) see c) had seen d) saw 9 The sun rises from the west. a) doesn't b) always c) never d) no longer 10 Most shops in Cairo until 9:00. a) opens b) don't open c) aren't opening d) is opened 11 When I was 15 years old, I usually much time with my friends outside home a) spend b) was spending c) had spent d) spent 12 Maya to her school in her father's car. She rarely walks to school. a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually d) usually go 13 A: Magdy usually late for school? B: Yes, Sir. a) Does b) Has c) Is b) has been used c) was used to d) is used to		2				d) writes	
a) visit b) visits c) visited d) have visited 4 It rarely	-	_	•			a) writes	
4 It rarely	-	3				d) have visited	
a) snow b) snowed c) snows d) is snowing In the past, it	1 :	A	•		•		
5 In the past, it		*				d) is snowing	
a) didn't rain b) doesn't rain c) hadn't rained d) hasn't rained 6 As soon as my father	4 6 4	5				_	
6 As soon as my father	0	3	a) didn't rain	b) doesn't rain	() hadn't rained	d) hasn't rained	
a) came b) have come c) comes d) come 7 They		6	As soon as my fat	ther home	. I will tell him to take u	s on a picnic.	
7 They English novels and books very often. They rarely do. a) don't read b) always read c) didn't read d) never read 8 I last my friend Magda when we were in Alexandria. a) have seen b) see c) had seen d) saw 9 The sun rises from the west. a) doesn't b) always c) never d) no longer 10 Most shops in Cairo until 9:00. 11 When I was 15 years old, I usually much time with my friends outside home a) spend b) was spending c) had spent d) spent 12 Maya to her school in her father's car. She rarely walks to school. a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually d) usually go 13 A: Magdy usually late for school? B: Yes, Sir. a) Does b) Has c) Is d) Did 14 It is her habit to sleep late. She	e					d) come	
a) don't read b) always read c) didn't read d) never read 8 I last	Ì	7				ely do.	
8 I last			-		c) didn't read	d) never read	
a) have seen b) see c) had seen d) saw 9 The sunrises from the west. a) doesn't b) always c) never d) no longer 10 Most shops in Cairo	1	8	Llast my			a.	
9 The sunrises from the west. a) doesn't b) always c) never d) no longer 10 Most shops in Cairo) ()	Sea.				d) saw	
a) doesn't b) always c) never d) no longer 10 Most shops in Cairo	ĺ	9	•			إدارة المرج - القاهرة٢٠٢٢	
a) opens b) don't open c) aren't opening d) is opened 11 When I was 15 years old, I usually much time with my friends outside home a) spend b) was spending c) had spent d) spent 12 Maya to her school in her father's car. She rarely walks to school. a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually d) usually go 13 A: Magdy usually late for school? B: Yes, Sir. a) Does b) Has c) Is b) has been used c) was used to 14 It is her habit to sleep late. She this.	6				c) never	d) no longer	
a) opens b) don't open c) aren't opening d) is opened 11 When I was 15 years old, I usually	-	10		iro until 9:	300.		
11 When I was 15 years old, I usually			alanons	h) don't open	c) aren't opening	d) is opened	
a) spend b) was spending c) had spent d) spent 12 Maya to her school in her father's car. She rarely walks to school. a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually d) usually go 13 A: Magdy usually late for school? B: Yes, Sir. a) Does b) Has c) Is d) Did 14 It is her habit to sleep late. She this.		11	When I was 15 ve	ars old. I usually	much time with my fr	riends outside home.	
12 Maya to her school in her father's car. She rarely walks to school. a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually d) usually go 13 A: Magdy usually late for school? B: Yes, Sir. a) Does b) Has c) Is d) Did 14 It is her habit to sleep late. She this.	10000		- \ d	h) was spending	c) had spent	a) spent	
a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually and usually goes and usually goes and usually goes and usually late for school? B: Yes, Sir. a) Does b) Has c) Is d) Did 14 It is her habit to sleep late. She this.		12	Mayato	her school in her fa	ather's car. She rarely w	alks to school.	
13 A:	1000		a) goes usually	b) usually goes	c) go usually	d) usually go	
a) Does b) Has this. 14 It is her habit to sleep late. Shethis. b) has been used c) was used to d) is used to	04,1	13	A: Mago	ly usually late for so	chool? B: Yes, Sir.	مدرسة بنى محمد سلطان - المنيا٢٠٢٢	
14 It is her habit to sleep late. Shethis. b) has been used () was used to (d) is used to	- 12 m		a) Does	b) Has	C) 15	d) Did	
Li has been lised to was used to was used to		14	It is her habit to s	leep late. She	this.		
a used to	Section 1	1		h) has been USEO	C) was used to		
15. He reached home off his dirty clothes and had a snower.	100	15	He reached home	e,off his d	irty clothes and had a s	hower.	
The last the	The state of			· \ += <0			
16 I didn't do anything wrong, so I don't know why I yesterday.	and the same	16	I didn't do anythi	ng wrong, so I don	t know why I	yesterday.	
a) munich ad	A			J	#/ (, de - de de - de		
d) wasn't punished			The second secon		d) wasn't punished	a	

	17	Salma is so pund	tual she	comes late.	ر المقطم والخليفة - القاهرة ٢٠٢٣ المقطم والخليفة - القاهرة ١٠٥٣ (d)
		a) doesn't	b) won't	c) will	d) never
	18	My brother didn	'h voo to be been b	ut now he	
ч		a) was	use to be busy, b	c) does	d) has
	19	My father works	b) is	busy treating p	
		a) always is	as a doctor. He	Jic always hei	ng d) always
	20	l anvays is	b) is always	c) is always bei	ompany today
		everything is OK	ing to discuss som	ne problems in the co	ompany today, and now
		a) have		N	d) am h
	21	They left the hand	b) had had	c) had	d) am having
		a) leaves	se early as their bu	is to Cairoa	t exactly / a.m.
	22	Nothing also	b) left	c) leave	d) had left
		a) didn't da	to help the patie	nt yesterday, so ne b	ecame in a serious case.
Ш		ar didit (do	D) is done	wasn't done	(II) Was done
		Ile am adnon ou	what our t	eacher said about or	rganising our work
- 13		a) remembers	D) are remember	ing chad rememb	ered d remember
Ш	~~	I English	a lot better now a	s we've got a creative	e teacher.
		an understand	ling	b) understands	
- N	25	c) understood		d) understand	
	25	A: your p	parents usually dor	nate blood? B: Yes, th	ey always do so.
0.		•			مرسة كفر صقر الثانوية بنات - الشرقية ٢٢ ،
		a) Do	b) Did	c) Why	d) Whon
	26	The plane lands at	5 o'clock tomorro	w. This is a	u) when
		a) present habit	b) future fact	c) timetable	d) hope
	27	My friend lives in	Alexandria. This me	Pans	u) nope
		a) he doesn't live t	here		
		b) it was his place	of living one day		
	(c) this is his tempo	rary place of living	r	
		d) this is his perma	ment place of livin	a	
	28	The final match sta	irts at 10 o'clock. T	his means	
:	ē	a) the final match i	never starts at 10 c	clock	
		the final match			
		the final match u			
1	0	I) the final match t	ime is set to start a	at 10 o'clock by a time	
2	29 [iverpool is loved b	ov evervone in our	family. This means	etable
	а) everyone in our	family loves Livern	ool	***************************************
		everyone in our			
		Liverpool players	_	•	
١.		Liverpool loves e			
3		don't work hard ar			
3		work hard	., longen mis mee	h) used to	
		haven't stopped v	working hard	b) used to work h	ard
		naven i stopped i	Working Hard	d) didn't use to w	ork hard

Test Yourself "





Unit 2

Lessons 1 & 2

			and the second second second	
ì	Remem	bering Understanding Applying Analysing	Evaluating Creating	
	CI	hoose the correct answer from a, b, c	ord:	
		Moreis needed into the effe		erent hody organs.
ŀ		a) search b) reservation	c) recovery	d) research
l	2	Mr Ahmed has a negative	hout politics. He doesn't	like it at all.
l		a) scene b) view	c) sight	d) scenery
l	3	Damanhour University wasin	2010. It consisted of 12 co	olleges at that time.
l		a) found b) founded	c) published	d) designed
ŀ	4	A love-hateis when you ha		
Į		something.	•	
Q		a) relationshipb) fondness		
	5	The new educational system will be	of great to stud	ents and teachers.
		a) standardb) injuryMohamed Salah is one of the world	c) benefit	d) level
	6			
l		a) better than b) least		d) best
l	7	After the exam, I that I had		
۱		a) relieved b) realised		
ļ	8	·	•	
ì		a) above b) before		d) below
	9	My son helped me my car.	أممامهما	d) washas
)		a) wash b) to washing	c) wasned	d) washes
	10	Itwarm, so I don't often we	ear neavy clothes.	d) always was
		a) is always b) always is	land ma come	d) always was
,	11	If I money, I will ask you to a) needed b) need	c) am needing	d) was needing
J		The River Nile through Sud	lan and Fovnt	a, was necalling
	12		c) runs	d) was running
ľ	40	My son plays in the club. H		
Ŋ	13		c) doesn't	d) never
	4.4	a) ever b) always Students by their teachers	to do well in their exams	s. It is part of
	14	students by their teachers		
0 0		the teaching profession.	b) were encoura	ged
		a) encourage	d) are encourage	ed
-	45	Noha no longerhorror film	ns as she used to.	
. 4.		\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	U IS Traccining	d) watch
-	10	a) watches (b) watched اam not a politician سياسي and l	to any political part	y.
A	10	all hot a politician of	b) am not belon	ging to
2		a) don't belong	d) was never be	long to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Man cannot live in society without considering the interests of others as well as their own interests. The word "society" means a group of people with the same laws and the same way of life. People in society may make their own decisions, but these decisions should not be harmful to others. One man's decisions may so easily harm another person. For example, a motorist may be in a hurry to get to a friend's house. He sets out, driving at full speed. One careless motorist has struck another car. Too many road accidents happen through the thoughtlessness of selfish drivers. We have governments, the police and the law courts to prevent or punish such criminal acts. But in addition, all men ought to observe certain rules of conduct. Every man ought to behave with consideration for other people.

He ought not to steal, cheat, or destroy the property of others. There is no place for this sort of behaviour in a civilised society. Men in a free society may think as they please. They may even choose their own government. In return for these privileges, they ought not to act selfishly. They ought always to respect the rights of others. The happiness of a community depends on the behaviour of its individual members.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The main idea of the passage clearly shows that
 - a) every man ought to behave as he likes
 - b) men ought to act selfishly
 - c) no one can have his own way all the time
 - d) many road accidents happen through careful drivers
- 2 In a free society,
 - a) people usually want to have their own way
 - b) a man never considers the interests of others
 - c) people are told what to think by government rules
 - d) everyone ought to behave selfishly
- 3 It is to respect the rights of others.
 - a) right and thoughtless
 - b) not really necessary
 - c) very selfish
 - d) right and thoughtful

1 1	4	4 Members of a civilised society usually						
,		a) steal and cheat						
		b) harm the interests of other	ers					
		c) behave in a responsible w	vav					
		d) disrespect the rights of of	thers					
	5	The underlined word "its" ref	ers to					
1		a) happiness	b) behaviour					
N.		c) community	d) village					
3	6	There is no place for						
		a) development	b) accidents					
		c) bad behaviors	d) happiness					
V	7	The word "privileges" in the	passage means					
V.		a) disadvantages	b) special rights					
N		c) drawbacks	d) decisions					
	8	To stop criminal acts and pu	unish those who do them, we must have					
		a) governments	b) the police					
		c) law courts	d) all mentioned					
6								
0	 A) Translate into Arabic: 1. Our parents exert(1) great efforts to please us and provide a happy, so 							
		such to them.						
		life for us. We really owe much to them.						
		2 At the international level,	Salah represented Egypt at youth level, winning					
		a bronze medal in the Afri	ican under 20 Cup of Nations.					

(20	1	3. Natural disasters(3) like ear	rthquakes, hurricanes(4) and volcanoes can cause					
(O)	,	tremendous(5) havoc(6).						
		***************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,					
	E	3) Translate into English:	١- لكي نتمكن من الحياة يسعادة وارتباح، هناك سيرا، وادر و مو أن					
		ا الفرصة الحقيقية للحصول على تعليم جيد	 ١- لكى نتمكن من الحياة بسعادة وارتياح، هناك سبيل واحد و هو أن يتم منحا لنتكمن من الحصول على عمل جيد فى المستقبل. 					
100			V					

19		***************************************						

····	لمخلصین لاتخاذ خطوات فا	ع رسی ،بعد ۔۔۔			
 نائق	ه وردب أن يبقى لمدة ١٥				قمعًا (٩) بالأمة.
 نائق	ه وردب أن يبقى لمدة ١٠			\$\$####################################	***************************************
نائق	نه وردي أن يبقى لمدة ٥٠	*****************	***************************************		***************************************
		Ai-	11.4	بى وضع صحى لائق ا	 أن يكون المتبرع بالدم ف
	مه ویبب ن یه ت	تاتیر علی صحد	بسبل تبرعه دون ال	19-19-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-	ت الملاحظة الطبية (١٠٠).
****		*******************	******************	0207#2500000000#2706500092500677700	**************************************
****		******************			********************************
Alc	Lloude				
3	How to transl	ate			•
				to + in	+ اسم يتم ترجمتها الى f
				الها ترجمة.	_{ما} ت التوكيد مثل (إن) ليس
				ـد أن تبدأ بالفاعل.	بملة في اللغة الإنجليزية لاب
				اقتصادها.	ول الكثير من الدول تحسين
- A lot c	f countries try to ir	nprove th	eir economy	<i>1</i> .	
4) Write	an essay of about	ONE HILL	IDDED AND	FIETV (2 FO)	uele on the full
1. A H	an essay of about	CIVE HOL	DRED AND	FIF I Y (150) WO	ras on the follow
2 Di	iography about a f	ramous so	ientist.		
4. DII	erent ways to sup	port com	munity.		
******	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	***********	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	#\$#***################################	10.000.110.000.000
******	}	**************		004841444	

		•	*************************	*****************************	
*******	199905000000000000000000000000000000000				,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
******	***************************************	*****************		######################################	***************************************
******		*************************************	************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
*******			***************************************		
••••••					•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
3			***************************************	***************************************	
3)			***************************************	***************************************	
)		***************************************	***************************************		
3		***************************************	***************************************		
)		***************************************	***************************************		

)					
lused	more than Jused th			***************************************	
lused		he right	I used a topic	wrote th	e Jused the righ
lused	more than I used th	he right		***************************************	e Jused the righ
lused	more than lused the struct	he right ture.	I used a topic sentence.	i wrote th	e I used the righ
lused	more than I used th	he right ture.	I used a topic	wrote th	e I used the righ

Study



Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary

Link the new vocabulary to your daily life. My aim is to be an engineer.

Vocabulary on Reading

*aim (n)	هدف
amazing (adj)	مذهل/مدهش
attack (v) – ed	يماجم
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء
cattle (n)	الماشية
change (v) – d	يغير
disappear (v) – ed	يختفى
employ (v) – ed	يوظف
guardian (n)	وصي/حامٍ - حارس
hunting (n)	الصيد
killings (n)	عمليات القتل
livestock (n)	ماشية
local (adj)	محلى

missing (adj)	مفقود
monitor (v) – ed	يراقب
movements (n)	حركات
nearby (adj)	قريب
organisation (n)	منظمة
protect (v) – ed	يحمى
responsibility (n)	مسئولية
safe (adj)	آمن
skills (n)	مهارات
together (adv)	معنا
track (v) – ed	يتتبع
understand (v)	ممفي
villagers (n)	سكان القري

Workbook Vocabulary

appearance (n)	مظهر خارجى
ecosystem (n)	النظام البيئى
empathy (n)	مشاركة وجدانية
estimate (v) – d	يقدر
experts (n)	خبراء
follow (v) – ed	يتبع/يرصد
headquarters (n)	المركز الرئيسي
locate (v) – d	يوجد/يقع في

paw print (n)	أثر بصمة (مخلب) حيوان
personality (n)	شخصية
recent (adj)	حديث
signs (n)	علامات
tribe (n)	قبيلة
sense (n)	حاسة
path (n)	ممر/طريق

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

(be) based in	القائم في/الموجود في
(be) based on	
do research	قائم على
important to	يقوم بعمل بحث
	مهم لـ
interested in	مهتم ب
look for	يبحث عن
give a sense of	 یعطی احساسا ب
	تعصى احسست

go missing/get lost	يتوه/يضل الطريق
make sure	72/1
expert at/on/in	۔ خبیر مٰی
search for	نبعث عن
thanks to	بفضل
worry about	ىلە قىلق
help in	رية عداسي

Derivatives

Ve	rib .
amaze	يدهش
estimate*	يقدر
locate	يقع في/يوجد
save	ينقذ/يوفر

Nou	
amazement	دهشة/إعجاب
estimation	تقدير
location	موقع
safety safe	أمان خزينة

Adjective				
amazed amazing	مندهش مدهش			
estimated	مقدر			
located	موجود في موقع			
safe	امن			

We need to estimate the distance. The estimation needs to be accurate.

- The estimated distance is quite accurate.

Word Meaning

(Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

amazing	مدهش
attack	هجوم
disappear	يختفى
employ	يوظف
hope	أمل
missing	مفقود
understand	يفهم
nearby	قريب

المرادف Synonym

astonishing/ unbelievable invasion/aggression vanish/cease hire/appoint longing/ambition/ desire lost/absent grasp/comprehend close/near

المضاد Antonym

believable/ordinary	معقول/عادي
defence/resistance	دفاع/مقاومة
appear/come out	يظمر
fire/discharge	يطرد
despair/hopelessness	یاس
	حاضر/موجود
misunderstand	يسىء الفهم
far/faraway/distant/re	mote
	بعيد/بعيد جا

Working together

Lions are disappearing all over
Africa but there is some hope⁽¹⁾
now after the amazing work of an
organisation called Lion Guardians,
which is based⁽²⁾ in Kenya, but
Guardians help in nearby⁽³⁾ Tanzania.



(1) dai

تقع (2)

مجاور (3)

ماشية (4)

ماشية رزار

يراقب (6)

حفلات الصيد (7)

علماء الأحياء (8)

The aim of Lion Guardians is to help local people to protect their own livestock⁽⁴⁾ and reduce the number of lion killings in the area.

Cattle⁽⁵⁾ are important to the villagers but they often go missing or are attacked by lions. Then the lions are killed as villagers worry about losing more livestock.

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organisation works with the community to help both the lions and the livestock and this is done by employing local people. Maasai men are chosen to become guardians as they understand lions and have the skills needed to monitor⁽⁶⁾ their movements, find missing livestock and stop hunting parties⁽⁷⁾ who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be field biologists ⁵¹ and are given a sense of responsibility.

Lions are monitored every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then make sure their cows are safe.

Lion Guardians are very successful. They help the future of lions as well as the local communities.

What is the main task lion guardians do?

Workbook Text

Maasai Tracking

The Maasai are experts at tracking(1) animals and lions are the most well-known animals that they follow. But how do they do it? The lions are tracked by the Maasai, who use all their senses(2) to follow them.

When a paw print(3) is discovered, it is checked to see if it is an old paw print or a recent⁽⁴⁾ one. Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for signs⁽⁵⁾ to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions are protected by the Maasai from hunting parties (6) and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. Thanks to the Lion Guardians,

(1) تتبع

حواس (2)

اثر (بصمة) مخلب (3)

حدیث (4)

إشارات (5)

حماعات الصيد (6)



everyone is happy!

Vocabulary in Use



Notes on Vocabulary

work with	يعمل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.			
work for یعمل لدی/یعمل لصالح work in (مکان/مجال)		 My brother works for a big company in the city. Egypt works for peace in the Middle East. I hope to work in medical research when I'm older. I work in Al-Salam company which is in October City. The writer said that he was working on a new novel. 			
			ng with –ist وظائف تنتمی بالمقطع –st	scientist pharmacist motorist archaeologist	صیدلانی قائد مرکبة
as well as (v + ing OR	ا الإضافة إلى (تتبعما V + ing OR noun) بالإضافة إلى (تتبعما		ying Englis	sh, he studie	d physics
			ike eating	fish.	
	البات يبيع العامل الدول)				
own		• He owns a big	flat on the	Nile bank.	
own		He owns a big He owes some			
	يمتلك يدين يسلف	He owes some His friend lent	money to	his friend. money.	
owe	يمتلك يدين يسلف	• He owes some	money to	his friend. money.	riend.
owe lend borrow recent	يمتلك يدين يسلف	He owes some His friend lent	money to him some ome mone	his friend. money. ey from his f	

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

ِ بَرِبِطِ Until بِينَ أَرْمَنَةَ مَخْتَلَفَةَ أَو مَتَشَابِهَةً وَهَنَا تَرْبِطُ بِينَ جَمَلَتِينَ فَي زَمَن المضارع البسيط.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for signs

. يمكن أن تربط while بين زمني مضارع مستمر عندما يتزامن نفس الحدثين.

Cattle are important to the villagers but they often go missing or are attacked by lions.

- هناك بعض الكلمات تشير إلى الجمع رغم أنها لا تنتمي بـ s مثل ... people, police, ...

Lion Guardians is changing this

. أسماء المنظمات تعامل معاملة المفرد بالرغم من وجودها في صيغة الجمع وتسمى collective nouns مثل Conted Nations

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - a) skulls
- b) risks
- c) skills
- d) controls
- 2 My son goes to theschool in the centre of the community.
 - a) special
- **b**) local
- c) global
- d) theoretical
- 3 Some factories break the rules and children as young as seven.
 - a) donate
- b) employ
- c) pretend
- d) hunt
- 4 I as well as my wife travelling to Alexandria every year.
 - a) am
- **b**) is

c) are

d) has





Vocabulary Exercises

		Dering Understanding	Applying Analysing	Evaluating Creating	I think number one is (c), what do you think?			
(Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: what do you think?							
1	Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary							
ı								
l	1	The camp was			-Nattondod			
ı		a) attached	b) attracted		d) attended			
	2			weather next week. It wil				
2		a) charge	_		d) change			
1	3	My father is acting	g as a of c	our big family.	مدرسة دميرة الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠,٣٢			
1		a) guardian	b) guarder		d) gardener			
0	4	You must add the	se numbers	to find the total.				
1		a) together	b) apart		d) forward			
	5	Where is the	of the firm? I	want to meet the manag	er.			
Ì		a) headquarter	b) headquarters	c) headbuilding	d) headman			
ì	6	We all can see the	slow of th	e clouds across the sky. T	hey are so beautiful.			
Į		a) agreement	b) development	c) entertainment	d) movement			
N	7	A new restaurant	has opened		our dinner there.			
D	1	a) nearby	b) close	c) nearly	a) neatry			
N	8	My son's different	t hairstyle can con	pletely change his	*******			
Ŋ		alappearance	b) role	c) demonstration	d) relation			
Ŋ	9	Unfortunately, th	e factory is	too close to a resident	iai area.			
ì		a) location	b) located	c) lies	a) situating			
ľ	10	The hunter follow	ved the 0	f the deer and he could o	catch it.			
,	10	a) paw prints	b) tricks	c) fingerprints	d) tracks			
	44	Farmers keep	on their farr	ns.	إدارة أشمون التعليمية ٢٠٢٢			
			h tigarc	CHIOUS	d) cattle			
Ø	40	Usam Hasan Wa	s a/an Eg	yptian player. He helped	the national team to			
	12	win many champ	nionships.					
V	đ		h) amazind	c) ordinary	d) slow			
١		a) boring	es some	against minor illnesses li	ke the flu.			
Ņ								
6		a) production	n't arrest the gang	which is responsible for	r the last			
- (+								
0	2	a) parties	-iven the new dr	ug will be asked to	their progress.			
1	15		given the new or	c) attack	d) achieve			
1	9	a) monitor	b) lose	9, 21222				

E	xpressions, Idioms, P	Prepositions, Derivativ	res, Synonyms & Anto	nyms
16	Thanks me	odern technology, w	e can live a happy a	nd comfortable lie
17	The company has a	et least 1000	who are all very skil	lful.
	The car factory is a	1) employees	el employments	d) employs
	a) employer While we were trav	1) employee	a) omployment	d) employ
		al dot	a) turnod	Mil ran
	while we were trav a) went Scientists worked	ant ant	el turnod	d) ran
	a) for My uncle's office in)) With	a) ac	d) on
	My uncle's office is a) on The film that I	חו נכ	el at	d) into
	The film that I watc) in	c) at	d) into
	They areso) giving	c) taking	d) daine
	To cope with develor) in	eed more experts	different fields.
26	The building of the a) amazing b	new train station in (Cairo iswork	cs of engineering.
Ch	oose the Two cor	rect answers of th	e Five options	d) amazement
27	She is going to emp the word "employ" a	oloy more people to i	mprove her work Th	e synonyms of
28	a) fire b) hir She was left uncons the word "attack" are	d) appear	e) appoint e antonyms of	
29	a) invasionb) defMy uncle is a great e	fence c) resistance xpertthe fi	ce d) fire	e) grasp
	A lot of people	ih c) on	d) by	
	a) went lost d) got lost	b) went mi e) made lo	ssing	g there. c) got missing



Lessons 3 & 4



Language

Present simple passive

المبنى للمجهول في المضارع البسيط

We use the passive when the action is more important than the agent (who or what does it):

نستخدم المبنى للمجمول عندما يكون المفعول أهم من الفاعل، أو الفاعل غير معروف أو لا يراد ذكره.

The organisation is based in Kenya.

نستخدم by إذا أردنا ذكر الفاعل آخر الكلام.

- The lions are monitored by young Massai men.
- New schools are always built by the government.

يتكون المبنى للمجهول بشكل عام من:

Object

المفعول يصبح فاعلا

+ verb to be

am/is/are/was/were/be/being/been على حسب زمن الجملة



TENSE	FORM	:	
Simple Tenses الأزمنة البسيطة	v. to be + P.P.	مضارع بسيط. 1. am/is/are + P.P. ماضِ بسيط. 2. was – were + P.P.	
Continuous Tenses الأزمنة المستمرة	v. to be + being + P.P.	3. am – is – are + being + P.P. مضارع مستمر 4. was – were + being + P.P. ماض مستمر	

am - is - are + P.P. ومن هنا يتكون المضارع البسيط في المبنى للمجمول من

- Leila always does the homework after school.
- = The homework is always done by Leila after school.

في حالة النفي يتكون المبنى للمجهول في المضارع البسيط من .am - is - are) not + P.P.

- Amira doesn't watch comic films.
 - = Comic films aren't watched by Amira.

في حالة السؤال يتكون المبنى للمجهول في المضارع البسيط من:

Am/Is/Are + object + P.P. ...? Wh-/am/is/are + object + P.P. ...? • Are these old houses built of stone?

Where is this organisation based?

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4



، لا تستخدم (has/have) كفعل أساسي في المبنى للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل اخر حسب المعنى :

- l have a mobile. (A mobile)
- A mobile is (possessed/owned) by me.
- We have breakfast before going to school every day.
- Breakfast is eaten before going to school every day (by us).

Important Notes



- مناك استخدامات أخرى عديدة لزمن المضارع البسيط ... منها:
 - إعطاء أوامر أو تعليمات (بدلًا من جملة الأمر).
- You read the questions first and then you write down your answers in the box.
- You give a signal before you turn right or left.
 - = Give a signal before you turn right or left.

- ٢) في التعليقات الرياضية.
- Mohamed Salah passes the ball to El-Neny who kicks the ball and scores a goal.
 - ٣) سرد ملخص لأحداث روائية في رواية أو فيلم أو مسرحية.
- In the last chapter, Huda meets Ali and agrees to marry him.
- ٤) مع جمل تبدأ ب

(Here & There)

Look! Here comes your father at last.

ه) بعد العالم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية والأولى.

- If we heat water, it evaporates.
- If you study hard, you will get high marks.

٦) مع الحكم والأمثال.

- Action speaks louder than words.
- من الممكن أيضا البدء بـ (Never) وتصبح القاعدة كالآتى:
- Never + (فعل مساعد) + inf.
- Never does he tell lies.



- من الممكن استخدام always مع زمن المضارع المستمر إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شيء يحدث الآن ويتسبب في ضيق.
- The girl is always asking a lot of questions while the teacher is explaining the lesson.
- He is always criticising ينتقد my handwriting.

check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The room every afternoon.
 - a) is cleaning
 - c) is being cleaned
- 2 This popular television programme by millions of people every week.
 - a) is watched
 - c) has been watched
- 3 This writer is well-known. His booksby thousands of people.
 - a) read
 - c) are reading
- 4 Our great player Mohamed Salah all over the world.
 - a) known
- b) know

b) is cleaned

d) cleans

- b) are read d) had been read

b) is being watched

d) was watching

- - d) is known c) knows
- 5 It is a fact that eggsa lot of protein that is useful for our bodies.
 - a) contain
 - c) are contained

- **b)** contains
- d) is contained



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- Ias a delivery man these days. I am joining the army next June.
 - a) work
 - c) am working

- b) have been working
- d) used to work



ر القدروني

تطبيق الأضواء

أختج نفسك الآن مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية من خلال حل الختبارات تفاعلية علم کل درس.

حمَل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال 🕒 Google play 🖒

www.aladwaa.com

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4



Language Exercises

6	Rem	embering • Understanding	Practis		Suplusting Cre	ating	Thomas
			Applying	Analysing	EAGING III. 3		The number is (b), isn't it?
	CII	oose the correct a	answer fro	om a, b, c	or d:		411.115
		The service fee seem in this hotel in the bill.					
1 :		a) included	ا ۱۱۱۵ ۱۱۱ رسر العرب عزادا	10tel	c) is includ	ling	d) includes
1	2	This road	Work of	uueu	co dangerous.		
1 1		a) is used	very ofte	en as it is	a) doesn't	use	d) isn't using
	3	Today, lions	ISN't u	sea	bunting n	arties.	بيرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات٢٠٢٢
1		a) protect	by the	iviaasai i	b) have pr	otected	مرسة اسوال الماوية بالما
, !		c) are protected			d) were pr	otected	
	4	Money	into our		to wists who co	ome to er	niov our great
		civilisation.	into our co	untry by	tourists who co	offic to ci	ijoy our great
			le) in lease	. ada 4	a) has brou	iaht	d) were brown
1	5	a) is bringing Don't forget to co	Jord 21 (u	agnt	c) has bloc	come fo	r the interview
		Don't forget to co	on tin	ne wnen	you to	come io	d) are askin
1 - }	6	a) ask The road to scho	o) are asi	кеа	c) asked	an fauth	d) are asking
,		The road to school	01	. last wee	k as a preparat	ion for the	e new year.
	7	a) is paved	is pavi	ng	c) was pav	ea	a) nas paved
	•	The filed		or us evei	ry Friday at my		ier's nouse.
0,		a) had been prepc) is prepared	ared			. –	
	8				d) is prepa	ring	
	•		y smoking	that cau	ises many fatal		
1 6	9	a) has affected	is affective	red	c) affects		
100	9	arry or tr	nese nouse	es damag		last nigh	
	10	a) Was	b) is	,	c) Did		d) Had
T. T.	10	My car fo	or any dan	nage fron	n now and ther).	
-	44	a) serviced	nad be	en servi	ted c) has servi	iced	d) is serviced
	• •	The classrooms look better.	au	ring the	school holidays	so that th	ne school could
			b) are not	andia			
	10	a) is painted	are pai	nting	c) have pai	nted	d) were painted
	14	l to go o	ut with my	rrienas a	irter 9 p.m. as it	s a family	y rule.
	12	a) allowed	alun (a	allow	c) am not a	llowed	d) wasn't allowed
	13	During the month	ily school	party, cie	ver students	ni	ce presents.
-		a) are giving			b) are give	n	
1	4.4	c) were giving	bas	Alba tare	d) had bee	n given	
1	14	Critical matters	11as	منعجن داران	we shoud بشحل	take our	time.
1		a) aren't discuss	,		b) don't dis		
8		c) aren't discussed			d) are discu	issing	
	15	Neverlat	_			كندرية٢٠٢٣	مدرسة الكويت - إدارة المنتزه - الاس
		a) he is	b) is he		c) does he		d) he goes

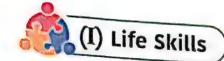
16 The flowers by our gardener who is very active.							
		a) are usually watered		b) usually water			
		c) usually are watered	d) have usually wa	atered			
	17	Football matches by million	ns of people all over th	e world currently.			
ľ				مدرسة كفر صقر الثانوية بنات - الشرقية ا			
		a) are watched b) were watched		d) watching			
	18	How many babies in this ho	ospital every day?				
		a) were born b) was born	c) have born	d) are born			
	19	Students two languages be	efore joining university				
		a) teach b) are teaching	c) were taught	d) are taught			
	20	Some kinds of mobilesin E	gypt.	إدارة غرب شبرا - القاهرة ٢٠٢٢			
		a) are made	b) are making				
		c) have made	d) had been made	9			
	21	Ali and I always our friends					
		a) meet b) meets	c) are meeting	d) have met			
	22	Unfortunately, the planeof	f before we arrived at t	the airport.			
		a) has been taken b) takes	c) has taken	d) had taken			
	23	23 Remember that after you the contract, you won't be able to					
		your mind.					
),	,	a) had signed b) will sign	c) signed	d) sign			
	24	Some plants naturally in di	fferent parts of the wo	rld.			
		a) are grown b) are growing	c) grow	d) grew			
	25	Plants by farmers.		إدارة جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٢			
		a) grow b) growing	c) are grown	d) grew			
	26	Kareem by dad because his	s behaviour is bad.	h:			
		a) is always punished	b) is always punishing				
		c) always punishes	d) always is punis	nea			
	27	The Earth goes around the sun. This	sentence is a	d) hono			
		a) habit b) timetable	c) fact	d) hope			
	28	Mr Ahmed is always a punctual اعيده	ا Inis means المثيق في مو الم	d) comes never			
		a) never comes b) never is c) is not never d) comes never					
	29	He told all the students about the st	Ho told all the students about the surprise. This means that				
		a) all the students told him about the	ie sui prise				
		b) he was told about the surprise c) all the students were told about the surprise					
		c) all the students were told about to	out the surprise				
		d) he was told by all the students ak	husband This means t	that			
	30	She wasn't given any money by her	husband	no o more no 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 : 1919 :			
		a) she didn't give any money to her	and				
		b) no money was given to her husb	monev				
		has buckend doesn't dive her any	money				
1		d) her husband didn't give her any money					

Lessons 3 & 4



General Skills

الفرخ والتدورات برجي الرجع لعلاة العصارات.



Empathy

المشاركة الوجدانية/التعاطف

To express empathy we can say:

- I am sorry to hear that bad news.
- I was terribly sorry to hear about
- What bad news!
- Don't worry about that. I am sure you will be fine.

To reply we can say:

- I know, it's terrible, isn't it?
- Thanks for your kind feelings.
- Well, never mind.



(II) Writing

- When we write about a person we are interested in, we can follow these steps:
 - 1. Mention his/ her name, date and place of birth.
 - 2. Write his/her job and what they are doing nowadays.
 - 3. Write why you admire him/her (Their achievements).
 - 4. How they helped their countries, families and people.
 - 5. Why you think they are important.



Someone we are all proud of (Magdi Yacoub)

Magdi Yacoub is one of the world's most respected heart surgeons. He was born on November 16, 1935 in Belbis, Alshraqya, Egypt. His father was a general surgeon. He inspired him to become a doctor. At the age of four, he witnessed the death of his aunt due to heart disease. Her death, in her early 20s, inspired him to specialise in heart surgery. He entered the Cairo University College of Medicine at the age of 15 on a full scholarship and graduated in 1957, qualifying as a doctor. In 1962, he moved to London and worked in leading hospitals in heart surgery for the next 40 years.

In 1968, he took a short break to teach in the United States. He spent a year as an associate professor at the University of Chicago. He returned to London a year later to resume his work in the UK. In 1974, he performed the first open heart surgery in Nigeria. In 1980, he performed a heart transplant on Derrick Morris who became the longest surviving heart transplant patient. He survived 25 years after surgery. In 1995, he founded the UK-based children's charity 'Chain of Hope' which treats children. Chain of Hope has also established training and research programs in Egypt and other Middle Eastern countries.

Magdi retired from his work in London hospitals in 2001, he has also devoted significant time to his charity, Chain of Hope. In 2008, he established the Magdi Yacoub Heart foundation. The foundation was able to establish the Aswan Heart Centre in 2009 to provide free medical services for those in need.

Magdi is married to Marianne, who is of German descent. They have three children. His oldest daughter, Lisa, works as the UK coordinator for Chain of Hope, while his youngest daughter is a doctor specialising in tropical medicine. In his spare time, he raises orchids and listens to Bach.

Test Yourself "20



Unit 2

Lessons 3 & 4

				Take	
4	Rem	embering	ng Applying Analysing	Evaluating	
-		Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b, o	ord:	
	1	A/An	is a group of people h	naving the same langu	age and customs
N. a. G.A.		penig ruled by	' a chief.		
		a) society	b) community	c) tribe	d) association
Is someone who studies the science				ience which is concer	ned with living things
-	_	a) psychologis	t b) biologist	c) chemist is job is to guard or pro	d) zoologist
-	3	My father work	ks as a/an H	is job is to guard or pr	otect something.
	4	a) gardener	b) attacker	c) guardian	d) hunter
	7	A of p	anic has spread over	the country after the e	explosions.
	5	a) movement	b) disappearance	c) cattle	d) sense
-	3	situation which	/ kind-hearted. He sho	owed much W	ith the difficult
R.					40
	6	When a lion's n	p) empathy	c) inspiration	d) appearance
	ľ	a) signal	h) romark	ered, it is a sign that a	lion is close,
	7	My young brot	her works an	c) print accountant in a large	a) signature
0		a) for	b) in	c) out	
P	8	rare ar	nimals must be probit	to keep them یـُمنع	alive
8		a) Eating	b) Fishing	c) Hunting	d) Guardina
	9	The thief	and taken to priso	n vesterday.	a) Guarding
		a) is arrested	b) was arresting	c) was arrested	d) has arrested
ı	10	At my first day	at school, I to	go with my mother to	o know the way.
١,		a) have	b) had	would have	d) has
2	11	We know that p	olantsenergy	from the sun to make	their food.
		a) use	b) uses	c) are used	d) using
i	12			eeting starts at 9 a.m.	,g
1		a) is shown	b) showed	c) shows	d) show
3	13	Many qualificat	ions and much exper	ience to get h	nigher position in
		the company.			
_		a) are needing		c) needed	d) are needed
	14		d, I will visit my doctob) feel		
	15	a) feels There was a figh	nt at the party, but no	c) felt	d) had felt
77	10	a) got hurt	, c = 3 p = // ~ a c 110		
				b) was hurting	
·		c) hurts		d) didn't get hu	rt

- - a) I examined my eyes by myself
 - b) maybe I or an oculist examined my eyes
 - c) no one was there to examine my eyes
 - d) an oculist examined my eyes

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

With the development of modern civilisation, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle⁽²⁾. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting⁽³⁾ or robbery. During rush hours, streets are so blocked that it takes a driver an age to get to his destination.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Taking a public bus is a problem because
 - a) it is expensive
 - b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
 - c) it is very slow
 - d) bus drivers drive carelessly
- 2 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
 - a) taxi drivers
- b) taxis
- c) buses
- d) passengers
- 3 Possessing a private car is to doctors and engineers.
 - a) unnecessary

b) kind

c) indispensable

- d) bad
- 4 The synonym of the word "complicated" is ".....".
 - a) complex
- b) simple
- c) easy
- d) non-complex



(3) صدأ

(2) معاناة

(1) حضارة

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4

105

	According to the writer, possessing a car can be a trouble becau						
		a) cars take a space in the ga	arage				
		b) cars have to be left in the	streets				
		c) drivers are careless					
		d) traffic is incredible					
	6	The best title for this passage	e is "" •				
		a) Traffic Rules	b) Types of Cars				
		c) Driving carelessly	d) Transportation				
	7	According to the passage, some taxi drivers are					
		a) greedy	b) good				
		c) honest	d) funny				
	8	The sentence "it takes a drive	er an age to get to his destination" shows				
		that					
		a) people don't know their o	lestination				
		b) GPS always misleads peop					
		c) drivers can't drive					
		d) streets are very crowded					
3	A) T	Franslate into Arabic:					
			re admired for their intelligence(1), creation and				
		their ability to do great and					

		2. Blood donation(3) can help many people who are in bad need of blood after					
* *	accidents or who have critical(4) cases.						
,							
(20)		***************************************					
(0×)			test threat ⁽⁵⁾ to the survival of endangered				
		species ⁽⁶⁾ through habitat d	estruction(7) and the effects of climate change.				
		***************************************	***************************************				
1	-1-		***************************************				
N.	B) I	ranslate into English:					
	- يُعتبر محمد صلاح، لاعب كرة القدم المصرى المشهور عالمينًا، مثالًا للاعب الموهوب ذى الأخلاق الحميدة ٨٠.						
	•		***************************************				

	- التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية لشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة أو النامية(١٠)؛ لأنه يساعدنا في إعداد أجيال(٢٠٠) من المواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.
	- على الرغم من التقدم العلمي الكبير، ما زالت هناك أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات تتعرض لخطر الانقراض؛ وذلك بسبب
	قيام الإنسان بصيدها و قتلها لأسباب مختلفة.
Le.	How to translate
or A	- صناك جمل (non-defining) لا تعطى معلومات أساسية وهنا يجب أن يتم وضعها بين two commas. Aanal, who is wearing white, is a great heart surgeon.
	nand, write is wearing write, is a great heart surgeon. · عند الترجمة إلى اللغة الإنجليزية من الأفضل تحويل المبنى للمجهول إلى مبنى للمعلوم. t of projects are being done by the government.
	تقوم الحكومة بعمل الكثير من المشروعات.
	· كلمة (ذا – ذي) يتم ترجمتها إلى (who + (v. to have).
2.	The positive effects of helping people.

)	
)	
	l used more than a new vocabulary. I used the right structure. I used a topic sentence. I wrote the conclusion. I used the right sentence.

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4 107

Study

Chapter 2 (Treasure Island)

Key Vocabulary

Vocabulary

agree	يوافق
anyone else	ای شخص آخر
bury	ای شخص احر یدفن
catch	يدهن يقبض على
clue	يمبص عنى دليل/مفتاح لحل لغز
cross	يعبر
describe	يصف
directions	الاتجاهات
escape	يهرب
excited	متحمس
head	رئيس
hide	يخفى
important	مهم
include	يشمل

inside	من داخل
magistrate	نفاق
map	خريطة
papers	أوراق/مستندات
prepare	بعد/يجهز
ready	جاهز
road	طريق
rob	يسرق
safe	آمن
secret	ını
servant	خادم
shout	يصيح، يصرخ، صيحة
the rest	البقية

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

run inside	يركض في الداخل	seem to
call out	يصرخ	look for
run out	ينفذ	longer than
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	ready to
on a boat	على متن قارب	prepare for
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	send to
ask into	يطلب من شخص الدخول	koop soont
interested in	ممتم بـ	keep secret

seem to	يبدو ان
look for	يبحث عن
longer than	اطول من
ready to	مستعد اـ
prepare for	يجمز ل
send to	يرسل إلى
keep secret	يحفظ السر



Novel Exercises

Chapter (2)

		nem	hor	ina
•	Ren	nemi	Dei	my

Understanding

Analysing

Evaluating

Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	The of th	e company is responsi	ble for everything in	it.		
	a) crew	b) magistrate		d) robber		
2	They stole the me	oney but couldn't	from the police.			
	a) run	b) escape		d) arrest		
3	The investigators	could finally find a	to the murder.			
	a) clue	b) crew	c) glue	d) lock		
4	The found that the accused man was guilty not innocent.					
	a) servant	b) captain	c) magistrate	d) thief		
5	The of th	e ship were all so frien	dly and helpful.			
	a) staff	b) clue	c) pirates	d) crew		
6	Jim went to look	for the money	. by the captain and h	is men.		
	a) kidnapped	b) robbed	c) hijacked	d) stolen		
7	The rich man has	too many wh				
	a) servants	b) pirates	c) heads	d) masters		
8						
	a) outside	b) inside	c) across	d) on		
9	I asked the waite	r toa cup of c	offee for me.			
	a) repair	b) look	c) prepare			
10	When the thieves heard the police coming, they ran in different					
	a) directors	b) decisions	c) sites	d) directions		
11	The list of the quests my name.					
	al contains	h) includes	c) consists	d) encloses		
12	The policeman asked the scared woman to the man who tried to rob					
	her.					
	a) prescribe	b) persuade	c) describe	d) subscribe		
13	The archeologist	s managed to find a ve	ery valuable t	reasure.		
	- V In the Indian as	h) hid	c) mue	d) used		
14	We tried to catch	the thief, but unfortu	nately, ne	d) prisoned		
	a) arrested	b) escaped	c) freed	d) prisoned		
15	My uncle is not a	live, he is	a) dood	d) doath		
	a) die	b) died	c) dead	d) death		

109

Unit 2

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● F	lem	em	beri	n
------------	-----	----	------	---

Understanding

Applying

Evaluating
Creating

CI	10	ose the correct	answer from a, b, c	ord:	Let's strengthen our knowledge.
• }	1 Reham with laughter at the joke that I told her.				
a) snee:		a) sneezed	h) roared	c) frowned	d) pleased
		I didn't know you	u have bought a new c	ar. I to see it in	front of your house
1		a) chanced	h) speeded	c) found	(1) Shrungad
	I'm happy that there is a strong sense ofin our neighbors.				hourhood.
8		a) society	b) smell	c) communication	d) Community
	4	rour son will be	looked after here. Dor	n't worry on that	*******
		a) goal	b) score	c) sense	d) wall
. 9	5	The younger ger	neration onlyt	to be interested in mo	ney.
0 1	6	a) seem	b) seems	c) seeming	d) a & h
5 t	O	rve ever	ywhere for my gloves,	but I can't find them.	
. 0		a) nunted	b) found	c) caught	d) fished
1	•	when I knew tha	at my friend Ali died, I	went to pay my last	to him.
! "	8	At the sime at an	b) supports	c) benefits	d) desires
5.		ric are unport, ye	ou need toin t	wo hours before the f	light.
year .		The newspaper	b) support	c) desire	d) admire
		a) aim	reports about Momen	Zakaria showed him l	ittle
	10	The United Natio	b) charity	c) hunting	d) organisation
a du Malan		* the contract	ns decided that there s		
1		a) monitors	b) killings	c) villagore	1) 6
1	11	Mr Hassan refuse	ed to join any political	of villagers	d) founders
f c		a) society	b) charity re not made to	narty	le last election.
1	2	The little chairs a	re not made to	the weight of an ad-	a) compassion
		a) suggest	b) support	c) restore	
1	3	Huda bought a ve	ery expensive	blouse last week	d) regard
-		a) called	b) admired	c) supported	d) checked
1	4	For few seconds v	when they are taking	the soldiers a	re exposed to
		enemy fire.		, associately a	re exposed to
		a) respect	b) income	c) aim	d) knowledge
1	5	The Egyptian run	ner won the gold med	lal when he reached t	he end of the
		a) track	b) desire	c) speed	d) prestige

	16	Look! This boy	100 kilograms n	iow.	
		a) weigning	b) is weighing	c) weighs	d) weigh
	17	This painting is o	riginal. Itanyv	where else	a, weigh
		a) was existed	b) isn't existed	c) don't exist	d) doesn't exist
	18	to you no	ow?	o, doing child	a , a c c c a c c a c c a c c a c c a c c a c c a c c a c c a c c a c c a c c a c c a c c c a c a c c a c a c a c a c a c a c a c a c a c a c a c a c a c a c a c a a c a c a a c a c a a c a a c a a c a a c a a c a a c a a a c a a a c a a a a a a a a a a
		a) Is this car belo		b) Is this car belon	aina
		c) Do this car bel	ong	d) Does this car be	
	19	I'd hate to live in	London because it	all the time.	9
7 4		a) rains	b) is raining	c) raining	d) rain
	20	I can't talk right r	now as I really	busy. I will call you la	iter.
		a) being	b) am	c) will be	d) was
N	21	Peoples	ay "thank you" anymoi	re.	
		a) isn't	•		d) aren't
	22	In Chapter one, I	Huda Ali, and a	agrees to take part in	the competition.
		a) meet	· ·	•	d) is meeting
	23		nythe ball to S		oal.
			b) passed	c) pass	d) passes
			your father at last!		
0,	,	a) come		c) was coming	d) came
	25	Hard work			
t		a) lead		c) is led	d) leads
٠	26	Neverhis			
V		-	b) he does study	•	d) he studied
	27		ay of talking to her ch		
4		a) always criticise		b) criticises always	
		c) is always critic		d) always is criticisi	
1	28		their leaves in the a b) doesn't lose	c) isn't lost	
	20	a) don't lose	•	•	d) aren't lost
N	29		is in the Present Simpl	e lelise:	
		a) We can fish in			
		c) He had a new	II attend the party.		
C 40 00	30	d) You are wastin	e a bit heavy; I will take	time to the	m
4	J U			b) be used to wear	
		a) become used		d) get used to wear	
13		c) get use to wea	r	yet used to wea	illig

Unit 2



Al-Adwaa Test



● F	Remembe	ering • Understanding	Applying Analysing E	valuating	
27	Cha	Death . T	CALO E	ive options.	
	Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options: 1 There was a meeting to discuss a long-term plan. The synonyms of				
	the word "long-term" areand				
		a) continuing te	b) temporary c) la	sting d) passin	g e) short-lived
1000	2	Wo should be	b) temporary	the p	roblems it faces
	-	we should do oul	best to protect our c	ountry the p	e) against
	Cha		b) with	on .	
	Cho	ose the correct a	inswer from a, b, c o	ru. overvthi	ng happens
N	3	In our company, t	there are a lot of came	eras toeverythi	d) monitor
	4	The rescue team:	shouldered the	for saving people a	d) responsibility
		a) stability	b) ability	c) probability	nationts
1	5	The shortage of k	olood will lead	c) probability to serious effects on	patients.
b		allowners	ni donors	C) Kechers	u) attackers
٠	6	After the acciden	t ha pandad bland	to stay alive.	
		a) transplant	b) transfusion	c) transplantation	a) orientation
	7	I had my new flat	· it is amazino	1	
		a) decorate	b) decoration	c) decorated	d) decorating
	8	After the train acc	ident, many of the	people are still in	a serious condition,
C)_`	a) ambitious	b) injured	c) reported	a) dead
	9	As well as	abroad to earn mon	ey, he got a university	degree.
1		a) travel	b) travelling	c) travelled	d) travels
1	10	He came to my h	ouse and tea	with me.	
		a) had	b) had had	c) having	d) have had
ŝ	11	Salahthe m	nost important goal for	r Egypt that sent it to th	ne World Cup Finals.
		a) scored	b) has scored	c) scores	d) was scoring
	12	My daughter	her grandmothe	r as usual.	
		a) is visited	b) is visiting	c) was visiting	d) visits
	13	My boss likes Mr	. Ahmed because ne	hard-working.	
		a) is always	b) always is	c) is never	d) never is
	14	Heto sit	down until ne nad ap	ologised to the teach	er.
	1 -	a) didn't allow	b) ISN't allowed	c) wasn't allowed	d) was allowed
	15	Yaseen doesn't s	tay up late any longer	This means he	
	and here	a) used to stay u	p late	b) didn't use to stay	up late
	1	c) usually stays u	to heat neonly	d) is in the habit of	staying up late
	16	In winter, wood	to Heat people	e's homes in many par b) burnt	ts of the world.
		a) have been bu	HIC		
	21	c) is burnt		d) was burning	

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Octopuses are extremely intelligent. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. The octopus is like a chameleon because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand.

Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can use to hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a siphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous⁽³⁾ sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Amazingly, the octopus's arm will grow back.

,	17	cks and kills octopuses.	
		a) prey	b) predator
		c) chameleon	d) magician
	18	situation, that means it's	
		a) easy	b) in danger
		c) covered in stick	d) unable to move
	19	ligent" is	
		a) smart	b) dangerous
		c) venomous	d) visible
	20	The octopus and the chameleo	n are similar as both
		a) swim in the same way	b) eat the same food
		c) catch small fish	d) can change their skin colou



(3) سام

a) distract the predator

c) catch a prey

(2) ضحل (غير عميق)

b) renew it

d) lay eggs

(1) حرباء

	23	The octopus can shoot ink a) kills the attackers c) pollutes the water Octopuses don't have teed a) so, they are eaten easily b) however, they have oth c) moreover, they are not d) that's why they are about The best title for this pass a) The Magician Octopus c) The Seabed	th or sharp y her ways to brave out to extin age is	d) attracts policy claws to define keep enemi	oreys end themselves es away World and the F	5 *********************
	25	Translate into English: مشــمورًا؛ لأن الشهرة نتاج للعمل الجاد	ســـهل أن تكون		کون مشــهورًا فی یوم ہ	ـ يحلم كل منا أن يد
	•			***************************************	يعاناة.	والصبر وأيضنا الم
	26	Translate into Arabic: Nowadays, the Egyptian provides them with good	-	, , ,		omen and
(%)	27	Write an essay of about the following: The role of charities in Equation		PRED AND FI	FTY (150) word	ls on
			**************************************	***************************************		***************************************
the state of the s			***************************************	******************************	99 <i>0366</i> 449488955888855558955595555955	***************************************

		Assess your progress $\star \star \star \star \star$	< 50%	50 : 64% Practise mare	65:84%	85 : 100% Well donel





Improving lives

Objectives

Reading : An extract from David Copperfield

Writing : A paragraph on a book character; A summary of a story

Listening : A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books

Speaking : Discussing a topic

Language: Past simple and present perfect

Life Skills : Empathy



Lessons 1 & 2



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

debts (n)	ديون	
earn (v) – ed	یکسب (مالًا)	
merchant (n)	تاجر	
miserable (adj)	بائس	

owe (v) – d**	المين الـ
plump (adj)	ممتلئ الجسم
prison (n)	سجن
rats (n)	فثران

t owe you a favor because you helped me.

Vocabulary on Reading)

arrange (v) – d	يرتب	hate (v) – d	یکره
borrow (v) – ed	يقترض/يستعير	hurt (v)	يۇدى
break (v)	يكسر	modern (adj)	حىيث
building (n)	مبنى	parents (n)	والدان/أبوان
criminals (n)	مجرمون	penny (n)	بنس بريطاني (عملة نقدية)
die (v) – d	يموت	spend (v)	ينفق مالًا/يقضى وقتا
dirty (a <mark>d</mark> j)	قذر	theatre (n)	مسرح
discover (v) – ed	يكتشف	ticket (n)	تذكرة
empty (adj)	فارغ	tired (adj)	متعب
factory (n)	مصنع	twins (n)	توءمان
floors (n)	طوابق	miser (n)	بخيل
hard (adj)	شاق	misery (n)	البخل/البؤس

Vocabulary on Listening

brilliant (adj)	
deserve (v) – d	راثع
	يستحق
entertain (v) – ed	يسلى
entertainment (n)	تسلية
honest (adj)	امين

remove (v) – d	يزيل
reward (v) – ed	يكافئ
storyteller (n)	كاتب روايات/قصلص
support (v) – ed	يدعم

Workbook Vocabulary

character (n)	شخصية
childhood (n)	مرحلة الطفولة
exactly (adv)	بالضبط
hide (v)	يخفى
lucky (adj)	سعيد الحظ
machines (n)	ألات

opportunity (n)	فرصة
review (v) – ed	يراجع
similar (adj)	مشابه
skill (n)	مهارة
temple (n)	معبد
unusual (adj)	غیر عادی

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

become ill	يصبح مريضا/يمرض
break the law	يخالف القانون
make clothes	يصنع ملابس
pay back	یرد دینا
look after	یعتنی بــ
owe money to	يدين بالمال لـ
a problem with	مشكلة مع - في
buy from	یشتری من
rat race	تئائس شدید
arrange for	يرتب من اجل
break the record	يحطم الرقم القياسى

reward for	یکافیء علی
similar to	متشابه مع
die of	يموت بسبب
take away	يأخذ بعيدًا
take home	يأخذ للمنزل
tired-looking lady	سيدة تبدو متعبة
find out	يكتشف
give to	يعطى اــ
sit with	يجلس مع
entertain with	يكسلى بـ
know for	يعرف شخصنا ب

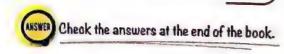
AA-S		Deriv	atives		
Vert		Noun		Adjective	
arrange	يرتب	arranger arrangement	معد/منظم ترتیب/تنظیم	arranged	منظم/معد
deaden die	يخمد/يقمع يموت	death dead	مو <i>ت</i> میت	dead deadly للموت	ممتت (مسنه
		debt	دين	debtless	بدون ديون
earn	بسكي	earner earning	مصدر دخل عائد/دخل	earned و	الماربستان
hate	یکرہ	hate hatred	عداوة كره/بغض	hated	کریه/بغیض
imprison	يسجن	prison prisoner imprisonment	سجن سجين حبس/اعتقال	imprisonable جن	مستحق للس
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	محسن
merchant	يتاجر	merchant merchandise	تاجر بضائع	merchantable a	صالح للتجارة تجارى
		miser misery	بخيل بخل/بؤس	miserly	قلیل/شحیح
owe	يدين			owing	مدين
plump	ينفخ	plumpness	بدانة/سمنة	plump	ممتلئ

words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
arrange	يرتب/ينظم	organise/tidy/put in order	disarrange/disorder یبعثر
borrow	يستلف	acquire/obtain/hire	يئقرض/يدفع/يرد lend/return/pay
dirty	قذر	unclean/soiled/ contaminated	clean/spotless/pure/clear نظیف
empty	فارغ	vacant/blank/ unoccupied	مملوء full/occupied/filled
hard	شاق/صلب	tough/solid/strong	رقیق/مرمف soft/delicate
hate	یکرہ	dislike/detest/loathe	ايعب ايعشق love/adore/like
honest	أمين/مخلص	trustful/sincere/candid	dishonest/deceitful/insincere خائن/غیر آمین
miserable	بائس	unhappy/sad/depressed	cheerful/happy سعيد/مبتمج
plump	ممتلئ الجسم	chubby/fat	ندیف thin/lean
tired	بعتم	exhausted/fatigued/weary	active/lively/fresh نشيط

Check Point (1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - b) miserable c) modern d) real
- 2 I was veryas I worked for about 15 hours without a break.
 a) relaxed b) calm c) tired d) tiring
- 3 My funny friend always us with many jokes all evening.
- a) entertains b) trains c) removes d) depresses
- 4 I consider myself a man to have such a good family.
- a) tired b) funny c) tricky d) lucky
- 5 He was taken to prison for the law.
 - a) breaking b) making c) obeying d) removing



Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 119

Reading Text

David Copperfield

'This is Mr Quinion, David,' Mr
Murdstone said. 'You're going to work for
him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle
merchants⁽¹⁾, in London. You'll earn⁽²⁾
enough money to pay for your food, and
I've arranged⁽³⁾ a place for you to live.'

I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was hard work. I went to a dirty old house near the river where rats⁽⁴⁾
lived under the floors. There my job was to wash empty bottles with three other boys, and I hated⁽⁵⁾ it.

One morning, a plump man⁽⁶⁾ came to see me with Mr Quinion.

'Ah, Master Copperfield!' the man said 'This is Mr Micawber,' Mr Quinion told me. 'You will be living at his house.'

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife – a thin, tired-looking lady – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins⁽⁷⁾, and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

I soon discovered that the Micawbers were poor and that Mr Micawber owed⁽⁸⁾ money to several⁽⁹⁾ people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to prison because of his debts⁽¹⁰⁾. I went to see him there the next Sunday.

DAVID COPPERFIELD
Outer Delay

(1)	1)	Ŀ		j
		0.0	00		**	٠.	**

(2)	بكسب
	- Inc

(3)	رتب
1-1	

(4)	ئران
(4)	عران

1=1	
(5)	کرهت

(6)	الجسم	ممتلئ	رجل
-----	-------	-------	-----

(7)	Ü	نوءما	
1//	U	~~~	

(0)		
(9)	1'10	كتير

11	U)	CO.L	

1	1	4	1	.5	•	
- 1		- 1	- 8	- 0	n	1.8.

تعيس (12)

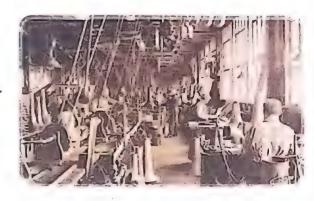
'If a man earns twenty pounds a year and spends⁽¹¹⁾ nineteen pounds, he'll be happy,' he said. 'But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny, he'll be miserable⁽¹²⁾.'

If a man earns twenty pounds a year and spends nineteen pounds, he'll be happy.' Do you agree with Mr Micawber? Why/Why not?

Listening Text



Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant⁽¹⁾ books that he wrote. He was a great storyteller⁽²⁾. But Dickens didn't only want to entertain⁽³⁾ people with his books, he also wanted to



his books, he also wanted to change their opinions⁽⁴⁾ about the world they lived in. He hoped⁽⁵⁾ his readers would then do something to make the world a better place.

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood⁽⁶⁾. When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison⁽⁷⁾. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support his family instead. The Poor Law of 1834 removed⁽⁸⁾ support for most poor people so their lives were hard. When he wrote *David Copperfield* between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that

not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often rewarded⁽⁹⁾. For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In *David Copperfield*, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest⁽¹⁰⁾ and good and deserved⁽¹¹⁾ to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and he had an unhappy end.

رائع (1)
روائی (2)
یسلی (3)
یسلی (3)
آراء (4)
تمنی (5)
مرحلة الطفولة (6)
سجن (7)
أزال (8)
کُوفئوا (9)

استحق (11)

Dickens thought that both poor and rich people have a role to make society better. Explain.

Workbook Text

The book character⁽¹⁾ David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not unusual (2) for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay(3) their debts(4). Factories liked to have children working for (5) them because they did not need to pay them as much as they paid adults (6). The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example, they were small so they could go under machines when they broke. The children were often miserable⁽⁷⁾. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity⁽⁸⁾ to improve their lives. However, some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs when they were older.

(1)	، نصبة
	The state of the s

- غير مانوف (2)
- يىغع (3)
- دىون (4)
- يعمل لدى (5)
- البالغون (6)
- (7) slues
- فرصة (8)
- سعداء الحظ (9)

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

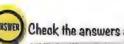
- 1 My father works hard toenough money to help us live well.
 - a) gain
- b) beat
- c) earn
- d) win
- 2 My little brother is a very funny boy with red cheeks.
 - a) pump
- b) dump
- c) thump
- d) plump
- 3 He much more than he earns, so he is in heavy debts.
 - a) passes
- b) spends
- c) works
- d) stays
- 4 Charles Dickens was a great who wrote many novels and books.
 - a) poet
- b) doctor
- c) storyteller
- d) musician
- 5 Our teacher is always ready to give us when we answer correctly.

a) awards

b) rewards

c) medals

d) penalties



Check the answers at the end of the book

Vocabulary in Use





Giving the meaning in English is the beginning of mastering the language.

debts	ــــ ديون		
money you must give to someone	092		
earn	یکسب (مالًا)		
receive money for doing work			
merchant	تاجر		
a person who buys and sells a lot of goods			
miserable	ـــــ بائس		
very sad			
— owe	يدين اــ		
have to pay money or debt back			
— plump	ممتلئ الجسم		
fat in a nice way			
— prison	<u> س</u> چن		
a place to keep criminals			
— rats	ـــــ فئران		
animals like big mice			

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to oheok the difference in meaning.

- عمـل/مكـان العمـل (اسم لا يعـد) - عمل هندسي أو فني أو أدبي (اسم يعـد)	Dickens' works reflect the suffering of poor people. When she left college, she got a job as an editor		
job وظیفة/مهنـة (اسم یعـد)			
Career الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد	She manages to successfully combine family life and a career.		
profession مهنة (الاسم من الوظيفة)	He left the teaching profession in 1965 to start his own business.		
machine ماکینة/آلة	The factory bought a new machine to increase its production.		
2 tool أداة يدوية	The carpenter uses many tools such as a hammer and a saw.		
instrument أدوات قياس/طبيب/موسيقية	The piano is one of my favourite musical instruments.		
pay مرتب/أجر/دفع	It is not a good job, but the pay is good.		
wage اجریومی او اسبوعی	His wage is 100 pounds a day.		
salary أجر شهرى (غالبنا من شركة أو مؤسسة)	The salaries of the government are not enough.		
fee باعتا	Lawyers' fees have become sky high nowadays.		
a room حجرة	I phoned to book a room in the hotel.		
مكان/فراغ room غان/فراغ	The table takes up too much room.		

win يفوز/يكسب (كأس - مباراة - انتخابات)	The team is training well hoping to win the next match.		
beat یمزم/یتغلب علی (شخص أو فریق)	Our team was easily beaten in the first round of the competition.		
الوزن - السرعة)	I gained a lot of weight while I was on holiday.		
يكسب (قوئـًا أو رزقًا) مقابل عمل earn	How much do you earn, if you don't mind me asking?		
miss* تفوته مواصلات/يفتقد شخصنا	He missed the train as he got up late. I missed my uncle very much.		
يخسر/يفقد شيئًا lose*	Our national team lost the last match.		
	t miss you, but I will never lose you.		
	You'll have to make some hard decisions to solve this problem.		
hard (adj) صعب/خشن/نشیط أو حماسی	• After months without rain, the ground was too hard to plough.		
	Success in sport requires hard work and a great deal of determination.		
hard (adv)	She has worked hard all her life and became a great person.		
hardly (adv) بالكاد	I hardly know your friend. I met him only once.		
very	تستخدم كلمة (very) قبل الصفات العادية لتحويلها إلى صفات قوية مثل: good -> very good cold -> very cold ولكن مع الصفات القوية لا تستخدم very ولكن نستخدم absolutely مثل: amazing -> absolutely amazing terrible -> absolutely terrible		

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 125

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Mr Micawber took me home.

.go, take, return, ... لا يسبقها أداة تعريف the بعد أفعال معينة مثل home أداة المرابعة عريف المرابعة على المرابعة المرا

tired-looking lady

looking بعد بعض الصفات لتكون صفة مركبة مثل looking face

I soon discovered that the Micawbers were poor.

نفاف (5) إلى الاسم العلم لتشير إلى أفراد الأسرة.

40

al

2 |W

a)

01

1 1 35

a) 1

c) f We

a) |

c) ¿

In the 1800s, it was not usual for children to work.

نفاة S إلى الأرقام لتشير إلى سنوات العقد العشرة فهنا تشير إلى الفترة من ١٨٠٠ إلى ١٨٠٩.

Rich people needed to do something to help the poor.

The + adj. = Adj. + people لاحقانان

Dther people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and he had an unhappy end.

ستنام عبارة on the other hand عندما نعطى وجهة نظر أخرى مخالفة للسابقة.

▶ The police came and took Mr. Micawber to prison.

طُّاكُلِمة prison لم يأت ِ قبلها أي أداة لأن الذهاب للغرض الأساسي من المكان و هو السجن.

check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 admire most of the of our great writer Naguib Mahfouz.
 - a) work

b) jobs

c) careers

- d) works
- 2 You must learn how to take the chance, and not toit.
 - a) lose

b) waste

c) miss

- d) pass
- 3 | was so tired that | couldwalk home and | took a taxi.
 - a) hardly

b) hard

c) harden

- d) hardship
- 4 I asked my manager for arise or I will resign.
 - a) wage

b) fee

c) pay

- d) bay
- 5 We decided to returnafter so many years abroad.
 - a) house

b) to home

c) at home

d) home



Check the answers at the end of the book.





Vocabulary Exercises

Re	memb	Dering OUnderstanding	Applying Analysing	● Evaluating	After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to a
	Cho	oose the correct a			notes, we need to practice
	Ke	V Vocabulary Pear	ding Listening & W	orkbook Vocabulary	e.
	1	Afternation 1	ding, Listering &	ot in to be able	to support her fame
	1	After losing her jo	b a year ago, she g	c) profit	d) dept
	2	a) debate	-ft-u bic	mother had passed aw	القليوبية ٢٠٢٢ . القليوبية /ay.
		a) micar	ملط مساحد (ط	c) sadness	a) Habbilless
	3	The torreviet	miserable	for 25 years for his	terrorist attacks
	J	a) prison	was sent to	c) home	d) work
	4	That house has be	paradise	onths. I want to rent it.	
	-	a) busy	b) crowded	c) occupied	d) empty
	5	My daughter du	and the vess assi	and it بدون قصد	. ,
	•	a) broke			d) woke
	6	We	LICCOSS to OUR Dare	nts and teachers.	مركز منية النصر - الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
			b) owe		d) occur
	7	We must stop the	se who do	acts by sending ther	
). C		a) great	h) moral	c) legal	d) criminal
-0		I should have gor	ne abroad when I v	was young. It was really	
		a) appointment	b) apposition	c) opponent	d) opportunity
	9	Thave hought two	ofor the	concert. One for me an	d one for my wife.
		a) chairs	b) papers	c) tickets	d) magazines
	10	Most football pla	versa lot	of money.	بارة الشعداء التعليمية - المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
	, ,		b) win	c) beat	d) fill
	11			a lot of weight as I	•
M		without moving.		ū	
U		a) won	b) earned	c) gained	d) beat
	12	We always	people who wo		مدرسة السعيدية الثانوية - الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
		a) insult	b) award	c) insist	d) reward
	13	I think I've		ed to me about their re	eal identity هوية.
		a) discovered	b) invented	c) explored	d) scanned
	14	They are very alik	te. They look like b	eing identical	. •
		a) two	b) similarity	c) twins	d) twinge
	15	I do not think he	such pun	ishment.	التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
		a) preserves	b) deserves	c) reserves	d) serves

1	6	lour old	days when we	sat at the sea char	tting till day	wn.	
		a) 103C	D) long	r) suppo	0.2	d) mice	
1	7	She finds her wor	rk with disabled	people very	Shell	ikes it very much.	
		a) awards	b) comments	c) reward	lina	d) rowards	
1	8	Thoused that the	way the two si	sters thought and	spoke was	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
		a) similarly	b) similar	c) differe	nce	d) same	
1	9	The have	e a safety device	e which switches	the power o	off if there is a fault.	
		a) tools	b) instrument	s c) machir	าคร	d) wires	
2	20	It is very importa	nt for a dentist	his يعقم to sterilise	CC	ontinuously.	
		a) tools	b) instrument	s c) machir	nes	d) machinery	
2	21	The time I spend	with my sisters	and brothers is so	amazing e	especially when we	
		remember our	memori	es.		•	
		a) children	b) elderly	c) long lif	e	d) childhood	
(E	xpressions, Idioms	. Prepositions D	erivatives Synony	me & Anton	vme	
2	22	He is a					
		a) miserable	b) misery	c) miser		d) missing	
2	23	Nowadays, everyone is rushing to be better or more successful than everyone else. That is what we call					
)0							
,	24	a) break the law	b) pay back	c) break t	hrough	d) rat race	
_	24	A lot of people a					
	25	a) with					
-	23	Shoppers comple					
-	26	a) merchants Mothers are the I				d) merchant	
_	20			> 6	5.	al) into	
1	-10	a) after noose the Two co	b) up			d) into	
						to oncourage	
2	21	Many young mer		ey irom tourism, s	o we have i	to encourage	
		tourists to come		a) maka	d) asin	ما بينه	
,	10	a) earn Can I borrow you	b) do	c) make	d) gain	•	
-	.0	areand		ekeria: The anton	iyiiis or the	Word Dollow	
l			b) lend	c) disorder	d) organ	ise e) return	
2	29		•	-	-		
-	-0		oc neiped by an	b) The disabled		Disabled people	
		a) Disabled	oonlo		~)	Disabled people	
2	20	d) The disabled p	to go out with		ery tired Th	ne adjective "tired"	
,	U	gives the same m	neaning as	and	.,	adjective theu	
			b) fresh	c) weary	d) lively	e) exhausted	
		a) active	J HESH	-,,	a,	C) CAHadated	

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 129



Lessons 1 & 2



Language

Past simple and present perfect

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

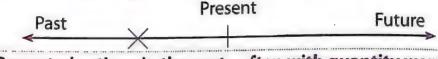
تم شرحه في الوحدة الأولى

The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

An action in the past with no time indicated.

Form

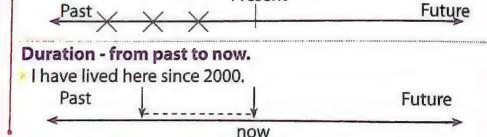


Repeated actions in the past - often with quantity words.

I have eaten three sandwiches.

Present

TIMELINE



Positive

He/She/It + has + P.P.

- He has prepared the bag since 5 o'clock.
- I/They/We/You + have + P.P.
- They have already watered the plants.

Negative

He/She/It + hasn't + P.P.

- He hasn't cleaned his room yet.
- I/They/We/You + haven't + P.P.
- My parents haven't watched the film yet.

Interrogative

Has/Have + subject + P.P.?

- Has Dina finished her homework?
- Have you played the game?
- Wh-word + has/have + subject + P.P.?
- · Where have you been?

Passive

Obj. + has/have + been + P.P.

She has cleaned the room.

(Active)

The room has been cleaned.

(Passive)



Key words	9	
already الفعل	تستخدم بین	I have already passed my driving test. I have passed the driving test already.
الُا/تَوُّا just	تستخدم بین (has/have) & P.P.	He has just finished studying his English lessons.
ever من قبل	تستخدم للسؤال عن التجارب الشخصية السابقة وبعد صيغة التفضيل ومع الجمل المنفية بــ not	 Have you ever met Mohamed Salah? It is the most difficult question I have ever answered. I haven't ever eaten the Chinese food.
never ابدًا/مطلقًا	تستخدم للنفى وفى جمل المقارنة وتأتى بين (has/have) & P.P.	I have never played squash before. I have never seen a player faster than Ronaldo.
yet حتى الأن	تستخدم فى النفى أو الاستفهام	She hasn't revised her lessons yet. Amr hasn't yet sent the files. Has she finished cooking the food yet?
lately/recently حدیثا/مؤخرًا	تستخدم فى الإثبات والاستفهام وغالبـًا ما تستخدم lately فى النفى.	 He has sent me a letter lately/recently. Have you heard from Noha lately/recently? I haven't been sleeping well lately.
so far/up till now حتى الآن	تستخدم في الإثبات والنفي	I have sent my brother three letters up till now. She hasn't had any problems so far.
over / throughout على مر	يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية	Egypt has changed over the last years. She has improved her English throughout the years.
ا How long	تستخدم في الاستفهام	How long has he had that car?
in the last/ in recent في الأخيرة	يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية	Mohamed Salah has played for Liverpool in the last 5 years.
for لمدة	يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية	I have lived in Alexandria for 10 years.
مند since	يأتى بعدها بداية الفترة الزمنية	She has worked as a nurse since 2010.

4 o'clock

2000

Since

yesterday

last (week/month/year)

6 hours

3 years

a/several/many/10 (week/

month/year)

the last (week/month/year)

ages

For

a long time/a short time

a while/a decade/a century

as long as ... can remember

long

- I have started to study English since 1995/for 27 years.
- She has been taught how to swim since last year/for the last year/for a year.
- My brother Osama has worked in tourism since his graduation.

- إذا جاء مع (since) فعل واحد في الجملة يوضع في زمن المضارع التام البسيط أو المستمر.

(بداية الفترة الزمنية) since (مضارع تام)

(مضارع تام)، (بداية الفترة الزمنية) Since

- My daughter hasn't slept well since yesterday.
- Since yesterday, my daughter hasn't slept well.

- إذا جاء مع (since) فعلين ... أي ربطت بين جملتين تصبح القاعدة كالآتي:

(ماض بسيطه) since (مضارع تام)

(مضارع تام)، (ماضِ بسيط) Since

- We haven't seen him since he was in Alexandria.
- Since he was in Alexandria, we haven't seen him.

Got it_

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I haven't seen youages. a) since

b) for

d) over

﴾ الإجابة هي (b) لأن بعدها المدة كاملة ages وهي ليست نقطة بداية.

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 133

Important Notes



) التعبير عن نفى حدوث الفعل حتى ذلك الحين مع توقع حدوثه لاحقيًا. (to do it later) مستخدم (yet عدوثه لاحقيًا.

I haven't eaten at a Chinese restaurant yet. (I expect to do it later).

أها عند استخدام (never) فهى تعبر عن نفى حدوث الفعل حتى ذلك الحين مع عدم توقع حدوثه لاحقيًا.
I have never eaten at a Chinese restaurant. (I don't expect to do it later).

من الممكن استخدام (already) للتعبير عن الدهشة.

Have you finished cooking the food already? How fast!

م) لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

for the last + (a period of time) since last + (a period of time)

I haven't met my colleagues for the last week.

I haven't met my colleagues since last week.

لاحظ الجملة التالية:

I haven't met my colleagues since the last meeting.

الاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

(has/have) been to + (place)

ذهب إلى مكان وعاد

He has been to London. (He came back)

(has/have) gone to + (place)

ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد

He has gone to London. (He is still there)

(has/have) been in + (place)

يمكث في مكان

He has been in London. (He is living there)

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Shady much weight recently.

a) gained

b) has gained

c) is gained

d) gains

2 Have you watched a Korean movie?

a) never

b) still

c) vet

d) ever

a) retired

b) was retiring

c) has retired

d) had retired

4 This is the most interesting book I

a) have never read

b) read

c) ever have read

d) have ever read

5 A: Have you ever visited the Pyramids? B: Yes, I there last year.

a) have gone

b) have been

c) went

d) had gone



Check the answers at the end of the book



Language Exercises

			luating • Creating	Practice is the best way to apply what we have
	se the correct answe			learnt.
1	There has been a tra	affic jam in the square	e two hours.	
9.0	a) since	b) for	c) vet	d) ago
2	the last two	weeks, we have prep	pared for our graduat	ion party.
1			کندریة ۲۰۲۲	مدرسة الكويت - إدارة المنتزه - الإس
1	a) Since	b) At	c) For	d) While
3	We haven't had ice	creamages.		
	a) since	b) for	c) yet	d) ago
4	I have studied Engli	sh the age of	f six.	
1	a) since	b) for	c) yet	d) ago
5	Mohammad is the r	nost intelligent child		
ŧ	a) never	b) lately	-	d) yet
6		port yet, but they wil	*	
	•	b) haven't finished		d) can't finish
7		ntists ways to	_	
	a) will develop		b) have developed	d
į.	c) had developed		d) has developed	
8	•	experiment?	_	
).)	a) yet		c) ago	d) since
9	My keysl c			D bashana laat
1	a) are losing	•	c) have been lost	d) has been lost
10	They the cir	nema. They are at hor	ne now.	d) had been to
:	a) have been to	b) have gone to	c) nave been in	a) had been to
11		ou were looking for.	Here It Is.	d) have found
1	a) find	b) will find	Was finding	d) have found
12		mething to drink? B	c) have just had	d) had just
40	a) just had			إدارة شرق المحلة - الغربية ٢،٢٢
13		a medal for writi	ng poetry.	d) have won
4.4	a) had won	b) was winning	horo	d) Have wor
14		nis village. He is still t	c) has been	d) had gone
4=	a) had been	b) has gone	•	u) nau gone
15		nce then, I my	y menus.	d) hadn't seen
40	a) haven't seen	b) hasn't seen	c) saw	udents
16	I started my	profession; I have mo	et a lot of excellent si	WARE ALL THE
	a) When	b) Since	c) After	ادارة نجع حمادی - قنا ۲۰۲۲ d) Before

ı	17	She has had that car	r since she to l	earn how to drive.	
İ				c) will start	d) started
	18	This is the hest heal	cl all my life	C)	The second
			Crall Hily IIIC	b) had ever read	
	10	Dave nover read		d) have ever read	
	19	nave visited my up	cle		
ı				b) three times last	week
1	20	Unree times this w	reek	d) yesterday	
		A: Have you seen th	at film? B: Yes, I	it yesterday.	
					d) saw
ľ	~.	Yara hasn't gone to s	school the last	two weeks.	
1	1	- J SHICE	D) for	c) when	d) on
	22	Mum to the	shops. Let's see what s	she bought for us.	مرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات٢٠٢٢
				c) has gone	d) has been
	23	Your car It's	ready to use now	4 , 1,40 9	, ran been
í		"I lias alleady repair	ed	b) was being repair	ired
2	04	c) hasn't been repair	ed vet	d) has already bee	
	24	we ate a lot yesterda	v. but we muc	h so far today	
g		on) Have eaten	h haven't eaten	didn't oat	d) hadn't eaten
ı,	25	The ceiling was white	e, and now it is yellow	. Someonei	t.
),		a) had painted		b) has been painte	ed
1		c) has painted		d) had been paint	ing
	20	She was in Marina fo	r the summer. This me	eans that	
		a) she spent every su	ımmer in Marina		
		b) she spends this su	mmer in Marina		
l.		c) she spent part of the	ne summer in iviarina		
	27	d) she spent all the si	urnmer in Marina	771 *	
		My father has been to a) is in England now	o England for two yea	rs. This means that	ne
		c) will be back soon		b) is back now	
i	28	Has Ashraf finished h	is work? He is so quiel	d) won't go there	
ı		a) Ashraf finished his	work quicker than Le	vincted	***********
		b) Ashraf finished his	work later than Levne	rpecied	
		c) Ashraf hasn't finish		cteu	
		d) Ashraf has finished	his work when Lexne	ected him to finish	
	29	haven't met my futu	re wife vet. This mean	s that	
		a) I don't expect to m	arry now	J 111at	
		b) I expect that I won'			
) I expect that I will n			
		d) I don't like to marry	-		
	30	A: Have you ever visit	ed the Pyramids? R• V	es l visitad +b	. 1 . 10 . 1
*	7	his means that		co, i visited them of	n holiday.
) the holiday is still g		b) I have see	1. 1
		the holiday is over	J	b) I have gone on I	noliday
	C	I the Hollday is over		d) the holiday is fa	ntastic

Test Yourself "Zu



Unit 3

Lessons 1 & 2

			Take	
91	Remem	bering Understanding Applying	Analysing	
	DC	hoose the correct answer from		
-4	1	The play that I attended in the	e was one of the best	plays ever.
		a) cinema D) stadi	um c) television	d) theatre
ľ	2	Luxor and Aswan are our grand tombs.	eat historic cities where we ca	an see many ancient
1			oles c) cinemas	d) factories
	3	We our parents a lot	for what they have done for	us to be what we are
0	J	today.	To what they have done for	as to be what we are
			c) lend	d) borrow
ı	4	Yousef's computerw	ere not good enough for the j	ob.
ı		a) skills b) expe	riences c) debts	d) machines
Į	5	I think there is no for n	nistakes in the second term if	you want to succeed.
۱		a) a room b) room	rs c) rooming	d) room
	6	All of us mustour pre	sident in his plans for a better f	uture for our country.
		a) support b) supp	ose c) hinder	d) report
	7	I spent most of myin		
		•	c) career	
	8	There was an expression of p	pain and on his face.	
),	1	a) misery b) mise	r c) miserable	d) missing
ĺ		I don't think the food	. cooked yet.	
		a) has been b) had b	oeen c) was	d) will be
	10	I haven't met my university c	olleaguesa long time.	
		a) for b) until	c) when	d) since
I	11	This is the third time my Face	book account this yea	ar.
		a) has hacked	b) was hacked	
*		c) was hacking	d) has been hack	
Ĭ	12	I haven't met my friend since	heabroad a year ago	
ľ		a) travelled b) had t	ravelled c) has travelled	d) travels
	13	Saad Zaghlool into e	twice; to Seshel and المنفى xile	Malta.
2		a) has sent b) was s	ent () will send	d) sent
4	14	Have you done your work alo	ne? I can't believe it!	
		a) vet b) alread	dy c) ever	d) just
	15	She has been in Damanhour	the day of her arrival	from Upper Egypt.

c) already

b) yet

16The boss needs it urgently.

a) Had the email been printed?

c) Will the email be printed?

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 137

b) Has the email already printed?

d) Has the email already been printed?

d) since

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dangerous substances discharged by factories cause toxic or poisonous air pollution. The emissions have serious effects on public health. Needless to say, exposure to high levels of these toxic emissions will cause a lot of human suffering through chest ailments and diseases.

Toxic chemicals, which do not break down easily in the atmosphere, have been known to travel great distances and come down to earth. Moreover, pollutants emitted from automobiles, cars and other means of transport and dry cleaners are considered very dangerous. In this way, a huge quantity of cancer-causing chemicals are released into the air.

Benzene is known to cause leukemia to humans. This is a serious problem to human health. The World Health Organisation "W.H.O." reaffirms that the gap of the ozone layer has been widening. Two thirds of the layer that protects the globe have been completely destroyed.

Ozone absorbs the harmful ultraviolet rays that cause skin cancer and damage eyesight.

Many countries are now taking action to reduce pollution. But, this pollution problem may solve itself when the world oil wells have run out. Then we hope that alternative sources of energy will have been found.

(4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The ozone layer, being widened by pollutants,
 - a) prevents ultraviolet rays from coming down to earth
 - b) protects the globe
 - c) allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering
 - d) absorbs the harmful pollutants
- 2 Toxic chemicals
 - a) break down easily in the atmosphere
 - b) do not break down easily in the atmosphere and don't come down to earth
 - c) come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere
 - d) are emitted from the atmosphere and come down to earth
- 3 Toxic emissions sometimes cause
 - a) ultraviolet rays to break down easily
 - b) chest ailments and other diseases
 - c) ultraviolet rays
 - d) the reduction of pollution

	4	A suitable title for the passage is "	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				
		a) Ultraviolet rays	b) Toxic air-pollution				
		c) Leukemia in humans	d) The World Health Organisation				
	5	of the layer that protects th	e globe are remaining.				
		a) two tilius	b) One third				
		c) Three fifths	d) Half				
	6	The ozone layer is important because	se				
		a) it wraps the earth					
		b) it prevents the harmful rays from	reaching the earth				
		c) it protects the space from the su	n				
<u>b</u>)		d) it protects the other planets from	n the earth				
	7	Industry is responsible for polluting	the environment because				
		a) factories don't pay taxes					
		b) factories discharge dangerous substances					
		c) many people work in industry					
	0	d) building new factories takes a lot of water					
	0	8 When the petrol runs out from the world,					
		a) there will be a big problem in energy priceb) the pollution will disappear					
		c) there will be an energy crisis					
		d) the deserts will fade					
2	A) -	Translate into Arabic:					
	**,		lop sports by all means(1) and this is the				
		responsibility of the government a					
		responsibility of the government a					
ı			***************************************				
		2. Terrorism is one of the worst and m	nost complicated problems that has a lot				
11		of destructive(2) effects on both citi					
00							
63		3. It is believed that money is the roo	t of all evil. It is considered the main				
, ,		reason for deviation(3), addiction(4),	committing crimes and even wars				
4000		among countries.					
. 9		***************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				
6.5		***************************************					
			Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 139				

	والمعلمون وكذلك الإعلام ^(ه) دورًا هامئا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال، وتعديل سل سالحين.
***************************************	**************************************
التي جعلت كل شيء من	فيه أننا نعيش فى عصر العلم والتكنولوجيا. فالكمبيوتر والإنترنت من الاختراعات يحدث.
ة بوجه عام وساعد الكثير	كثير من مكتبات المدارس والمكتبات العامة ساهم في™ تحسين العملية™ التعليم ي والشباب على القراءة بحرية.
How to tra	anslate
a rich m	ى دائمـًا قبل الموصوف في الجملة باللغة الإنجليزية an (not) a -man-rich
	حرفية غير مطلوبة تمامًا ويجب البعد عنها:
	contribute to (not) contribute in help to (not) help on
rite an essay of a	ں ترجمتھا make + object + inf./adj وقاعدتھا make + object + inf./adj مرجمتھا
 A short story yo 	
A short story yo	make + object + inf./adj وقاعدتها make وقاعدتها bout ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the fo u read and liked very much.
. How societies b	make + object + inf./adj وقاعدتها make وقاعدتها bout ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the fo u read and liked very much.
 A short story yo 	make + object + inf./adj وقاعدتها make وقاعدتها bout ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the fo u read and liked very much.



Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary

* Can you give examples for voluntary work?

Key Vocabulary

community (n)	مجتمع
culture (n)	ثقافة
food bank (n)	بنك الطعام

voluntary work (n)*	عمل تطوعى
youth association (n)	جمعية (اتحاد) شباب

Vocabulary on Reading

main (adj)	رئیسی	solve (v) – d	يحل
paint (v) – ed	يرسم	solution (n)	حل
plan (v) – ned/(n)	يخطط/خطة	surprise (n) (v) – d	مفاجأة/يفاجئ
planning (n)	التخطيط	touch (v) – ed	يلمس

Vocabulary on Reading

admit (v) – ted	يعترف	grow up (v)	ينضج
adult (n)/(adj)	شخص بالغ	later (adv)	فيما بعد
around (adv)	حول	nowhere (adv)	لا مكان
break (v)/(n)	يكسر/راحة	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
disabled (n)	معاق	trick (n) (v) – ed	خدعة/يخدع
dreamer (n)	حالم	trust (v) – ed	يثق
the Egyptian Red Crescent دی	الهلال الأحمر المص	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد
experience (v) – d (n)	يجرب/خبرة		

EVEN		
Expressions,	Idia	m
P. 60310115.	idioms &	Prenositions

as much as	بقدر ما	make a difference	فنكتفا ونسي
do a great job	يقوم بعمل عظيم	send to	پرسل إلى
do work for	يقوم بعمل من أجل	play a trick on	وعني
give back to	يرد إلى	stop from	يوقف من
most of	معظم	unusual for	غير معتاد اـ
return to	يعود إلى	write down	بهون
put into	ر يضع في	go wrong	يخطئ ايسوء

Derivatives

Ve	mb	No	un	Adj	ective
admit	يعترف	admission	اعتراف/إقرار	admissible	ا مسموح/مقبول
		culture	ثقافة	cultural cultured	ثقافی مثقف/متحضر
dream	يحلم	dream dreamer	حلم شخص حالم	dreamy ه	دالم/غامض/كثير الأحاد
disable	ينعجئز	disability	إعاقة	disabled	ذو احتياجات خاصة
associate	يرتبط/يتحد	association	اتحاد/منظمة	associated	مترابط
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteer	متطوع	voluntary	تطوعى

words, Synonyms & Antonyms

word	Meaning	المرادف Synonyms	المضاد Antonym
admit	يعترف	confess/acknowledge	deny/renounce ينكر
culture	ثقافة	civilisation/art	ignorance جھل
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate	unlucky/unfortunate غير محظوظ
main	رئیسی/أساسی	major/essential	minor/trivial غير هام/تافه
trust	يثق	believe/place confidence in	doubt/disbelieve يشك/لا يصدق
unusual	غير معتاد	uncommon/ unconventional	usual/conventional/common
voluntary	تطوعى	willing/free	involuntary/unwilling غير تطوعي

Check Point Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 People from many different will get together during the conference. b) experiences a) solutions d) machines c) cultures d) fainted c) solved b) planned a) painted 3 Finally, the thiefstealing the money from my neighbours. b) refused c) dreamed d) admitted a) avoided 4 Doctors and nurses a great job to help us to face COVID-19. d) give c) play **b)** do a) make 5 He managed to me into lending him a lot of money. d) trek c) trace b) track a) trick

Listening Text



Let's talk about how to write a great short story. It's important to plan(1) your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening(2) and we meet the main character⁽³⁾. Don't spend too much time describing⁽⁴⁾ places

and people – your characters need to do something from the start.

In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong. It's a good idea to have

two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a

surprise(5) for the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what

بخطط (1)

يحدث (2)

مفاجأة (5)

الشخصية الرئيسة (3)

What are the elements of a short storu?

Workbook Text (1)

David Copperfield grew up with his mother and his stepfather(1), Mr Murdstone.

happens to them when things are OK again.

Then David's mother died and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to leave(2) school and work in a factory(3). Then Mr Micawber went to prison(4) and David had nowhere to live. Without a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his daughter, Agnes, but David didn't trust⁽⁵⁾ him. Some time later, Uriah Heep played a trick⁽⁶⁾ on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her. When David found Uriah Heep, he admitted(7) that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made (8) him give it back to her. Then David went travelling around Europe.

(1)	الأم	.وج
(1)	الأم	وج

(2)	브	يتر

21	
-51	21100
101	

When David returned to England, he married Agnes and he became a successful writer.

Workbook Text (2)

: In my opinion the Egyptian Food Bank⁽¹⁾ (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got enough money for food, and it teaches(2) all of us to think more.

Samira: I have experienced⁽³⁾ the work of Tomorrow's Dreamer Youth Association⁽⁴⁾. In my opinion, it shows young people that they can make a difference(5), and it teaches them about other cultures (6) and communities. They are doing a great job by helping to educate⁽⁷⁾ a lot of young people.

Maher: The Egyptian Red Crescent⁽⁸⁾ helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop health problems from happening. One day,

I want to do some voluntary work⁽⁹⁾ for them.

بنك الطعام المصري (1)

يعلم (2)

يجرب (3)

منظمة الشباب الحالمين بالغد (4)

يحدث فرقاً (5)

ثقافات (6)

يعلم (7)

الهلال الأحمر المصرى (8)

العمل التطوعي (9)

Golden Question Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When your dinner?
 - a) did you eat
 - b) have you eaten
 - c) will you be eaten
 - d) you have eaten

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

community

people who live in a place or an area and have common interests

culture

ثقافة

the beliefs and traditions of a group of people

- food bank

بنك الطعام

a place where people collect food to give to others

voluntary work

عمل تطوعي

a job that people do for no money

youth association

جمعية شباب

a group of young people who do things together

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

later

نيما بعد l'm going out for a bit. I'll see you later.

latter

الأخير I met Ali and Samy; the latter seemed exhausted.

make + (object) + inf.

I like him because he makes me laugh.

make + (someone/ something) + adj.

He wants to make the world a better place.

force + (object) + to + inf.

يجبر/يجعل

She forced her daughter to sleep early.

Let's go out. = What about going out? ويستخدم للاقتراح أيضـّا 🎧 ?... How (What) about + v-ing Let's + inf. Shall we + inf. ...? = هيا .. (تستخدم للاقتراح) Why don't you/we + inf. I suggest + v-ing I spent three hours playing video games with my spend + time + (v + ing)* friends. My wife spent a lot of money last week. spend* ينفق (يصرف) مالا * Actually, we spend time and money. on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts I have experienced the work of the association. كلمة experience تأتى فعلًا بمعنى يجرب أو يقوم بـ. One day, I want to do some voluntary work for youth. من المعتاد استخدام one day لتعبر عن الماضي ولكن أيضًا تستخدم لتعبر عن المستقبل كما في المثال. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Check Point Students need to their study more carefully to pass their exams. d) plain c) play b) plan a) plane 2 He doesn't want his mother to marry after his father's death. He doesn't like to have a c) stepfather d) father b) colleague a) stepmother 3 I always study hard as I don't want to failure. b) experiment c) except d) exert a) experience 4 My grandfather has the ability toamazing stories. c) tell d) ask b) do a) say 5 I always make my sons on themselves. c) to depending b) depending d) depend a) to depend Check the answers at the end of the book.

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 147



Vocabulary Exercises

		membering • Understand	11.3.0	EvaluatingCreating	I think number one is (1)
C	ho	ose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c or	d:	do you agree?
(
1			ading, Listening & Wo		
1	1	The reas	son for learning Engli	ish is to get a better jo	ob in the future
		a) minor	b) main	c) later	a) mean
	2	This bicycle is too	bia My feet don't e	ven the grou	ınd.
		a) Stob	b) trust	c) touch	(d) clutch
	3	It is important to	have a if vo	ou want to be better a	it your work and also
Į		your health.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	of traine to its is a second	7 - 11 d also
			b) breakaway	c) fight	d) break
	4	The film is suitab	le for both children a	and	,
١.		a) adults	b) kids	c) toddlers	d) babies
Н	5			at you had listened to	your parents'advice
ı.		a) Latter	b) Late	c) Lately	d) Later
П	6	There were two	ptions for me to stud	dy, English and History	. I chose the
		a) latter	b) late	c) lately	d) later
	7	The contribution	is that parents make	to the school funds	arenot
0.		compulsory. The	y can decide whethe	r to share or not.	
5		a) obligatory	b) voluntary	c) volunteer	d) prohibited
	8	Although they a	re twins, their	are quite different.	
	_	a) persons	b) associations	c) characters	d) work
	9	The police could	arrest the criminal w	hen the woman	him.
ı.	40	a) prescribed	b) admired	c) admitted	d) described
	10	He is a very relial	ole person and so we	can him to h	ielp us.
١.	44	a) trust	D) Trick	c) admit	d) make
ľ		after their mothe	nt their noildays with	their father and	who married him
1		a) stepmother		a) ann - 15 - 1	
١.	12	come w	b) granny	grandrather to watch the new film	d) stepfather
1	-	a) Let's	b) What about	c) How about	
١.	13	Youth is	a group of young pe	ople who do things to	d) Why don't you
ı		10uti	a group or young pe	opic who do things to	
1		a) federation	b) participation	c) negotiation	(أولاد على الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
ŀ	14	We need to work	together to find sust	tainable to or	d) association
		a) causes	p) reasons	c) savings	d) colutions
	15	As the room is ve	ry old, thev	vas peeling off the wa	lls
4		a) bee	b) plant	c) paint	d) paintbrush

1	6 Ith	nink you are a/a	an! What you	think about may nev	er happen.
	2)	dreamer	entrate on what is reall b) illustrator	y happening.	d) illusionist
	7 1/16	meet once a r	month to discuss the	c) realistic	Al-Salam Hotel.
'	al	opportunity	b) character	c) lucky	d) community
4	s Ch	ildren need to	things by the	mselves in order to l	earn from them.
•	al	expert	b) experience	c) experiment	d) expire
1	9 Mr	Gad spent a y	ear in England	Arabic	 ,,
	a)	teach	b) to teach	c) teaching	d) be teaching
(, Prepositions, Derivativ		
1			ng from your teachers,		
, 2		ey say.	ng nom your teachers,	you snould write	everytimig
	a)		b) for	c) up	d) down
			a, he became	first in the swimming	
1	a)	disable	b) disabled	disability	d) disabilities
	22 At	med Hassan's	name is always	with the achievem	ents and
•			of the national team.	With the demoter.	
			b) association	c) associating	d) associate
	23 Ih	ate those who	like to tricks	other people	
).			b) make/on		
	24 It i	s not usual	my daughter to s	sleep early. I think she	e is tired.
	al	for	b) about	c) from	d) to
	25 Th	e inventions ar	nd discoveries of our g	reat scientists	a difference to
ē		ır lives.			
			b) played	c) made	d) paid
١,			rrect answers of the		
1	20. 14	se the Tvio co	es a lot of voluntary wo	rk for Resala Charity (Organisation
1	26 My	y daugnter doe	ary" equals in meaning	the words	and
4	111	e word volunt	b) free c) involu	untary d) willing	e) compulsory
	a) 27 Ch	unwillingly	r roles in various fields	before she became a	famous actress.
,	-7 311 Th	e played millo	the word "minor" are	and	•
1				نتزه التعليمية - الإسكندرية٢٠٢٢	مدرسة ثانوية الكويت للبنات إدارة الم
	2)	unimportant	b) major c) secon	ndary d) trivial	e) main
	DR NA	. dayahtar	a very clever busi	Hessiliali wilo is very	respected.
	-1	700 m m m m	h) married to CI married	ea u) is illallieu	to el is marry to
	20 E:-	ا مالمه	that he was a liar and v	vhat ne said was wroi	ng.
	-1	fa	hinvanted CLEXDIO	rea a) discovered	i ej iouna our
	30 Se	veral people de	escribed seeing "strang	e" lights in the sky. IT	ne synonyms of the
1	Wo	ord "strange" are	and	a #	
1		common	b) unfamiliar c) usual	u) noma	
Lag.				منتزه التعليمية - الإسطندرية ٢٠٢٢	مدرسة ثانوية الكويت للبنات إدارة اله

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 149



Lessons 3 & 4





را بعد تعبيرات This is the first/second/... time نستخدم المضارع التام.

This is the first time I have made this silly mistake.

م) عند وجود دليل على انتهاء الفعل تمامـًا بلا أثر في الحاضر نستخدم الماضي البسيط.

My friend has worked for this company for twenty years. (He is still working).

My friend worked for this company for twenty years before retiring last year.

٣) عادة ما نستخدم المضارع التام عند ذكرنا للموضوع للمرة الأولى ولكن الماضي البسيط نستخدمه لتوضيح تفاصيل ما حدث.

There has been a serious accident on the road to Cairo. It happened at 9 this morning when a lorry went out of control and hit a car.

٤) من الممكن استخدام مدة زمنية بعد (since) بشرط استخدام (ago) بعد المدة الزمنية.

since + a period of time + ago

I have lived in this town since 10 months ago.

ه) من الممكن استخدام (since) كرابط يأتي بعده سبب أو تعليل.

He was arrested since he stole my money.

٦) للسؤال عن وقت بداية الحدث نستخدم:

Since when + (has/have) + subject + (P.P.) ...?

Since when have you married Noha? – Since 2002.

٧﴾ للسؤال عن المدة التي استغرقها الحدث نستخدم:

For how long + (has/have) + subject + (P.P.) ...?

For how long have you married Noha? - For 20 years.

٨) يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم وما يزال أثره في الحاضر أما إذا كان الأثر في الماضي فيستخدم زمن العاضي التام.

- My car is very clean because I have washed it.
- My car was very clean because I had washed it.

الكلام مثل:
 الكلام مثل:

this (morning/afternoon/evening)/today/tonight/this (week/month/year)

I have watched a film tonight.

(ما زالت الليلة ممتدة ولم ينته ِ بعد في وقت الكلام)

أما إذا كانت قد انتهت وقت الكلام فنستخدم الماضي البسيط.

I watched a film tonight.

(الليلة انتهت وقت الكلام)

ماضِ بسيط (last) past simple + فاعل + since + مدة زمنية + [lt's

It's two years since I met my friend Ali.

+ past simple + ... + when + فاعل + past simple

He last visited the Eiffel Tower when he was in France.

past simple + (a moment ago - a short time ago – just now) + فاعل

She finished doing the washing up a moment ago.

(الفاعل) + (has/have) + never + (P.P.) + ... + before

I have never been to China before

+ superlative (has / have) ever + P.P.

He's the most intelligent person I've ever met.



- من الممكن استخدام الماضي المستمر مع تعبيرات |all مع الماضي:

عند وجود ما يدل على استمرار الفعل وعدم انتهائه مع كلمات for - since - all نستخدم المضارع التام المستمر: (has - have) + been + v-ing

- Hams has been working for three hours and she hasn't finished yet.
- I have been playing football all day. I am really so tired.

١١) لاحظ هذه المقارنة بين المضارع التام والماضي البسيط:

Present Perfect	Past Simple
- I have been to Mansura and Tanta.	- I went to Mansura a week ago.
(وقت غیر محدد)	(وقت محدد في الماضي)
- Have you been busy this morning?	- Were you busy this morning?
(ما زلنا في فترة الصباح ولم تنته)	(انتهت فترة الصباح وأصبحت ماضيًا)
- Have you had a nice time? (You have just returned)	- Did you have a nice time? (You returned sometime before the question).
- He has been a teacher for 20 years.	- He was a teacher for 20 years.
(He is still a teacher).	(He is no longer a teacher).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 It's more than 20 years I travelled abroad.
 - a) while

b) before

c) when

d) since

- 2 My father in this company for 20 years now.
 - a) works

b) worked

c) has been working

d) is working

- 3 It is the first time Ian actor.
 - a) have ever met

b) have never met

c) ever meet

d) never met

- 4 Waheedin Qena for ten years. Now, he lives in Alexandria.
 - a) lived

b) has lived

c) were living

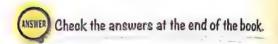
d) had lived

- 5 Ahmed last had his car washedhe was in Cairo.
 - a) since

b) while

c) for

d) when







Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing 🕒 E	valuating • Creating	
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:		
1 Ali won the first prize for reading	2011	
a) since	- \ C	d) at
2 Yomna has begun to read short stories	2008.	
a) since	a) for	d) at
3 My friend hasn't visited Aswan	he was young.	
a) ioi D) When	c) since	d) after
4 He last went on holidayhe was	still a child.	
a) for b) when	c) since	d) after
5 I have tried seafood and I have	no desire to try it.	
a) just b) ever	c) lately	d) never
6 Ramy PlayStation for two hours		
a) played	b) has been pl	ayed
c) has been playing	d) is playing	
7 Mr Fadel a teacher for 20 years r	now.	II) la nim m
a) has been being b) has been		d) was being
8 It is an hourhe phoned to ask m		
a) for b) when	_,	d) while
9 Menna visited her close friend Sama		dlyot
a) just b) just now 10 It has been two weeks since he	c) ago	d) yet
a) travelled b) has travelled		d) travel
11 My kids are really pleased as this is the fi		*
11 My kids are really pleased as this is the fi	ist time they	ادارة شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) visite d	b) have never	
a) visited	d) was visiting	risited
c) have ever visited 12 They have cleaned the room. You		gain
	c) already	d) hardly
a) ever b) never	c) direday	مدرسة أولاد على الثانوية ٢٠٢٢
13 My daughter English all day.	b) has studied	Title aggin Gir argi amjur
a) has been studying	d) studied	
c) had studied	-	
14 Radwa ten letters today. She is st	c) wrote	d) had written
a) has been writing b) has written		d) Had Wittell
15 It for three hours. The street is ver	c) has rained	d) rained
a) is raining b) had rained	hoforo	•
16 I haveread a good book like this I	oelule.	إدارة مركز منية النصر - الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
a) ever b) never	c) yet	d) before

17	A) had just died	Ha sant hala savina		
4	a) had just died	ne can't neip crying.	b) just dying	
-	O Das Usually died		d) has just died	
18	ne by the n	olica anca alroady	a) Has just and a	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		b) has warned	
	c) has been warned		d) had warned	
19	He has lived in Caird	the age of si	xteen.	
			c) by	d) since
20	Ola looks pale. She	ill for long	4 , 2,	
	TIGG DEEL		c) was	d) is
21	Since when	ill?	,	
1	a) is your father		b) has your fathe	r been
00	c) was your father		d) your father wa	c
22	A: Have you cooked	the food mum? B: Ye	es, Iit an hou	ır ago.
1			۲.	مدرسة بني محمد سلطان - المنيا٢٢
22	a) have	b) cooked	# have cooked	(a)
20	He to Cairo.	I will wait for him unt	til he comes back. 🕝	و و المام والذليفة - القاهرة ٢٠٠
T .	7		61 0000	
	a) For	f her husband, I've ne	ver seen her smiling	J.
	-/101	DIVINCE	el So far	al) \//la a
).	He wants to know	I have been a r	member in this spor	ts club.
1	lam sorry for comir	D) for now long	for when	d) how long ago
	Tann son y for confin	iu iale, sir. i	e tollet	
27	She has just finished	b) have gone to	c) have been in	d) was being in
	a) she has finished o	cooking the food for t	hom a mamort a se	B#####################################
	b) she has never coo	oked the food for ther	nem a moment ago. m	
1	c) she has cooked the	ne food for them for a	ges	
	(a) she cooked the to	ood for them a mome	nt ago	
28	I last played footbal	l on Monday. This sen	tence means that	
	a) I didir t play 100tb	all since Monday.		*************
:	b) I haven't played for	ootball since Monday		
ł !	c) I had played footh	oall on Monday.		
200	d) I didn't play footb	oall on Monday.		
29	Marwan is the cleve	rest student I have ev	er seen. This means	that
	a) I have seen many	ciever students like iv	larwan	
	c) Marwan isn't as cl	students who are bet ever as the students I	tter than Marwan.	
	d) It is the first time	to see a student who	is claver !!!	
30	Ashraf has been work	king as a waiter for 3	is clever like Marwar	٦.
	a) he didn't work as	a waiter.	years. This means th	at
	•	e left his work as a wa	aiter	
	c) he still works as a			
	d) he no longer worl			



Lessons 3 & 4



General Skills

للمزيدها الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحة المعارات.



(I) Life Skills

التعاطف

- I am so sorry for that bad news.
- · Sorry for hearing your bad news.
- · What bad news!



(II) Writing

· How to prepare for writing a short story?

- 1. You should first plan your story. (Time, place, problem and the main characters)
- 2. Use adjectives and adverbs to describe people and actions briefly.
- 3. As the story continues, mention the problem and how was it solved.
- 4. There should be a lesson/moral that we should learn from your story.



A story of good luck

Five years ago, the night train from Cairo to Aswan was full of passengers. One of the passengers was called Maher. He was travelling to Aswan to see his aunt and uncle. Suddenly, the train stopped. Maher looked out of the window and found that they were in the middle of the country and everything was black. His train stopped because there was something in front of it which looked like a man in a big black coat. The man was moving his arms up and down slowly. Maher thought that it was terrifying. Two passengers started to walk towards the man in the black coat but couldn't touch him. Two other men came and said that all passengers were lucky as the train stopped. There was a terrible crash ahead.

A car accident caused the bridge to collapse on the railway. Luckily, there was a big light on the front of the train and in the middle of the big light, there was a butterfly. When it moved, its wings made a big shadow which looked like a man moving his arms. So, all passengers were saved thanks to their good luck.

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 155

Test Yourself Co



Unit 3

Lessons 3 & 4

O Ros	nembering • Understanding		AL DE	
	- Containing	Applying Analysing	Evaluating Creating	
	Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1	Theentra	ance to the building	a is on the other side.	You can reach it easily.
	- / IIIGIII	h) mean	C) Diairi	M) IIIalle
1	There have been	a lot of useful activ	vities for young peopl	e since the youth
	was form	ed in our city	711103101751) • 4 (
	a) Charitable	h) prison	c) association	d) society
3	r triink that it's a	erv good t	to improve the reputa	tion of the company
;	a) community	b) culture	c) association	a) Opportunity
	neally, ne didn't.	to drop the	vase, it was an accide	ent.
	a) ask	b) tell	c) plan	d) solve
5	To everyone's	, my favourite	c) plan team lost the match y	esterday.
80	-/ ICI	D) Surprise	c) tun	(I) Madness
6	, 111 Out, If	IS rude to ask some	one how much they e	earn.
,	a) culture	b) admittance	c) character	d) dream
7	me government	tries hard to provid	de all facilities for	
	a) the disable	b) the disability	v c) disabled	d) the disabled
8	it is known that n	nost the sh	ops and companies at	re shut on Fridays.
	a) HOM	b) of	c) in	d) about
<u>ට</u> ු) ම	The little boy is cr	ying because he	over and injure	d his arm.
~ - '	a) has fallen	b) is falling	c) had fallen	d) was falling
10	vve to a fa	intastic journey in <i>i</i>	Aswan last week.	•
	a) nave taken	b) are taking	c) were taken	d) took
	Since the comput	er was used in scho	ools, remarkable progr	ess in education
1 :	a) has made		b) made	
10	c) was making	ich the same as	d) has been m	ade
12	a) had arrested	العصابة Ish the gang العاد	as soon as they	
42		b) have arrested	d c) arrested	d) will arrest
	a) since	b) while	as we were 20	
14	The famous player	or says that he has	c) already	d) when
	remember.	i says that he has	biased lootball	as long as he can
	a) for	b) when	e) since	
15			c) since s that she the	d) while
	a) is still	b) is no longer	c) was	
16	Maha is so tired as	sheso har	d since morning	d) won't be
	a) has worked		b) will work	
1	c) had been working	ng	d) has been wo	aulas at
1	-,		- ings peell M(orked

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used: the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one plant that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Natural remedies are attracting attention because they
 - a) are used in Egypt

- b) have side effects
- c) are exported from Egypt
- d) can treat a lot of diseases
- 2 Garlic is an example of
 - a) natural remedies

b) artificial herbs

c) chemical medicines

- d) modern drugs
- - a) herbalist

b) shop

c) customer

- d) prescription
- 4 Herbal medicine is more effective than chemical medicine because
 - a) it's cheaper and cleaner
 - b) it's easily found and easily taken in
 - c) it cures and protects from side effects
 - d) many local people benefit from selling it

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 157

	5	The antonym of the und	erlined word "advantage" is
		a) demerit	b) advancement
		c) disagreement	d) agreement
	6	The main idea of the pas	sage is ""
		a) The Herbal Medicine	Benefits
		b) The Chemical Medicir	ne Disadvantages
		c) The Faculty of Medicin	ne Disdavanteg
(A)		d) The Trees Can Cure	
	7	Which sentence is NOT of	orrect about natural herbs?
		a) They're used for treati	ing illnesses since primitive times.
		b) They were used in the	paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs.
		c) They can be fried on f	ire to be served
		d) Some drugs are still b	ased on natural herbs.
	8	The bark of theis	sused to make aspirin.
		a) bush tree	b) shadow plant
		c) palm tree	d) willow tree
3		ranslate into Arabic:	
or C		There are a lot of peop	le who are miserable(1) as they don't have enough
		money to live on(2) or a p	place to live in.
El Co	٠		
Ora Ora		2. Researches say that we	must have a hobby to refresh ourselves and ease
		the bad effects of work s	stress(3)
		and see effects of Work's	
(00)	3	. Without confidence (4) or	belief(5) in your own power, you cannot achieve
		success or happiness.	, and a contract defined
		.,	
١,	R) Tr	anslate into English:	
Ι.			١- يُقَالَ إن البشر في خطر دائمًا نتيجة لتدخلهم في الطبيعة بسبب جشعه
			طعور أنواع جديدة من الأمراض التي ليس لها علاج.
	***		معور الواع جديده من الامراض اللي تحت
	***	••••	

	ب علــى الحكومة المصرية متمثلة في وزارة الصحة الاهتمام بتطوير المؤسر ر في المستقبل.
) متساوية ^(۱) .	ن الآن نعيش في مجتمع يعمل فيه الرجل والمرأة جنبـًا إلى جنبـ، (^) بحقوق
How to translate	
ا مثل كلمات أخرى (يعتبر – من المتو <mark>قع</mark>	مة (يـُقال) يتم ترجمتها إلى المبنى للمجهول كما يلى t is said that
	.it + passive + that + sentence (
(to - in order to so == 1	مة (قد) تعبر عن الاحتمال وتكون ترجمتها .may/might + inf. مة (لك.) من الكامات التي تعدد و الثين التي من الثين الكامات التي من أحد المنا
7 26 02 – 01 ianio iii – 01).	مة (لكى) من الكلمات التى تعبر عن الغرض وترجمتها تكون .to) + inf
rite an essay of about ONE I	HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the follow
	of young people who give up education at earl
	of young people who give up cadcation at any
	of young people who give up cadeation at east,
ages.	
ages. The positive effect of impro	
ages.	
ages.	oving lives of poor people.
ages.	oving lives of poor people.
The positive effect of impro	I used a topic sentence. I wrote the conclusion. I used the repunctuation.

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 159

Study

Chapter 3 (Treasure Island)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

attack	
bank	يهاجم
	مصرف/ضفة نهر
barrel	ېرميل
crew	طاقم
crutch	عكاز
destination	المكان المقصود/جهة الوصول
empty	غارغ
explain	يشرح/يفسر

gang	غسامة
join	ينضم إلى/يلحق بـ
mean	يعنى/رنعيد
mutiny	<mark>تمرد/عصیا</mark> ن
own	يمتلك
parrot	ولغبب
past	مار"ا أمام
patient	صبور/مريض

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

agree with	يتفق مع
become blind	يصاب بالعمى
climb inside	يتسلق للداخل
full of	ملىء
go on a journey	يذهب في رحلة
go on the ship	يصعد السفينة
happy about	سعید' بشان
happy to	سعید ل
look after	یعتنی ب
make me laugh	يضحكنى

nearly empty	شبه فارغ
pay for	يدفع اـ
prepare to	يستعد اـ
run after	يلحق
the front of	مقدمة
tired of	متعب من
walk around	يتجول
took some time to	استغرق بعض الوقت اــ
wait that long	ينتظر هذا الوقت الطويل
walk up	يسير متجها

Practice

Novel Exercises

Chapter (3)

			-	minor.
m R	em	em	DE	ring

Understanding

Analysing

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	1	I saw a lot of ships	and boats in the	this morning.	
		a) station	b) airport	c) harbour	d) navy
	2	A of men	attacked the prison ar	nd broke some prison	ers out.
		a) band	b) gang		d) collection
	3	I like as th	ney are beautiful and c	an speak like people.	
		a) cats	b) lions	c) butterflies	d) parrots
	4	My son is getting	very tired wai	ting for his exams.	
		a) by	b) of	c) in	d) at
	5	We were lucky wh	nen we found the train	quiteand w	e could sit.
		a) empty	b) crowded	c) busy	d) occupied
	6	We weren't told a	bout the of or	ur journey. It was a see	cret.
		a) position	b) formation	c) distinction	d) destination
	7	The workers thre	atened that there will	be a/an if con	ditions don't
		improve.			
		a) matter	b) mutiny	c) attack	d) mutual
	8	The price of oil to	day is about 100 dolla	ars per	
).		a) barrier	b) barrow	c) barter	d) barrel
	9	My uncle had a b	ad accident and had t	o walk on	D. sa suchs
		a) crutches	b) catches	c) cutts	d) secrets
	10	You shouldn't tel	I anyone about your c	omputer password. It	must be
		a) obvious	b) available	c) secret	d) scared
	11	In the past, ships	were attacked by	wno were very sa	avage.
		al miratos	h) hirds	c) bliots	u) ariirrais
	12	This device is des	signed forpeo	ple as it works by voi	ce.
			h) blind	c) dump	u) bioliu
	13	I like walking on	the of the rive	er with my menas enj	bying the beauty
		of nature.			d) bank
		a) shore	b) beach	c) coast	
1	14	There was a viole	ent storm and nearly a	of the sh	th mer men end.
			h) aroun	CICIEW	u) pack
	15	I couldn't unders	stand the lesson, so I a	sked my teacher to	li agam.
		a) prepare	b) express	c) join	d) explain

Unit 3 Chapter 3

Unit 3

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

Remember					
Remembering	Understanding	Applying	Analysing	Evaluating	Creating
Choose the	50***				

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
	t during the storm		they needed clean
a) stopped	b) dirtied	c) frowned	d) blew
2 We must	all our experience		
a) employ	b) imply	c) supply	d) reply
3 The team's vict	ory today has		
a) gained	b) wanted	c) beat	d) earned
4 We didn't have	anywhen we	sold our house. How	
a) gain	b) win	c) losses	d) action
5 Hospitals today	are far from	what they were 50 yea	ars ago.
a) similar	b) benefited		
6 The factory clos	ed down because the	owners couldn't mak	
a) lay	b) pay	c) stay	d) beat
7 The weather in E	gypt, for the most	, is mild and sun	ny.
a) place	b) position	c) site	d) part
8 The water	has burst and we h	ave to get a plumber.	
a) main	b) major	c) minor	d) mean
9 Only members w	rill be to the c	lub for tonight's perfo	ormance.
a) arranged	b) borrowed	c) admitted	d) owed
10 Your password m	ust contain at least n	ine either nur	mbers or letters.
a) personalities		c) activities	d) characters
11 Finally, we	for the name of his	new child. We named	him "Mohamed".
a) plumped	b) owed	c) owned	d) imprisoned
12 The manager's cru	elty the emp	loyee's spirit.	
a) mended	b) broke	c) repaired	d) supported

	13	Hethe mo	tor because the weathe	er was terrible and he	e couldn't continue
		his journey.			
3		a) enabled	b) disabled	c) broke	d) postponed
	14	He great p	pain after the accident.	Now he is trying to	recuperate.
		a) earned	b) spread	c) expired	d) experienced
	15	They will be very a	angry with you if they fi	nd out that you	on them!
		a) die	b) discover	c) spend	d) rat
	16	I didn't notice the	thiefI was wat	ching the match.	
		a) during	b) since	c) for	d) just
	17	The couple	for 7 years when I me	t them. It was in 20°	15.
		a) have married		b) married	
		c) have been mar	ried	d) had been mar	ried
	18	My father has wo	rked in this company	5 years ago.	
		a) during	b) since	c) for	d) just
	19	I haven't met my	colleagues the	last conference.	
),		a) during	b) since	c) for	d) just
	20	Was it the first tin	ne that you bee	n to London?	
		a) have ever	b) had ever	c) have never	d) are never
	21	Ia cake. V	Vould you like some?		
		a) 've been to ma	ke	b) 've made	
		c) 'd been made		d) 'd been makin	ng
	22	I enjoyed the film	as I saw many places I'		
		a) gone	b) been to	c) been	d) arrived at
	23	I football	this afternoon and we		
		a) played	b) had played	c) have played	d) was playing
	24	They have lived in	n Europe fall.		
		a) during	b) since	c) for	d) just
	25	Samira is my best	friend, Iher fo	r 5 years now.	
		a) know		b) have known	
		c) have been kno	wing	d) am knowing	

Unit 3



Al-Adwaa Test



•	Roma		Question		
		mbering • Understandin		Evaluating	
C	hoo	ose the Two corr	rect answers of the Fiv	e options:	
THE	1	Those who	ill from time to tim	e should see a docto	r regularly.
		a) become	b) make c) do		e) go
	2	After months w	vithout rain, the ground		ugh. The antonyme
Page !		of the word "ha	ord" are and	*********	31112
		a) soft	b) delicate c) rocklil		e) pure
	Ch	oose the correct	t answer from a, b, c or		
	3		ere to survive th		ad their home
		a) cultured	b) unusual		d) unfortunate
	4		ing, he has no job and	to live	a) dinortunate
				c) anywhere	d) somewhere
	5		a/an to show hi	is ability	u) somewhere
		a) opportunity	b) solution	ability.	d) unusual
	6	It would	you to get your teach	ers'advice hefore taki	ng your final over
0,		a) harm	b) hurt	c) gain	d) pay
	7		n is a grievous loss to th		a) pay
		a) opportunity	b) character	c) lucky	d) community
	8		o British and Australian		a, community
		a) cultures	b) pictures	c) characters	d) dreams
	9	I haven't seen m	ny younger sister	I miss her very mu	ch.
		a) long time	b) firstly	c) sometimes	d) lately
	10	I am a student i	n the third secondary g	rade. I English	for twelve years.
		a) learn	b) learnt	c) have learnt	d) am learning
	11		friends for a year. They	•	
		a) never have m	et	b) haven't met	
	10	c) have met	arminima di Alanda	d) haven't been r	net
	12		explained the lesson		k.
	40	a) when	b) as long as	c) for	d) since
3	13		e house for three hours	5. She looks very tired.	
		a) has been clea	illig	b) had been clear	ning
		c) has cleaned		d) was being clea	ined

1	14	My son the	thief running aw	vay a moment ago.	
25000		a) have seen	b) has seen	c) see	d) saw
	15	My family has lived	in Mansura	the day I was born on.	
0		a) for	b) when	c) while	d) since
	16	I can't go to bed no	w because I	my homework yet.	
*		a) haven't done		b) don't do	
		c) hasn't done		d) hadn't done	

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dear Mr. Reda,

I hope everything is OK with you. Yesterday, I had a night party with my friends, so I had to stay up very late. Let me tell you that the party was amazing. We had lots of fun there. The food was tasty and fresh; those people are excellent at hosting guests. However, I don't like fish at all; they should have asked me what to eat. Never mind! The video games were up-to-date and I beat them all. My friend's father loves sports, so we enjoyed playing table tennis and volleyball. But, let me tell you that all of them liked my outfit. They laughed out loud once they saw me with my fascinating orange shoes, red trousers and checkedcolourful shirt. Ahmed and Amgad threw tissues at me. I am always fashionable as you know. At the end of the day, we had many pictures which you can find in the attachments below. I couldn't find any transport, so I requested a ride. It cost only half the price of my sunglasses which costs 150 pounds. When I got home, I realised that I had forgotten my wallet at my friend's, but my mother solved the problem and the driver was understanding. Anyway, I'm writing to inform you that I will not show up today because I haven't done any task yet and I'm tired a little bit because of the dancing.

See you soon, my manager.

Best regards, Anas

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17	The writer thin	ks that his friends	destrongestive #	
••	a) didn't like h		b) liked his appe	earance
	c) made fun o	f his appearance	d) were ashame	d of his shoes
18	The underline	d word " <u>up-to-date</u> "	means	
	a) old	b) ancient	c) modern	d) fast

Unit 3 Al-Adwaa Test 165

21	what is the purpose of a) The writer wants to c) The writer is proud According to the pas	o tell a story.	h) The write		old-fashioned
	According to the pas	of his mum.	d) The write	er is showing	his abilities,
44		punctual the writer to g	c) careless go home?		hard-working 225 pounds.
	a) his tasks b) How could the writer a) He paid by a visa c b) He asked the drive c) His mother paid fo	in the attach his shoes pay for the ric ard. er to return to or him when he	nment. c) his photo le? his friend's hou	use.	nothing
25	Translate into Englis	h:			
26	Practising activities a	t school is ver	y important, so art in various a	teachers sho	ould
27	the following:			TY (150) wor	ds on
	Assess your progress	< 50% Studyagain	50 : 64% Practise more	65:84% Take more common	85:100% Well done!
	25	a) his tasks b) 24 How could the writer a) He paid by a visa of b) He asked the driver c) His mother paid for d) The driver didn't to 25 Translate into Englis ن النجاح. لكن عليك أن تتأكد أن B Practising activities a encourage their stude 27 Write an essay of abothe following: The advantages of live	a) his tasks b) his shoes 24 How could the writer pay for the ric a) He paid by a visa card. b) He asked the driver to return to c) His mother paid for him when he d) The driver didn't take money. 25 Translate into English: نا علاك حتى تحقق النجاح. لكن عليك أن تتأكد أن 26 Translate into Arabic: Practising activities at school is verencourage their students to take performed to the following: The advantages of living in a civilise Assess your progress Assess your some and shout one hund in the following: Assess your progress	a) his tasks b) his shoes c) his photo 4 How could the writer pay for the ride? a) He paid by a visa card. b) He asked the driver to return to his friend's how c) His mother paid for him when he reached hom d) The driver didn't take money. 25 Translate into English: نا عليك ان تتاكد أن الاستمتاع بعملك حتى تحقق النجاح. لكن عليك أن تتاكد أن encourage their students to take part in various a 27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIF the following: The advantages of living in a civilised city. Assess your progress < 50% 50:64%	a) his tasks b) his shoes c) his photos d) How could the writer pay for the ride? a) He paid by a visa card. b) He asked the driver to return to his friend's house. c) His mother paid for him when he reached home. d) The driver didn't take money. Translate into English: نأ على حياتك الشخصية. ثر على حياتك الشخصية. 26 Translate into Arabic: Practising activities at school is very important, so teachers sho encourage their students to take part in various activities. 27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) worthe following: The advantages of living in a civilised city.

Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

adjectives (n)	صفات	
association (n)	مؤسسة	
beginning (n)	بداية	
boyhood (n)	الصبا	
championship (n)	بطولة	
champion (n)	بطل	
change (v) – d	يتغير	
character (n)	شخصية	
club (n)	ا نادر	t
end (n)	نهاية	

	face (n) (v) – d	وجه/يولجه
	inspire (v) – d	يثلجم
	join (v) – ed	ينضم ل
	junior (adj)	ناشئ
	middle (n)	منتصف
	national team	فريق قومي
_	professional (adj) (n)	محترف
	surprise (n) (v) – d	مفاجأة/يفاجئ
	tournament (n)	مباراة/مسابقة

Vocabulary on Listening

colourful (adj)	ملون/زاهى الألوان
count (v) – ed	بعد
experience (n) (v) – d	تجربة/يجرب
feed (v)	ينطعم
flood (v) – ed	يفيض
lie (v)	يرقد

volunteer (n) (v) – ed	متطوع/يتطوع
tiring (adj)	متعب
snake (n)	ثعبان
pocket (n)	جيب
observe (v) – d	يرصد/يراقب
marine life (n)	الحياة البحرية

Revision 1 Units 1, 2 & 3

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

(be) married to	زوجت إلى	in the end	هي النهاية
an end to	نهاية لـ	lay eggs	بضيباا وض
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	learn about	ند ملعيّ
based on	قائم على	move from to	بنتقل من إلى
do puzzles	يحل الألغاز	play for	بعب لصالح
find out	يكتشف	return from	يعود من
get experience of	يحصل على خبرة في	swim off into the sea	يتحرك للسباحة في البحر
go for a holiday	يذهب في إجازة	the and of	
go wrong	لا يسير على ما يرام	the end of	نهایة (شیء)
	/		

Reading Text (1)

Raneem El Weleily

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous faces. She was world champion of the squash World Open in 2017, when she beat another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also twice reached the final in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash team when she was only ten. She became World Junior Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first competition as an adult in 2009. She is now married to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and do puzzles, but it is her success at squash that has inspired many young Egyptians to play the game.

Reading Text (2)

Mohamed Elneny

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer. He is a strong player, and he has played for the Egyptian national team more than 60 times. He has scored more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and moved from his boyhood club Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010. He played for Al-Mokawlon at the same time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to Switzerland and joined Basel, one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join Arsenal.

He is still good friends with Salah. 'I'm happy to have been with him since the beginning and he has not changed,' he says.

Reading Text (3)

Why write a long book when you can write a short story? A short story can have 200 words or less. The writer can't describe many people or places and so there aren't so many adjectives in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a middle and an end to the story. And the story needs to be interesting, so we include important information and an interesting main character, but perhaps only one. In fact, it can be interesting to write in the first person (I did this ...) and then the person telling the story is the main character.

Readers can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even their name, but something has to happen to them. This might be a surprise, a problem or something that goes wrong. Readers don't always find out what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to imagine the end of the story.

Listening Text



Presenter: Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

Adam

: Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday. Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists know that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are having. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas. It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them.

Then, at the end of the day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.

Lara

: My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea.

These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun

umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs!

The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned a lot more about conservation, too.

Munir

: I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants!



Workbook Exercises

C	hoose the correct	answer from a, b, c or d	l:	
1	Smart cards	everywhere nowaday:	S.	
	a) use	b) are used		d) uses
2	Most football play	ersa lot of mone	ey.	
	a) win	b) beat	c) earn	d) fill
3	Tourism is	when we protect tourist	ic places.	
		b) sustainable	c) unique	d) noisy
4	I my frien	d since September.		
	a) didn't see	b) hadn't seen	c) haven't seen	d) wasn't seen
5	Village people bu	ild their houses with loca	***************************************	
	a) tourists	b) environments	c) animals	d) materials
6	I passed the exam	n! I'm over the		
	a) moon		c) sky	d) earth
7		ng my lesson, my mother		
		b) preparing		d) prepares
8	When you visit th	e doctor, he or she often		
	a) pressure	b) levels	-/ -/	d) score
9		He always buys n		en ne visits me.
	a) sustainable	b) generous	c) spicy	d) unkind
10	The local people	benefit when lions		d) protects
	a) is protected	b) isn't protected	c) are protected	d) protects
11		food and clothes to	my local chanty.	d) donate
	a) sell	b) want	c) owe	
12	Mona was leaning	g out of the boat when sh	c) dropped	d) was dropping
	a) drops	b) is dropping		
13	We all Mo	hamed Salah because he	c) discourage	d) avoid
	a) hate	b) respect	•	
14		have lived in the same ho	c) for	d) ago
	a) when	b) since	•	u, ago
15		ot of money, so he was se	c) an organisation	d) home
	a) trek	b) prison		
16		v of these kinds of turtles	c) endangered	d) dangerous
	a) safe	b) isolated	-, chadingered	uarigerous

2	Complete the text with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets:
	Last year, we
(3)	Complete the sentences with the present perfect or present simple passive form of the verb in brackets:
	Tarek is still waiting for the bus because it
	5 The students in our school (encourage) to work in pairs for some activities
	The cattle (give) food by the farmers in the winter. Thousands of photographs (take) of the Pyramids every day.
	8 Egyptian children (teach) English from an early age.

anslate into Arabic:

- It's the first time I have ever done voluntary work.
- 2 The pharaohs made a great civilisation thousands of years ago.

Translate into English:

١- تطور مصر السياحة البيئية لكي تحمى البيئات المختلفة بساحل البحر الأحمر.

٢- أعطاني أبي هذا الكتاب في الأسبوع العاضي، ولكني لم أنته من قراءته حتى الآن.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Short Story

It was late and Sara wasn't expecting visitors. She sat alone in her room, with only her laptop and books for company. Her phone was off and she wasn't checking her email. There were too many people in her life with too many problems. And Sara was trying to write her first short story.

She imagined wild adventures in distant lands full of exciting people, but Sara knew that she had to keep it simple. As she looked at the empty screen, an idea began to build in her imagination. It was a simple idea and people would understand. She began to type. The words came easily, filling the screen. Then the lights went out and Sara sat in the dark. Now there was only one question: did she remember to save her work?

A) Ch	sara kept have 16	c:
7	Sara kept herself away from everythin	g because she wanted to
	a) have time to be with herself	b) think of a new idea for her story
	c) think of a solution to a problem she	e has
2	Why wasn't Sara checking her email?	
	a) Her laptop wasn't working.	b) She didn't have any friends.
	c) She didn't want to hear other peop	le's problems.
3	The closest meaning to "distant" is	
	a) busy	b) remote and far away
	c) not having a lot of people	,
4	What problem did the main character	have?
	a) She lost her story.	b) She forgot her story.
	c) There was no electricity.	
5	The antonym of the word "imagination	n" in the 2 nd paragraph is
	a) fantasy b) fascination	c) reality
B) A	nswer the following questions:	,
	What would you do if you were in Care	ole place?

- 6 What would you do if you were in Sara's place?
- 7 Is it important to have a good imagination? Why / Why not?
- 8 What do you think Sara will do next?

Write what you would say in the following situations:

- 1 A friend is bored. You know that he/she likes swimming. Suggest going to a pool.
- You want to do some voluntary work. Ask a friend for some suggestions for what you can do.
- 3 A friend asks you how you found a visit to museum. It was very interesting.

B Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

- 1 You bought me my theatre ticket yesterday, so I own you some money.
- 2 Mohamed Salah is a roll model to many young Egyptians.
- 3 It is easy to get friends when you start university.
- 4 We tricked into the White Desert but it was really exciting.
- 5 Salma was travelled around Europe when she lost her passport.
- 6 I have read that book two years ago.
- 7 Mona lived in this house since she was two.
- 8 The organisation is base in France.
- 9 Did your brother studies History at university?
- 10 The Earth go round the sun.

(150) Words on the two topics. Write about (150) words on the topic:

- Write a review of a book that you like. Include the title of the book, the main characters, a summary of the plot and who you would recommend the book to.
- 2 Describe a story that you want to read. What kind of story is it? Who is in the story and where does it happen?



Novel Exercises

Chapters (1-3) SB

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The people tried to	catch the thief, but he		
a) caught	b) escaped	c) arrested	d) managed
Be careful or you w	ill fall off the; it's	very steep.	
	b) hall	c) well	d) cliff
	o our great teachers.		
1		c) owe	d) borrow
Black Dog is	; he has lost his sight.		
a) deaf		c) dumb	d) crippled
			and protect
us.			
a) guard	b) attack	c) prevent	d) own
The thief had a lon	g curved on his c	heek, so we could re	ecognise him.
a) skate	b) sky	c) skin	d) scar
What a brave youn	g man! He was the only st	udent who	to say the truth
a) could	b) dared	c) refused	d) disagreed
Ais a grou	p of people who work aga	ainst the law.	
a) gang	b) crew	c) staff	d) team
Unfortunately, the	burglar the house	e.	
a) stole	b) took	c) owed	d) robbed
•	•		
			•
Ais a bird v	with brightly coloured fea	thers that can learn	to copy
human speech.			
a) chick	b) duck	c) parrot	d) pirate
The police usually l		a crime.	
a) clue	•	c) lock	d) case
There areir			
a) managers	. 3		d) servants
The question	oned the criminal to know	v the truth.	
a) gang	b) manager	c) magistrate	d) soldier
A: What is the	of the Hispaniola?		
a) situation	b) destination	c) position	d) condition
	a) caught Be careful or you wa) mountain We	a) caught b) escaped Be careful or you will fall off the; it's a) mountain b) hall We	We

16	Flint and his men are	:	ey attack ships a	and take money a	nd goods by force.
,	a) pirates	b) drivers	5	c) pilots	d) divers
17	Ais a large container made of wood			or metal.	
	a) tin	b) iar		c) barrel	d) cup
18	The thief m	y bag and	ran away.		
	a) lent	b) borroy	wed	c) grabbed	d) gave
19	The child seemed to	o be ill. He	was thin and	*************	
	a) fit	b) strong	3	c) pile	d) pale
20	Ais a weap			lade and a hand	e.
	a) gun	b) sword		c) bomb	d) pistol
Ma	atch the people or	things to	the descriptio	ns:	
1. R	edruth		a) the blind m	an	
2. L	ong John Silver	Ten viviana.	b) an importa	nt rich man	
3. P	Pew c) strong man with one leg, who is a good co			no is a good cook	
4.1	4. Mr Dance d) a servant to Mr Trelawney				
5. 1	5. Mr Trelawney e) the head of the police				
6. B	Black Dog		f) a good ship	to use for findin	g the treasure
7. F	Hispaniola		g) a man with	three fingers on	one hand
Ar	nswer these questi	ons:			
1	Why do you think	the Capta	in chose the Ad	dmiral Benbow a	s a place to stay?
2	Why do you think	Mr Trelaw	ney told everyo	one on the ship a	bout the treasure?
3	Do you think Jim	should tru	st Mr Trelawne	y? Why/Why not?	
4	Pew is blind and Flint is dead. What do you think happened on their last voyage?				
5	What is Silver's see	cret plan o	on the Hispanio	la?	
6	Why do you think	they chos	e Silver to be p	art of their crew	on the Hispaniola?

Wh	o is the speaker of each quotation? Who is the speaker talking to and
wh	V does the speaker say this?
1	"Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."
2	"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going,
3	"Are you worried there will be a mutiny?"
4	"You must be patient."
3 Rea	ad the quotation and answer the questions:
"[know Long John Silver is a good man, but I don't think Captain Smollett is."
1	Do you think Trelawney and Jim's first impression on Captain Smollett was right? Why?/Why not?
2	Agree or disagree with the quotation giving evidence to support your opinion
AD.	agine that you are Jim. Write a letter to your mother telling her about
wn	at has happened since you left England.
••••••	,
##0####	***************************************
,	



Al-Adwaa Test



Units 1, 2 & 3

0	Remen	nbering	G Applying (Analysing	ng Creating	
C	hoo	se the Two corr	ect answers	of the Five op	tions:	
	1	I've been so mi "miserable" are	serable since	my father's dea	ath. The synonyms	
		a) depressed	b) sad	c) lively	d) trustful	e) fatigued
	2	My wife arrang	ed the flower	s in a vase. The	antonyms of the v	vord "arrange"
1		areand	**************			
		a) disorder	b) adore	c) detest	d) loathe	e) disarrange
	Ch	oose the corre	ct answer fro	ma, b, c or d:		
	3	She is a/an example.	for many	women in bus	iness. They want to	o follow her
		a) sign	b) impo	rtance	c) role model	d) landmark
	4	Runners should	not run whi	le they are		
	·	a) ambitious	b) injure	ed	c) active	d) dead
	5	The food is			,	•
					c) flavourless	d) cool
	6				as diagnosed as ha	
					c) supported	
	7	Put some ice or	n your knee b	efore it	.up.	
),	1	a) treks	b) swells	5	c) leans	d) isolates
	8	The change in I	eadership wi	ll have a huge	on governr	ment policy.
		a) environment	b) coast		c) impact	
	9	Amal generally	speaks Arabi	c, but she	English now.	
		a) speaks	b) is spe	aking	c) spoke	d) speak
	10	When I arrived	at the house,	he I di	idn't want to wake	him up.
		a) slept	b) has sl	•	c) was sleeping	d) is sleeping
	11	I this old ca	ar for twenty	years now.		
		a) have had			b) have been havi	ing
		c) has had			d) am having	
	12	Suppose your fr	iends	. you to go with	them to London, v	would you accept?
		a) ask	b) asks		c) have asked	d) asked
	13	It is a very long	time	they invited us	to dinner.	
		a) for	b) just		c) when	d) since
-	14	He didn't answe	er my phone l	because he	on his work.	
		a) concentrated			b) was concentrat	
5		c) has concentra	ated		d) had concentrat	ted

15 Nobody of the crime; the old man committed suicide.

a) are accused b) accused c) accuses d) is accused

16 As soon as you in Giza, I'll be waiting with an amazing tour program.

a) arrived b) have arrived c) will arrive d) had arrived

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Overeating is inadvisable. Eating too much food is the surest way to an early grave. It's a myth that all fat people are happy. Being overweight is bad for health. It leads to heart diseases, high blood pressure, etc. Medical science has proved that animal fats, excessive sugar and carbohydrates are harmful. Fat people feel miserable because they lose grace. Therefore, fat people suffer psychologically arid physically. People diet for a number of very good reasons. The ideal human form is slim. Fat men and women are unattractive to look at. Ready-made clothes are hard to obtain for fat people. They tire easily and this is a sign of bad health. All famous footballers and sports champions are slim. For this reason, insurance companies charge fat people higher premiums. It is advisable for fat people to go on a diet to avoid spreading hips, protruding tummies and double chins. In this case, it is not wrong to wage war on fat. Health is wealth. But it should be taken into consideration that going on a diet does not mean starving yourself to death. Malnutrition has a very bad effect on health and sometimes it may give health a death-blow. Going on a diet should not be strict unless it is prescribed by a doctor. One last piece of advice is not to listen to the advertisements which say, «Wonderfood is a complete food, just dissolve a teaspoon of food in water. A complete food it may be.» Be natural, take only enough food. Don't eat too much. Be moderate and you can avoid fatness.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17 To appear graceful and beautiful, we
 - a) should eat excessive carbohydrates
 - b) should have spreading hips, tummies and double chins
 - c) should avoid overeating
 - d) should starve to death
- 18 Strict diet should be carried out when
 - a) we want to increase weight
 - a) we want to increase weight
 - c) it is inadvisable
- 19 Malnutrition is harmful because
 - a) fat people are always happy
 - c) it is harmless

- b) we swallow carbohydrates
- d) doctors recommend it
- b) it has a good effect on health
- d) it has a bad effect on health

20	"Health is wealth." This means			
	a) Overweight	-1 5	d)	myth
22	Medical science has proved that animal	fats and suc	ar are harmfi	il when they
	•	Tato arra sag	ar are namin	ar vincir ()
	a) neutral	b) too m	uch	
	c) dissolved in water	•	with carboh	vdrates
23	When people tire rabidly,			,
	a) they are healthy	b) they a	re lazv	
	c) this indicates bad health	d) this is	a sign of earl	v death
24	The main idea of the passage is		2 Jigil 01 Call	,
	a) keeping exercising makes a good pla	ver of you		
	b) footballers pay less money to insuran	ce compani	20	
	c) being fat is very harmful for your heal	th	-3	
	d) advertisements always tell lies about	health		
OF	Translate into English:	· · · carcir		
20	-			·
	ماعات أمام التلفاز حتى يحقق كل ما يحلم به في المستقبل.	وقته في الجلوس لد	ن يعمل بجد ولا يضيع	- يجب على كل طالب ار

		***********************	***************************************	***************************************
26	Translate into Arabic:			
	The Egyptian businessmen should inve	st their mone	ey in national	projects that
	serve the society and provide job oppo	rtunities for	youth.	
		******************************	P******************************	*************************
3			**************************	1999
27	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED	AND FIFTY (1	50) words on	the following:
21	A review of a poem you read.	1101111111	oo, words on	the following.
	A review of a poem you read.			
	***************************************			*************************
	***************************************		**************************************	**************************
	***************************************		*******************************	***********************
		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	***********************	***************************************
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
			************************	************************
	Assess your < 50%	50:64%	65:84%	85:100%
	progress Studyagain	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!
	AREAR Sungestion		A CANONIS	well done.
	1	(evision 1 Unit	179



Objectives

Reading : A magazine article about moving to a new town

Writing : An email to a magazine's problem page

Listening: A radio phone-in about bullying at school

Speaking: Having a debate

Language: Articles, countable/uncountable nouns

Life Skills : Respect for diversity; communication



Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

advice (n)

نصيحة

لوحة ملاحظات

connection (n)

صلة/علاقة

take something for granted

noticeboard (n)*

يعتبر أمرًا مفروغًا منه - مسلمـًا بـه

* Where can we see the noticeboard?

Vocabulary on Reading

article (n)	مقال	join (v) – ed	يلتحق بــ
conversation (n)	محادثة	magazine (n)	مجلة
cool (adj)	رائع	personal (adj)	شخصى
enjoy (v) – ed	يستمتع بــ	personnel (n)	قسم شئون العاملين
face (v) – d	يواجه	relax (v) – ed	يسترخى
favourite (adj)	مفضًّل	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
feel (v)	يشعر ب	stressful (adj)	مُجمِد
follow (v) – ed	يتبع	team sport (n)	رياضة جماعية
friendship (n)	صداقة	teammates (n)	أعضاء الفريق
grade (n)	مرتبة/تقدير	teenager (n)	شخص مراهق
individual sport (n)	رياضة فردية	wear (v)	يرتدى

Workbook Vocabulary

(be) allowed	مسموح له	practice (n)	بہادیہ
extra (adj)	إضافى	useful (adj)	.1.1
information (n)	معلومات	userer ()	مفنه

★ I feel like a monster when
I am hungry.

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

break-time	وقت الراحة/الفسحة	good to	عطوف على/بازًا بــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
busy + (v-ing)	مشغول بــ	go out with	يخرج مع
do practice	يتدرب	make friends	يكوأن صداقات
do team sports	يمارس رياضات جماعية	make it easier	يجعله أسهل
enjoy yourself	يقضى وقتنا ممتعنا	on my own	ېمفردى
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	part of a team	عضو في فريق
feel like*	يشعر وكأنه	pass an exam	يجتاز اختبارًا
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	spend time with	يقضى وقتئا مع
get easier	يصبح أسهل	instead of	بدلًا من
go online	يدخل على الإنترنت	move to	ينتقل إلى
ask for	يطلب	revise for	يراجع من أجل
connect with	يتصل بـ	stressed about	مضغوط بشان
connected to	مرتبطًا بـ	talk about	يتحدث عن
good at	جيد في		
good for	مفید اـ	talk to	يتحدث إلى

Derivatives

The state of the s	Derivati	ves	
Venb	Noun		Adjective
	teenager	مراهق	teenage خاص بفترة المراهقة
advise ينصح	advice adviser	نصيحة مستشار	advisable مستحسن/ مستحب استشاری/نصنحی advisory
یتصل connect [™]	connection connector	اتصال/ارتباط وصلة/موصل	مربوط/موصول connected
يتحاور/يناقش converse	conversation	محادثة/حوار	conversational تحاوری/عامی
grade یصنف/یقیم	grade	درجة/رتبة	graded مصنف/متدرج
grant يهب/يمنح	grant grantee grantor	منحة/عطاء مُعنطُى له مائح/واهب	granted ممنوح/متاح
personify يجسد/يشخص	person personification personality	شخص تجسيد/تشخيص الشخصية	personal شخصی personable جذاب/حسن المظهر
practise يتمرن	practice practitioner	تدریب صاحب مهنة	practising ممارس practised خبير
relax يستريح	relaxation	راحة/ارتياح	relaxed مستریح/مسترخ relaxing مریح
يضغط/يشدد على stress	stress	ضغط	مرهنق stressed مُجنهِد

^{★ -} The cable connects the device to the internet.

⁻ There is a connection between the two devices.

⁻ The two devices are connected.

(Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

300-	-
Word	Meaning

المرادف

المضاد Antonym

/	
connection	صلة/علاقة
cool	رائع
enjoy	يستمتع ب
face	يواجه
favourite	مفضل
follow	يتبع
join	يلتحق بـ/يربط
relax	يسترخى
start	يبدا

relation/contact
neat/fashionable
appreciate/savor/like
confront/encounter/ endure
preferred/favoured/ popular
pursue/chase
unite/attach
calm/rest
begin/initiate

separation/disco	nnection
4	انفصال/عدم اتصال
bad/uncool	نيس
detest/dislike	يشمئز/يكره
withdraw/avoid	بنجتيا بعسني
unpopular/dislik	red
	غير محبوب/مكروه
avoid/neglect	لمميابنجتي
detach/disconnect/disunite	
	يفصل
irritate/worry	يقلق/يتوتر
end/finish	ينهى

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 There is a clear between crime and poverty.
 - a) communication b) connection
- c) prediction
- d) line
- 2 Finally, she took myand gave up smoking.
 - a) advice
- b) advise
- c) advisable
- d) advises
- 3 It is important to the instructions of your doctors to be better.

- a) neglect
- b) ignore
- c) tell

d) follow

- 4 I read a/anabout global warming in the newspaper today.
 - a) title
- b) noticeboard
- c) article
- d) information

- 5 Holidays always give us a chance to a) relaxed
 - b) relax
- c) nerve
- d) relaxing



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

New in town

It's day one at a new school in a new town⁽¹⁾. You've got all the paper and pens you need. You're wearing cool new clothes. But you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school feels so hard⁽²⁾ because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel stressed⁽³⁾, but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you.



Don't take it for granted⁽⁴⁾ that other students will start a conversation⁽⁵⁾.

Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves. Try asking them about their favourite subjects or which sports they like and don't ask too many personal questions.

You can only make friends if you spend⁽⁷⁾ time with them! The best way to do this is to join clubs or do team sports⁽⁸⁾ you like. Go online or look at the noticeboard at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates⁽⁹⁾ will feel connected to you and that connection could become a friendship.

(1)	مدينة

(2)	صعب

(3)	مضغوط
(2)	

17	
(7)	بعصب
10	

يمارس رياضة جماعية (8)

While you're busy talking to other students, don't forget to study. Remember to do your homework so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

What three things does the writer say you should do to make friends and feel happy at a new school?

Reading Text (2)

What kind of problems do you think a student might face at school?







: problems@teen-magazine.com

Subject: Help! I don't have any friends at my new

school!

Dear Aunt Carol,

I think it is difficult⁽¹⁾ to make friends.

I don't have any friends at my new school. I am always on my own⁽²⁾ at break-time⁽³⁾. Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework with me but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?

صعب (1)

وحدی/یمفردی (2)

فترة استراحة (3)

What do you think is the answer for this problem?

Who do you resort to for advice if you have a problem?







: problems@teen-magazine.com To

Subject: Help! I'm really stressed!

Dear Aunt Carol,

I always work very hard(1) at school, but I'm really stressed about some exams I have next week.

The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very difficult. The last(2) exam is in a subject I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library(3) this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better(4).

I need some advice about how to relax(5), please.



باجتهاد (1)

الأخير (2)

مكتبة (3)

يسترخي (5)

Suggest two ways you use to relax.

Vocabulary in Use





advice an opinion someone gives to help you

connection , something that brings people together

noticeboard

صلة/علاقة

a thing on a wall that people put information on

لوحة الاعلانات

 take something for granted to think something is true or will stay the same

Notes on Vocabulary

look at ينظر إلى	The men all turned to look at her as she entered the room.
look for = search for يبحث عن	She looked for a new flat to buy last month.
look up يبحث عن كلمة في قاموس أو معلومة في مرجع	Look the word up in your dictionary if you don't know its meaning.
الى look forward to	My mother says she's looking forward to meeting you.
look like يشبه	What did the man look like?
احترس look out = watch out	Look out! There's a car coming.
look after = take care of یعتنی بـ	Don't worry, I'll look after the kids tomorrow.

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2 187

wear	> 1	We wear light clothes in summer.
كاملًا على الشخص)	يرتدى (شكل الملابس	
put on	× ·	Put on your shoes. We are late for school.
dress		I got up early, dressed and went to school.
dress + مفعول ع اللبس بنفسه	 * يُلبس شخصنًا لا يستطي	My wife dressed our daughter, Noha.
(be) dressed	d in = wear پرتدی	She is dressed in a white jacket. = She is wearing a white jacket.
life	الحياة بوجه عام	There is no life on the moon.
3 a life	وصف الحياة	We hope to live a better life.
the life	فترة حياة شخص	* The life of blind people is difficult.
paper (und	ountable noun) ورق (مادة خام)	Dictionaries are usually printed on thin paper.
papers (n)	جرائد/وثائق/أوراق رسمية	I like to sit in bed and read the Friday papers. The border guards stopped me and asked to see my papers.
a paper	صحيفة	My father likes to read a paper every day.
connected	i to	
اشرة بشيء آخر	متصل بــ (شــىء يتصل مب مادى)	The printer is connected to the computer.
connected	d with	Doctors believe that a lot of diseases are
<u>(</u> 5	مرتبط بـ/له علاقة بـ (معنو	connected with pollution level.
contact	تصل ب <i>ـ ا</i> يتواصل مع	Is there a phone number where I can contact yo
contact	واصل/اتصال هنا تأخذ حرف الجر with	We need a contact with the outside world

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

But you don't know anyone and you are not sure where to go.

لاحظ هنا أن where رابط يأتى بعده .to + inf. يمكن أن نستخدم أدوات الاستفهام كرابط how - when - where - why ويأتى بعدها .to + inf.

Starting at a new school feels so hard.

يستخدم (gerund (verb + ing) كفاعل ويعامل معاملة المفرد.

I need some advice about how to make friends.

لاحظ هنا ان كلمة advice لا تجمع فلا يجوز استخدام advices.

It's very easy to feel stressed.

يتبع الفعل feel صفة.

Everyone likes talking about themselves.

عندما تأتي everyone في بداية الجملة يعود عليها ضمير الجمع وكذلك everybody.

The best way to do this is to join clubs or do team sports you like.

يستخدم الفعل do مع كلمة sports وتساوى في المعنى كلمة play.

Suffixes (-tion/-ion)

- تصاغ بعض الأسماء من الأفعال بإضافة اللاحقة (tion-) أو (ion-) مع حذف حرف (e) إذا انتهت به الكلمة.

Verb		Noun	Service Services	Verb		Noun	
connect	يتصل	connection	اتصال	pollute	يلو'ث	pollution	تلوث
communicate	يتواصل 9	communicati	on تواصل	pronounce	ينطق	pronunciatio	نطق N
inform	يخبر	information	معلومات	produce	ينتج	production	إنتاج

Think of other examples!

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2 189

Check Point 2

c) her

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

d) them

1 Yesterday, I had to stay home to lookmy sick aunt. b) after a) for d) forward to c) up 2 It is very kind of you tothe little baby while I am washing the dishes. b) wear a) dress c) put on d) press 3 Mr Saeed is a manager in one of the biggest companies. b) personality a) personal d) person c) personnel 4)is full of ups and downs. a) The life b) A life c) Living d) Life 5 I want everybody to open books on page 50. a) his b) their

Check the answers at the end of the book





Vocabulary Exercises

0		emembering Understanding Applying Analysing	Evaluating Creating	
ı	Ch	thoose the correct answer from a, b, c or o	evaluating Creating	
	CK	Key Vocabulary Booding L.	1.	
	C	Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Wor	kbook Vocabulary	
	1	1 The teaching profession is very	but it's the most in	nortant.
		b) bleased	r) strassad	d) stressful
	2	2 Talways benefit from my teacher's advi	ce as it is really	
		a) useless b) narmful	c) useful	d) deadly
	3	3 I hate using social media. They make m	e	أسوان الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢
		 a) happy b) stressed 	c) praised	d) dressed
	4	4 It is taken for that bullying is a k	oad behaviour which	we all must change.
				يوسف كحك الثانوية – الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
		a) denial b) granted	c) refusal	d) decided
	5	5 No one issmoke here. It is forb	oidden.	
		a) allowed to	c) forbidden	d) allowing
	6	6 The that we have made at scho	ool often last forever.	
		a) communications	b) accusations	
		c) suspects		
	7	7 In most of the world's countries, it is o	for yoleباری bligatory	uth to the
).		army after finishing school.		
		a) leave b) enter	c) join	d) go
	8	re get service regar actives, you can active		
		a) to do b) what do	•	
	9	in account into any one or minimum time.		
		a) contact b) connect		
	10	To be healthy, everyone should be able		
		a) cold b) nervous	c) cool	d) angry
	11	11 This restaurant is a great of mir		
		-/ 0/36/06660	c) favour	d) personal
	12	2 I saw Mona and Safaa sitting in the corn	er deep in	D.
		a) articles b) advice		d) conversation
	13	3 When installing a washing machine, it is im	portant to the ir	
		a) allow b) flow	c) follow	d) borrow
	14	4 Very few students passed the final exams	with a A" as the	ey were so difficult.
	45	a) grade b) degree	lt cuite the	qualification
	10	5 The music of today is very popular with	It suits the	r language style.
		a) teenage b) teens	c) teen aging	d) teenagers

16	It has become quite difficult to dea	al withchildren.	
	- \ toons	-,	M (GHD2V
47	a) teenage b) teens The final match of the Egyptian tea	am went into tir	ne.
11		c) missed	d) passing
	a) extra b) lost	•	V into
18	8 I am eager to put what I have learn	c) grade	y iiito
	a) practise b) mind		d) practice
1	9 Football is a team sport, but swim	ming is a/anspc	ort.
	a) along h) group	C) Illulviduai	u) pair
2	20your shoes quickly and h	urry to catch your train to	Cairo.
	a) Dress up b) Take off	c) Put on	d) Wear down
(Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, De	rivatives, Synonyms & Anto	onyms
ľ	21 It is very healthy tosport	c) go	d) win
	a) takeb) do22 I like students who depend on th	. 3	
		c) on their owe	d) on their own
	a) lonely b) by them		of their own
	23 My daughter is always busy		d) studied
	a) studying b) to study		
	24 I took my family on a journey to I	b) enjoyed thems	alves
0.	a) enjoyed them	d) amused them	CIVES
	c) pleased them 25 To be fit, it's recommended to	-	fat
		c) practitioner	
	a) practiseb) practiceMarwan always finds it easy to	-	
	a) give b) take	c) do	d) make
	Choose the Two correct answers	•	- Trance
	27 He must be happy because he h		
		b) succeeded	c) failed
	a) passedd) succeeded in	e) managed	C) falled
	28 My son managed to do all his w		ad him
	a) lonely	b) of his own	c) on his own
	d) only	e) alone	C) OH HIS COM
	29 The president faces the difficul		omy back on its feet.
	The synonyms of the word "face	e" areand	only back over
		c) withdraw d) irritate	
	30 They followed the plan that the		The antonyms of the
	word "followed" arean	d	
	a) pursued b) chased	c) neglected d) succe	eded e) ignored



Lessons 1 & 2



Language

Indefinite articles (a/an)

أدوات النكرة

What Is The Difference Between A & An?



- تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن.

a boy/ a house/ a friend/ a table/ a problem/ a car



- تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد في الكلمات التي تبدأ بحروف تنطق كأنه (u) مثل حروف (e-eu-ew). a unit / a university / a uniform / a union / a European citizen / a useful tip / نعحة a ewe

- تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد في الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف (٥) وينطق كانه (W). a one-way street / a one-pound coin



- تستخدم an قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

an apple / an orange / an egg / an elephant / an eagle



- تستخدم an قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف ساكن غير منطوق ويليه صوت متحرك.

an hour / an honest man

A/An

لى قبل الاسم النكرة الذي يذكر في الجملة لأول مرة.

When I was in the shop, I saw a boy with his two sisters.

٢) قبل الوظائف والمهن والحرف.

My father is a carpenter.

She is an engineer.

سى قبل تعبيرات الكمية والأرقام مثل:

- a pair زوج - a couple - وج - a hundred - مائة - a third - a third - في - a quarter - وج - a fifth دربع - a dozen - خُمس - a dozen - خُمس

My son bought a dozen of pens. (This means that my son bought 12 pens.)

ع) قبل اسم مفرد عند تعريف الكلمات.

A teacher is someone whose job is to teach others, especially in a school.

An egg is a round object with a hard surface, that contains a baby bird, snake, insect etc.

ه) مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والسعر وعدد المرات بمعنى (في: per)

100 pounds a kilo. (This means that 100 pounds per kilo.)

90 kilometres an hour.

Two times a day.

٦) قبل الصفة إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد.

اسم مفرد + الصفة + (a/an)

My father bought a new book.

أما إذا كان الاسم الموصوف اسمـًا لا يعد أو جمعـًا لا نستخدم (a/an)

My father bought new books.

٧) قبل الجنسيات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد.

I met an American friend.

أما إذا لم يأت بعدها اسم فلا نستخدم (a/an).

My friend is American.

ما إذا جاءت في صيغة الجمع وقبلها (the) فتعنى الشعب.

The Egyptians are very kind people.

The Chinese are accurate and hard workers.

٨) مع الاختصارات التي تنطق كحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف.

I sent an SMS to my friend yesterday.

I downloaded an MP3 song online last week.

Dad has a DVD, so he always buys CDs.

2) The definite article (the)

The

تستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية،

at a sum	يا واحد فقطر).	١ ﴾ قبل الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها (الموجود منه
, the sun	the sky	▶ the earth
the universe	the North Pole	
		٢) قبل الاسم الذي تم ذكره للمرة الثانية.
I read a book. The book w	as really interesting.	
		٢) قبل صفات الدرجة الثالثة (صيغة التفضيل).
Ali is the tallest boy at his		
m) أو (s') للملكية لا نستخدم قبلها (the).	ny – his – her – its – our – t	أما في حالة وجود صفات الملكية (heir – your
Nora is my best friend at s	chool.	
Ali is my father's oldest ur	ncle.	
		٤ ﴾ قبل أسماء أو اختصارات البلاد التي تحتوي علم
يمهورية : Republic	Kingdon / اتحاد : Union / ج	/ ولاية : State / مملكة : n
F	ederation : اتحاد / Emirate	
The Arab Republic of Egy _l		
The Kingdom of Saudi Ara	abia = The K.S.A.	
The United States of Ame	rica = The U.S.A.	
		أو قبل أسماء الدول الجمع مثل:
هولندا The Netherlands	The Philippin	es المُلبين
	ىثل:	أما أسماء الدول الباقية فلا يأتي قبلها (the) ه
Egypt France G	ermany Sudan	England
ال الجمع والكتب المقدســة والصحاري	ت ومجموعات البحيرات وسلاســل الجب	ه ﴾ قبل أسـماء الأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والقنوا
		ومجموعة الجزر الجمع والصحف
the River Nile	the Red Sea	the Pacific Ocean
the Suez Canal	the Great Lakes	• the Alps
the Quran	the Sahara	the Caribbean Islands
▶ the Times		
		أما إذا جاء الجبل مفردًا أو جاءت البحيرة مفردة أو ا
جبل كلمنجارو Kilimanjaro	• Lake I	Nasser بحيرة ناصر
جزيرة سيشُل Sicily ト		
(play - listen to - l	earn - teach - study - pra	٦) قبل الآلات الموسيقية إذا جاء قبلها : (actise
I like listening to the pian	o with my family.	
Hany enjoys playing the	guitar every day.	
		Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2 195

٧) قبل الاختراعات والاكتشافات.

inte les

marrie

饱用

The mobile is one of the most important inventions.

ما إذا جاء اسم الاختراع جمع فلا يأتي قبله أداة.

Mobiles become necessary in our lives.

أما إذا قصدنا من الاختراع الجهاز وليس الاختراع بشكل عام يسبق بـ(a/an).

My father bought a mobile yesterday.

🔥 قبل فصائل الحيوانات أو الطيور.

The lion is very strong.

أما إذا جاء اسم الحيوان أو الطائر جمعًا فلا نضع أداة.

Lions are very strong animals.

أما إذا قصدنا عددًا واحدًا من فصيلة الحيوان أو الطائر يسبق بــ(a/an).

I saw a lion at the zoo yesterday.

و) قبل الصفة للإشارة إلى الجمع.

/ الفقراء the poor = poor people / الأغنياء / the poor = poor people the disabled = disabled people المعاقون

We collected a lot of money to help the poor.

، ١) قبل أجزاء الزمن واليوم.

the future/ the past/ in the morning/ in the afternoon

١١) مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والمناخ.

the government/ the police/ the United Nations/ the climate/ the weather/ the press/ the army/ the police/ the environment

١٢) قبل بعض الكلمات التي تفيد الترتيب ... مثل:

first/ second/ third/ only/ last

- Mohammed was the last one to arrive.
- It is the only chance for you.

١٣٠) قبل صفة المقارنة بمعنى (كلما ، كلما)

the + iمعل + dمعل + dم

- The more you eat, the fatter you become.
- The faster you run, the earlier you arrive.

٤ ١) عندما نقصد شخصًا واحدًا لا يوجد غيره.

the President of Egypt/ the King of Denmark/ the Queen of England

٥ /) مع بعض الأماكن (عادة أماكن التسلية والترفيه والخدمات) ... مثل:

the cinema/ the theatre/ the club/ the library/ the shop/ the post office

٦١) للإشارة إلى فترات زمنية وخاصة عقد من الزمان (فترة ١٠ أعوام) أو قرن (فترة ١٠٠ عام) the twenties التسعينيات/ the sixties الستينيات/ the nineties

- I like reading for the great novelists of the 1900s.
- My mother hated the fashions of the 1960s.

٧ ١) قبل اسم العائلة الجمع للإشارة إلى كل أفراد العائلة.

The Johnsons have lived in this house for many years.

١٨) قبل أجزاء جسم الإنسان،

- Moahmed Salah was wounded in the knee.
- How's the hand? Is it still hurting?

١٩) قبل ذكر التواريخ.

I married on the 3rd of November, 1990.

. ٢) قبل بعد أسماء الأمراض ... مثل:

الطاعون الدبلي the measles /النكاف the mumps /النكاف the flu /الحصبة

If one of the children got the measles, we all got the measles.

لاحظ أن هناك بعض الأمراض لا يأتي قبلها أداة ... مثل:

AIDS/ cancer/ malaria

There are several medications that can be used to treat malaria.

٢١) قبل الأسماء (التي تشير إلى أحداث أو تغييرات) إذا جاء بعدها Of.

- The **growth** of the steel industry is very big in our country.
- The arrival of our guests was very late.

٢٢) للتخصيص.

- The man who stole my money, was my neighbour.
- My brother lives in the big villa with a black door.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- Sam, where is chair which I asked you about?

b) an

a) a

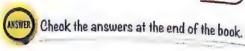
d) no article

c) the

الإجابة هي (c) لأن الاسم chair تم الحديث عنه من قبل ويذكر للمرة الثانية.

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2 197

Check Point (3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 The boy who sawthief went fast to warn his neighbours. a) a d) his c) the b) an 2 No problem! I'll buy younew one you saw online. a) a d) some c) the b) an 3 We dream of climbing Alps one day. a) an d) many **b**) a c) the 4) What do you know about? a) an ant b) ants d) ant c) the ants 5 Don't move! There issnake near you! a) the b) some d) any c) a



لا نستخدم أدوات نكرة أو معرفة في هذه الحالات؛

No article

١ ﴾ عند التحدث عن الجمع بوجه عام دون تخصيص.

- Children are sometimes noisy.
- Vitamins are very important for our bodies.
- Men should be patient and hard working.

أما في حالة التخصيص فنستخدم (the):

The children in our street are sometimes noisy.

٢) مع الوجبات بوجه عام دون تخصيص.

breakfast/lunch/dinner/supper

I usually have breakfast at 7 o'clock.

أما في حالة التخصيص فنستخدم (the):

The breakfast at this restaurant is very expensive.

٣) مع الأسماء المعنوبة بوجه عام.

advice/ freedom/ love/ sadness/ happiness/ beauty/ education/ success

- All countries try to develop education.
- The education in Egypt is in great progress.

٤) مع الألقاب المتبوعة باسم علم.

King Lear/ Professor Zewail/ President Nasser/ Doctor Magdy Yacoub

ه) مع كلمة home بعد أفعال (go – come – return).

Mona returned home early last night.

لاحظ الجمل التالية:

- There's a home for the elderly at the end of our street.
- Ahmed moved out of the family home a year ago.

مع كلمة WOrk إذا جاءت بمعنى مكان العمل.

I usually go to work in my car.

لاحظ الجملة التالية:

وهنا يقصد طبيعة العمل وليس مكان العمل) .The work here is very tiring

√ ﴾ قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد والكميات ومنها.

- oil/ water/ milk/ money/ meat/ juice, etc.: أسماء الطعام والشراب
- المواد الدراسية :English/ Arabic/ science/ history/ physics
- المواد الخام :glass/ wood/ gold/ silver/ paper
- الألعاب الرياضية :football/ tennis/ basketball/ volleyball/ swimming

٨) مع أسماء القارات.

Africa/ Europe/ Asia/ South America

٩ ﴾ مع أسماء المدن والقرى.

Alexandria/ London/ New York

, ﴿) مع أسماء اللغات.

English/ French/ Turkish/ Chinese

أما إذا جاء بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the):

the English language / the Turkish language

١ /) مع كلمة space إذا جاءت بمعنى الفضاء.

I like reading about the history of space travel.

أما إذا كان المقصود مكانـًا فارغًا فنستخدم قبلها the:

The space between the house and the garage is very big.

٢) مع كلمة television إذا كنا نقصد المعروض في التليفزيون.

Can you tell me what is on TV tonight?

أما إذا كنا نقصد جهاز التلفزيون فنستخدم the:

• A: Can you tell me what is on the TV?

B: I think it's a vase.

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2 199

مع الأماكن الآتية إذا كان الذهاب إليها أو استخدامها للغرض الذي أنشلت من أجله.

school/bed/hospital/prison/court/church/mosque/college

- I go to school to learn. (I am a student.)
- He made an accident and was taken to hospital. (He was a patient.)
- He committed a crime and was sent to prison. (He was a prisoner.)
- I went to bed early. (I went to sleep.)

أما إذا كان الذهاب إليها لغرض آخر ... فنستخدم (the):

- I went to the school to meet the headmaster. (I was a visitor.)
- He went to the prison to visit his friend. (He was a visitor.)
- My sister is standing by the bed. (The word "bed" here means a piece of furniture.)

Check Point (4) Choose	the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Hytham is university stu	
a) a c) the	b) an
2 During the eclipse, you must ne	
c) an	b) thed) No article
3 Egypt is a pioneering coa) The	ountry in Africa and the Middle East. b) A
c) An 4 I think Omar Khairat is	d) No article
4 I think Omar Khairat isb	est musician in Egypt. b) an
c) the Dad goes towork at 7, se	d) no article o he doesn't havebreakfast with us.
a) no article/thec) no article/no article	b) no article/a d) the/a
	-/ G16/a





a) a

Language Exercises

Remem	bering Understanding a	Applying Analysing Evaluati	ng Creating	
hoo	se the correct answer	from a, b, c or d:		
1	Although Mai's fathe	er is engineer, s	he doesn't like mat	hs.
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
2	I bought a good bas	ket made ofpl	astic.	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
3	I know that	everest is the highest n	nountain in the wor	ld.
		•		عدرسة الفتح - البلدور - المبوفية٢٠
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
4	Ali never tells lies. He	e ishonest boy	<i>'</i> .	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
5	My family members	are interested in visitir	ngUnited K	ingdom.
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
6	Nagwa likes playing	violin before s	leeping.	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
7	Everyone should sle	ep at least 7 hours	day to be fit.	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
8	I work in Eur			إدارة القباطر - القليونية ٢٠٢٣
P	a) an		c) some	d) a
9	Nothing in our life is	more important than		
0	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
10	is a difficult,	but an interesting sub	ject.	1) 01
	a) A physics	b) An physics	c) The physics	d) Physics
11	We all know that	brain can't be tra	nsplanted.	Dan and da
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
12	It is first time	e that we have seen th	e temples of Luxor.	d) was anti-da
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
13	The charity is trying	to collect money for	disabled.	al) manantiala
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
14	There are millions of	stars inspace		al) ma autiala
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
15	My father went to	school as the he	admaster wanted t	o meet nim
	because of my troub		a) the	al) was must all a
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article

46	school we	aring a uniform	d) no article
10	Hatem always goes toschool we	c) the	T) II O TI EICIG
N. J.	a) a b) an		
17	made the world a smaller place.	b) The plane has	5
	a) The planes have	d) This plane ha	S
	c) Some planes have	v called, Ali.	رارة المقطم والخليفة - القاهرة٢٠٢٢
18	They are talking to	o) no article	d) any
	a) an b) a	al relayed.	
19	I often like to listen tomusic to fe	c) the	d) no article
	a) a b) an	nightmare, he	e was kidnapped by
20	a) a b) an My son had a nightmare yesterday. In		11-4-09
o quantum lip	a gang.		d) no article
	a) a b) an	c) the	
21	a) a b) an one-way road is needed to be co	nstructed on the w	ادارة وسط، الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
			d) No article
F.	a) A b) An	c) The	u) No article
22	I went shopping and boughtcom	nputer for my son.	d) no auticle
	a) a b) an	c) the	d) no article
23	I have just received SMS from my	best friend.	مدرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢
0.	a) a b) an	c) some	d) no article
24	are necessary for all kinds of jobs	all over the world.	
	a) A computers b) An computers	c) The computer	s d) Computers
25	Carpenters useglass andglass and	, wood to make win	idows.
	a) the/no article	b) a/no article	
	c) an/no article	d) no article/no	article
26	Great Lakes are in North	America.	
i i	a) The/no article	b) A/no article	
	c) An/no article	d) No article/no	article
27	The journey to Cairo by train take	eshour.	
	a) the/an b) a/no article		d) no article/an
28	My father speaks Italian well. This means	that he speaks	well.
	a) an Italian language	b) the Italian lan	guage
	c) Italian language	d) an Italian	
29	All giraffes are long-necked animals. This	means that	10 g
	a) the giraffes have long necks	b) the giraffes ha	ve a long neck
3	c) the giraffe has a long neck	d) the giraffee ar	a lang mades
30	We should do our best to help people wh	io are deaf. This me	ans that
The state of the s	a) we should do our pest to neip all peop	le	
	b) we should do our best to help the dear	f who need people	
7	c) we should do our best to help the deaf	who need urgent I	neln only
2. -4	d) we should do our best to help the deat	f	icip offiy

Test Yourself Co





Unit 4

essons 1 & 2

				Toke.	
Re	memb	ering Understanding	Applying Analysing	Evaluating Creating	
) Ch	oose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c	or d:	
	1	i read a wonderful	book about	of Gamal Abdel	Nasser.
		a) a life	b) the life	c) life	d) living
	2	My positio	n when I play footh	oall is a goalkeepe	ſ.
		a) favourite	b) cool	c) stressed	d) distant
	3	I had no close	with other boy	s at school, so I fee	l lonely.
		a) articles	b) conversations	c) advice	d) friendships
	4	I don't use a comp	uter for writing. I w	rite with a pencil a	ınd
		a) papers	b) the paper	c) a paper	d) paper
	5	Please, do not hes	itate to me	if you want anythi	ing.
		a) communicate	b) connect	c) collect	d) contact
	6	Click here to	to the internet a	nd send the email	
		a) go	b) attach	c) join	d) connect
	7	He will know if he	has passed or faile	d his exams as the	exam results are
3		on the			
D.	4	a) connection	b) conversation		d) noticeboard
	8	Kamal finished hig	gh school, then he .		to achieve his dream.
		a) detached	b) confronted	c) joined	d) contacted
	9	My son, Mohamm	ed, plays v	iolin very well.	
		a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
	10	The man who stol	e the car was taker		
		a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
	11	There were over	thousand po		of the new singer.
		a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
	12	When someone h	ad broken into my	house, I called	police.
		a) a	b) an		d) no article
	13	The Egyptian gov	ernment tries to giv	ve due care to	education.
		ala	b) an	c) the	d) no article
	14	To get the job, you	u needexp	erience with the c	omputer.

c) the

b) an

a) a

d) no article

15	I am going to spend	week in Alexandria with my friends.
The state of the s	a) a	b) an
0	c) the	d) no article
16	I'mteacher of E	nglish and I often listen to radio programmes in
	English.	
	a) the/no article	b) a/no article
	c) a/the	d) no article/no article
2 R	lead the following passa	ge, then answer the questions:

Mount Kilimanjaro is the highest mountain in Africa. Marcus was one of a group of climbers who decided to climb it to raise money for charity. This is his account of the final part of the climb. I wake up after two hours of fitful sleep. Everyone looks frightened. The effect of altitude has made everyone look tired. It is playing tricks on my mind. People around me are just standing still as they try to get their breath. I try to encourage them to keep walking. When I check my watch I see, with surprise, that I have been walking for three hours already. I feel as if I am fighting every step of the way. All I want to do is to turn round and go down, but I must reach the top! I begin to wonder if I am strong enough. I begin to see spots in front of my eyes. My breathing is very rapid.

Someone tells me we have another hour and a half to go. I have to concentrate really hard because one slip could be fatal. I gasp for breath. Someone at the top is telling me to make one last effort. I scramble up the last few metres and suddenly I realise I've done it! I'm there! I'm at the top of Africa!

Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d.

	the state of the s	or a:
1	What is the best title for this passag a) Deadly climb. c) Gilman's Peak.	b) Kilimanjaro.
0	The state of the s	d) A challenging climb
2	According to the passage, the word	"raise" means "
	a) admit	b) collect
	c) respect	d) reject
3	Why was Marcus' breathing rapid?	-/ reject
	a) Since there was lack of oxygen.	
	b) As he wasn't as fit as before.	
	c) As he had a phobia of heights.	
	d) Because he was in a horrifying p	lace

	4	Which of the following is/a	are possible causes for the group's exhaustion?
		a) Lack of oxygen.	b) The climb.
		c) The high altitude.	d) a, b & c.
	. 5	"I feel as if I am fighting ev	ery step of the way." It can be inferred from this
		sentence that the writer w	as very
		a) thirsty	b) upset
		c) confused	d) exhausted
	6	The altitude has a/an	effect on Marcus and his group.
2		a) encouraging	b) negative
9		c) positive	d) innovative
	7	Marcus is	wy milovative
		a) well-determined	b) a brave climber
		c) generous	d) all of these
	8	The moral of this story is t	
	•	a) determination is the ke	
		b) don't climb dangerous	
		c) climbing mountains is	
	- • -	d) generosity is necessary	y to succeed
(3)	A) ⁻	Translate into Arabic:	of the state of th
1			the internet to make new friends and spend hours
		chatting ⁽¹⁾ with them.	

			te(2) much to the development of our children's
		minds(3) and awareness(4)	9.
L		***************************************	

30)		3. No doubt(5) that friends a	are either good or bad. Some of them are worthy ⁽⁶⁾ of
ı		respect while others are	hateful ⁽⁷⁾ ones.
R		***************************************	
¥.		***************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
٧,	B)	Translate into English:	
4		ن القمامة والمخلفات (١٠٠) في شوارعنا.	١ - يجب أن نتعاون جميعـًا مع وزارة (١٨ البيئة للتخلص(١٠) من الكميات الهائلة م
		***************************************	***************************************

1	ب لقد أصبحت الكمرباء جزءًا أساسينًا في حياتنا فالإنسان لا يستطيع أن يحيا بدونها ^س فهي الحرارة والطاقة.
(O)	جـ من الواضح أن الجرائم قد زادت بمعدل (٢٠٠) كبير هذه الأيام فلا يكاد يمر يوم دون أن نسمع عن جريمة في التلفزيون أو الإنترنت.
(1.7	How to translate
	۱- لقد + ماض بدون ذكر وقت محدد تترجم مضارعـًا تامـًا .have – has + P.P. لقد حققت الكثير من الإنجازات I have made a lot of achievements. ۲- لقد + ماضٍ مع ذكر وقت محدد في الماضى تترجم (ماضيـًا بسيطـًا).
1	لقد حققت الكثير من الإنجارات العام الماضى made a lot of achievements last year ا. ٣- حرف الـ (ف) في مثل: (فالإنسان لا يستطيع أن يحيا) يتم ترجمته على أنه سبب as – because.
	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following: 1. Ways of making new friends. 2. The experience of your first day at the new school.
80	
	I used more than 4 new vocabulary. I used the right structure. I used a topic sentence. I wrote the conclusion. I used the right punctuation.
हिंदू	(1) کریه (7) لا شك (5) عقول (3) و دردشة (1) دردشة (1) عقول (3) و عن (4) یساهم (2) یساهم (2) یساهم (2) عقول (4) یساهم (2) عقول (5) دردشة (1) عقول (5) عقول (5) دردشة (1) عقول (5) عقول



Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

bullying (n) تنمر/بلطجة

bully (v) (n) يتنمر/متنمر/بلطجى

cheat (v) – ed*

nursing (n)

phone-in (n)

برنامج اناعی أو تلفزیونی (ینسمج فیه بتلقی الاتصالات)

police officer (n)

 You're not supposed to cheat during the exam.

Vocabulary on Reading

behave (v) – d	يتصرف	host (n)	مضيف
continue (v) – d	يستمر	list (n)	قائمة
copying (n)	نسخ	lonely (adj)	وحيدا
debate (n)	مناظرة	nasty (adj)	مؤذراردي، الطبع
effect (n)	تاثير	negative (adj)	سلبى
fight (v)	يتشاجر/يتعارك	radio show (n)	برنامج إذاعي
hard (adj)	صعب/قاس ٍ	rucksack (n)	حقيبة الظهر
hate (v) (n) – d	يكره/الكره	scared (adj)	خائف/مذعور
hide (v)	يخفى	terrible (adj)	m.15.3
hostess (n)	مضيفة	terrible (adj)	فظيع

Workbook Vocabulary

exciting (adj)	مثير	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
laugh (v) – ed	يضدك	soon (adv)	سريعنا/حالأ

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4 207

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

	The difference
a 15-year-old boy	ولد عمره ۱۰ عامـًا
as far as I'm concern	على قدر اهتمامى ned
get along well with	يتناغم بشكل جيد مع
get good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة
make clear	يوضح
on social media	على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
add to	يضيف إلى
angry with	غاضب من (شخص)
effect on	تاثیر علی
I'm well	أنا على ما يرام

(be) on the line	على الخط (خط التليفون)
start conversations wit	
take a photo of	يلتقط صورة ا
take time to	يستغرق وقتنا لكى
take turns to	يتبادل الأدوار
laugh at	يسفرمن
list in	يدرج في قائمة
nice to	لطيف مع
point at	يشير إلى
sure about	متأكد من

Derivatives

John Miles 1 Miles				
Verb	Noun		Adjective	
affect يؤثر على	effect effectiveness	تأثیر/اثر فاعلیة/کفاءة/جدوی	effective	مؤثر
يتصرف/يسلك behave	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
يغش cheat	cheat cheating	غشاش/مخادع غش/تضلیل	cheated	مخدوع
fight پدارب/یکافح/یتشاجر	fighting fighter	اشتباك/مكافحة محارب/مكافح		a man, man, man, man, man, man, man, man
يستضيف host	hostess host	مضيفة مضيف/حشد	hospitable	مضياف
laugh يضحك	laugh	ضحك	laughable	مثير للضحك
police يحفظ الأمن والنظام	police policing	شرطة ضبط الأمن والنظام		

Adjective			
effective	مؤثر		
behavioural	سلوكى		
cheated	مخدوع		
hospitable	مضياف		
laughable مثیر للضحك/هزلی			
ننخت/هرنی			

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
continue	يستمر	resume/proceed	يتوقف stop/cease
exciting	مثير	inspiring/thrilling	ممل boring/dull
hard	صعب/قاسٍ	difficult/exhausting	easy/facile
hate	یکره	dislike/detest	love/adore بعب
hide	يخفى	conceal/cover	reveal/uncover
host مج	مضيف/مقدم البراه	presenter/owner/ moderator	ضيف/زائر guest/visitor
nasty	مقرف/كريه	disgusting/offensive	agreeable/nice مقبول/لطيف
negative	سلبي	bad/harmful	positive/beneficial ایجابی/مفید
scared	مذعور	frightened/afraid/fearful	unafraid/bold/brave غير خائف/شجاع
terrible	فظيع	horrible/awful	beautiful/nice/wonderful جمیل/رائع

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Check Point (1 1 Since travelling abroad, I have felt very

d) lone c) lonely b) only a) a lone 2others' videos or books without permission is illegal. d) Doing c) Watching b) Making a) Copying 3 It is easier to have a lot of friends on media. d) social b) sociable c) community a) society 4 Students have to take while answering the exercise. d) heads c) places b) parts a) turns 5 My daughter hopes to be an air when she graduates.

b) guest

a) host

c) hostess



Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4 209

d) hostage

Listening Text (1)

Radio show host: Good evening, everyone. Welcome to the show. Tonight, we're talking about bullying(1). Unfortunately, a lot of teenagers are bullied at school, and this can have some very negative effects(2) on them. We're going to talk to a 15-year-old boy called Ali, who is being bullied. Ali ... are you on the line?

Ali : Hi, Seleem. How are you?

Radio show host: I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

: I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week they hid⁽³⁾ my rucksack⁽⁴⁾. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now!

Radio show host: Oh, no! That's terrible(5). Did you tell a teacher?

Ali : No, I didn't. I was too scared(6). I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

Radio show host: Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the bullies(7) and make it clear that they shouldn't behave like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue(8).

: Yes ... you're right ... There's one teacher that I get along well with (9). I'll talk to him.

> Do you think Ali was right to move to another town? Why?

- تنمر/بلطجة (1)
- أثار سلبية (2)
- أخفى (3)
- حقيبة ظهر (4)
- رهيب (5)
- مفزوع (6)
- المتنمرون (7)
- بستمر (8)
- يتناغم بشكل جيد مع (9)

Ali

Ali

Listening Text (2)



Ola	: So, do you think moving(1) to a new school in another
	town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers(2)?

: As far as I'm concerned, it's not a good idea. If you move to Lina a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to make new friends.

: I'm not so sure about that. I think you can make Ola new friends if you're nice to other people and start conversations(3) with them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

الانتقال (1)
مراهقون (2)
محادثات (3)
وحيدًا (4)
يفضل (5)

: That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it takes time. You'll be Lina really lonely⁽⁴⁾ for the first few months.

: In my opinion, it's a good experience to have because it makes you stronger. Ola : I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer(5) to just stay Lina with the people I know.

> How do you think newcomers can overcome the lonely feeling they might have the first three months?

Workbook Text

Hassan is a good friend. Last week, however, he borrowed(1) my phone without asking. Then he dropped (2) the phone. Fortunately (3), the phone did not break but I was very angry with him. Now he's not talking to me.

Maged

Fawzi always gets good marks at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all laugh (4). Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the classroom. Now he doesn't want to make us laugh any more.

استلف (1)
أوقع (2)
لحسن الحظ، (3)
يضحك (4)
تشير إلى (5)

Omar

There is a girl in my class and she always says unkind things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on social media. Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today she was pointing (5) at me and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy.

Hoda

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4 211

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Smoking has a lot ofeffects on our lungs. a) positive b) impressive c) negative d) important 2 I couldn't find my shoes and I discovered that my little son was them. a) heading b) hitting c) heeling d) hiding 3 He felt when he realised his bad mistakes. a) terrible b) terrific c) pleased d) terrifying 4 I reached the station 10 minutes late, but the train was still there. a) unfortunately b) likely c) unluckily d) fortunately 5 After to our new flat, I felt lonely as I had few neighbours. a) transforming b) camping c) moving d) staying





Vocabulary in Use



Notes on Vocabulary

a 15-year-old boy ولد عمره ۱۵ عامـُا	I will play a game with a 15-year-old boy. He is my son's friend.
15-year-old boys أولاد عمر كل منهم ١٥ عامـُا	 All the players in our team are 15-year-old boys. الاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها اسم: second/minute/hour/day/week/month/year/ decade/century We usually have a five-minute break for coffee at midday. Our company held five-hour meetings. في حالة وجود كلمة (time) في حالة الجمع: المفرد و('s) في حالة الجمع: He has an appointment with the doctor in two days' time.
debate مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون	The law was passed after a long and sometimes angry debate.
discussion مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شيء مهم)	After a long discussion with her father, she
too = as well	I like English, and he likes it too. I will travel to Paris as well.

either

I don't like English, and he doesn't like it either.

انتقل إلى ▶ l've just moved to this town. move to يسكن في مسكن جديد We moved in a new house. move in ينتقل من بيته We moved out to live in a new flat. move out

ا سيدا رحلته I waved to my friends as the bus moved off. move off

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

I hate going to school now.

يتبع الفعل hate فعل مضاف إليه ing ولكن أحيانًا يتبعها المصدر + to.

As far as I'm concerned.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن وجهة نظر الشخص من خلال خبرة سابقة.

I would prefer to just stay with the people I know.

الصيغة would prefer يتبعها المصدر + to واستخدام just هنا بمعنى فقط وليس حالًا.

He doesn't want us to laugh any more.

تأتى any more في نهاية الجملة المنفية وتسـاوي في المعنى any longer لكن يمكن أيضـُـّا اســتخدام longer no للنفي بمعنى لم يعد.

He no longer smokes. = He doesn't smoke any more/any longer.

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Passing exams is the most important for any student.
 - a) mission
- b) profession
- c) task
- d) position

- 2 We don't use our old car
 - a) no longer
- b) never
- c) ever
- d) any longer
- 3 In a time, I will be a member of Al Ahly club.
 - a) weeks'
- b) week
- c) week's
- d) weeks
- 4 I don't eat lamb meat, I can't stand its soup,
 - a) too

b) also

- c) either
- d) again



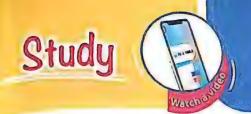


Vocabulary Exercises

Remem			valuating Creating	After we memorised the new vocabulary and read	
Cho	ose the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c or d		the notes, we need to practise.	
(Ke	ey Vocabulary, Rea	ding, Listening & Work	book Vocabulary	I think number one will be (a), do you agree?	
1	The little boy does	sn't like to go to school	as he is always b	by the older children.	
	a) bullied	b) bullying	c) hosted	d) gusted	
2	Good people nev	ver or tell lies.	They are respected	characters.	
			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	إدارة نجع حمادي التعليمية ٢٠٢٢	
	a) behave	b) beat	c) cheat	d) wear	
3	She has decided	to go into bed	ause she likes helpi	ng people.	
	a) nurse	b) nursing	c) nursery	d) nurses	
4	Daliaeat	ting meat or chicken w	then they are not fre	esh. She prefers	
	healthy food.	•			
	a) likes	b) prefers	c) objects	d) hates	
5	I think you	very badly towards yo	our elder sister. You	should apologise	
	to her.				
	a) bullied	b) behaved	c) scared	d) laughed	
6	The students alw	ays what is w	ritten on the board t	to study it at home.	
	al conv	h) remove	c) list	a) neglect	
7	There has been a	lot of about t	he educational syste	em and its effects on	
).	students. A lot of	parents hate change!		d) a green ant	
	-) chat	h) passion	c) debate	d) agreement	
8	Aya with	her family on how to	spend the noliday.	الزقازيق الثانوية بنات - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢ d) control s	
	N also a set a	h) dehates	c) tights	u) Controls	
9	My father's advice	e had a strong	on me and my me	d) effect	
	- I offort	b) effective	c) delect	u) enect	
10	My father's words	s had me and	c) defected	d) effected	
				troubles concerning	
a) affected b) effective quickly, there will be some troubles concerning					
	the new law.		c) moves	d) affects	
	a) points	b) removes	lon't like drawing	4, 411440	
12	I'd prefer	a P.E class because I d	c) have	d) that have	
		n navnu	•	a) that have	
13	I can't stay even a	day in such a	c) terrible	d) terribly	
1	a) terrific	b) terrified	about the loss of o	ur team in a	
a) terrific b) terrified c) terrific a) terrific 14 I telephoned and expressed my opinion about the loss of our team in a					
	that was shown o	on the television.	c) phone-out	d) phone-by	
	a) phone-in	b) phone-up	-/ F		
			f	14) (1055005 2 0 4 215	

	15	Sama is learning to	reign languages and	Mido is doing this,	***************************************	
		a) either	a) too	c) neither	u) diso	
	16	l asked my colleagu	ue toa photo	of me and our mar	nager.	
	17	a) liave	1) make	c) take	a) do	
		Iravelling has man	و مو منام براه این این می مرا بر	equiring at	nd knowled	
		av experiences	Nevnorimente	el experts	(I) CONVOYED !!	
		You have to	the names of the s	tudents alphabetica	lly to find their	
		names easily.	are names of the s		, and diell	
		m 1 11 m 4	o) contain	c) last	d) drag	
	(E				9	
	Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms					
	19	I am not sure	what I saw on the	street yesterday. Ple	ease, don't ask ma	
		-/101	n that	(1) W/Iff)	fil about	
		The boys put a spic	der in her bed for a	But I think it	wasn't funny	
		-, laugillel	1 laughing	c) laughed	d) laugh	
	21	73 Idi as i m	; the government i	s working hard to be	In us live wall	
		-, arriuzed)) Concerned	() concerning	d) friahtan	
	22	the phone rang an	id I replied, but there	was no one	the line.	
	23	w/ ut	on (c	r) in	طا بدنداه	
		A good teacher is t	he one who can get .	with his stud	lents.	
		a, up	o) together	c) away	d) along	
		it is a kind of bullyi	ng to laugh	your friends.	3	
	25	a) at	o) with	c) to	d) about	
		a) A cheat	ad behaviour that we	must all stand again	ist.	
	Ch) Cheated	c) Cheating	d) Cheater	
	Cil	oose the Iwo cor	rect answers of th	ne Five options:		
	26	I couldn't drink this	s juice because it was	n't nice . The antony	ns of the adjective	
		ince are		W man	مدرسة بني محمد سلطان الثانوية المئي	
		a) awful b)	interesting c) sting	/		
	27	Don't let that nasty	old dog come up he	re. The synonyms of	he word "nasty"	

	28	a) thrilling b)	exhausting c) disgu	sting d) agreeable	e) offensive	
E		Johana Continued	to work after she had	her baby. The synon	yms of the word	
			and the same of th			
		Smoking has a very	concealed c) cease	d d) proceeded	e) adored	
		a) affect b)	/ bad on our	health.		
	30	I hate horr	impact c) effect	ive d) influence	e) compact	
		a) watching b)	or films as they make to watching c) watch	ine frightened and v	vorried.	
			y watch	d) watches	e) to watch	



Lessons 3 & 4



Language

Countable and Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns

هى الأسماء التى يكون لها شكل مفرد ويأتى قبلها (a/an) أو شكل جمع

Examples:

1. Regular plurals (add s)

a car 2 cars a dog 2 dogs an apple 2 apples

2. Nouns ending in (s,ss,sh,ch,x,z) add es

a bus 2 buses 2 boxes a quiz 2 quizzes

Nouns ending in consonant + y (remove y and add ies)

a baby 2 babies 2 cities a story 2 stories

4. Nouns ending in f/fe (remove f/fe and add yes)

a loaf 2 loaves a wife 2 wives a wolf 2 wolves

5. Irregular nouns

2 men a man 2 children a child 2 oxen an ox 2 mice a mouse 2 teeth a tooth 2 geese a goose 2 women a woman 2 oases an oasis 2 feet a foot

1 sheep2 sheep

1 deer 2 deer 1 fish 2 fish _ no change

Uncountable nouns

هى أسماء لا تعد ولا تجمع ومن ثم لا يأتى قبلها a-an وهذه الأسماء تعامل معاملة المفرد

Examples:

1. Liquids

water/coffee/oil/milk/soup/blood/tea/iuice/petrol

2. Gases

oxygen/nitrogen/hydrogen/carbon dioxide

3. Languages

Arabic/English/French/Italian/Spanish/ German

4. Meals

breakfast/lunch/dinner/supper

5. School subjects

psychology/statistics/science/ mathematics/physics/chemistry/ biology/economics

6. Sports

football/dominos/billiards/tennis/ gymnastics/squash/athletics/chess

7. Food

meat/rice/butter/macaroni/cheese/ sugar/salt/bread/toast/beef

8. Abstract nouns

happiness/knowledge/freedom/ business/hatred/education/honesty/ advice/luck/courage/sadness/fun/ peace/progress/behaviour/fear/ confidence/help/sorrow/horror/ information/beauty

الأسماء المعدودة

يأتي معها فعل مفرد أو جمع.

- That painting is beautiful.
- Those paintings are beautiful.

يأتي قبل الاسم المفرد منها (a/an).

- Is there a park here?
- He ate an apple.

الأسماء الغير معدودة Uncountable nouns

يأتي معها فعل مفرد فقط.

- Swimming is a popular sport.
- That petrol was expensive.

لا ياتي قبلها (a/an).

- -This table is made of wood.
- We play football every week.

لاحظ استخدام الكلمات الآتية



a lot of - some - any - much - many - few - a few - little - a little

torrow arry	- many - lew - c	***************************************	
a lot of + مفعول a lot بدون مفعول	فى الجملة المثبتة (كثير من)	He always drinks a lot of water. He was tired as he worked a lot.	
عدد/كمية + some	فى الجملة المثبتة فى أسلوب العرض و الطلب	I have some good friends. Can I have some tea, please? Would you like some soup? Do you want any money? I don't have any chances. There isn't any water in the bottle.	
عدد – كمية + any	فى السؤال فى الجملة المنفية		
many + اسم جمع	فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال من الممكن فى الإثبات مع there are – so – too	How many brothers have you got? I didn't see many films, only a few. There are many books on the desk.	
اسم لا يعد + much	فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال من الممكن فى الإثبات مع there is — so — too	How much money do you need? There isn't much furniture here. There is much sugar in the tea.	
فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى العدد المثبتة ال		I have a few books here. يكفى I have few books here. لا يكفى	
a little/little + اسم لا يعد	فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للكمية	l have <mark>a little</mark> money. يكفى I have <mark>little</mark> money. لا يكفى	

Important Notes



بعض الكلمات في ظاهرها جمع ولكنها تعامل معاملة المفرد،

athletics/politics/gymnastics/mathematics/maths/news/economics/statistics/ physics/genetics/classics/electronics.

- Mathematics is my favourite subject.
- Gymnastics helps us to keep fit.
- Statistics shows progress in our economy. I The good news is "we passed the test."

هناك بعض الكلمات تشير إلى مجموعة. وهذه الكلمات من الممكن أن تكون مضردًا أو جمعًا حسب المقصود منها:

team/staff/family/government/company/committee/army/couple/crew/ crowd/gang/group/navy/population/university.

- The English staff is the best one in our school.
 - كلمة Staff مفرد لأن المقصود بها القسم كواحد من ضمن الأقسام في المدرسة.
- The English staff in our school are all wonderful.

وهنا جمع لأننا نقصد مجموعة المدرسين في القسم.

تعتبر المبالغ المالية/الفترات الزمنية/المسافات شيئًا واحدًا لذا تعامل معاملة المضرد،

- Ten million pounds is a lot of money.
- Five hours is a long time to do this.
- Fifty litres of petrol fills my car.

بعض الكلمات التي لا تعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة a/an إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة،

- She completed her education in 1995.
- She had a good education.
- We usually have lunch at 2.00 p.m.
- We had a wonderful lunch at a big restaurant yesterday.

هناك كلمات أخرى يمكن أن تكون countable أو uncountable مع اختلاف المعني مثل:

paper - glass - coffee - time - cold - light - orange - iron - chicken

- I'd like some writing paper. I'm going to buy a paper. (= a newspaper)
- The window's made of unbreakable glass.
- Would you like a glass of water?
- Have you got any coffee? Could I have two coffees? (cups of coffee)
- Don't hurry. There's plenty of time. He went to London three times.
- He has black hair. I'm starting to get a few grey hairs.

(ورق الكتاب/لا يعد) صحيفة (تعد) (الزجاج/لا يعد) القهوة (سائل لا يعد) فنجان قهوة (يعد) الوقت (لا بعد) مرات شعر (لا يعد)

قليل من الشعر (بعد)

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4 219

There are two oranges on the table.	برتقال ب
I don't like orange. I prefer red.	المن البرتقالي (لا يعد)
▶ This table is made of iron.	(بعة ج) بتميما
She bought an iron yesterday.	مكواة
Do you like chicken? (= chicken meat)	لحم الدخاج
We bought a chicken.	بجاجة
The sun gives us light.	الصوء الا تعد
We need two lights in this room.	مصباح کھریی

مناك كلمات مثل trousers/glasses/shoes/gloves تعامل معاملة الجمع. أما إذا جاء قبلها pair of فتعامل معاملة المضرد

My trousers are of a good material and they don't cost much.

A pair of trousers is very expensive if it is imported from abroad.

من الممكن استخدام ألفاظ التجزئة مع الكميات لتحويلها إلى اسم يعد:

a piece of jewellery	a piece of furniture	a piece of luggage	a piece of information
a slice of cake/cheese	a loaf of bread	a jar of jam	a cup of coffee
a glass of lemonade	a tube of toothpaste	a bar of soap	a sheet of paper
a bottle of milk	a bar of chocolate	a piece of advice	a bag of chips

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Would you like	cup of coffee?		
	a) a	b) any	c) some	d) an
2	books are v	ery useful, but others	are not.	
	a) Any	b) Some	c) A lot	d) Much
3	I don't have	furniture. I feel more	comfortable with less	furniture.
	a) many	b) much	c) some	
4	One of the players i	n our teamve	ry tall.	
-	a) are	b) is	c) be	d) is being
5	I have found a job i	nclothes facto	ry.	<u>.,</u>
	a) an	b) a	c) no article	d) any
4	a) manyOne of the players ia) areI have found a job in	n our teamve b) is nclothes facto	c) some ry tall. c) be ory.	furniture. d) a d) is being

Check the answers at the end of the book.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- Have you	ı seen	UN	identity	card	before?
_		P. N			

a) a

b) an

c) any

d) no article



Language Exercises

Understanding

Analysing

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	1	Fortunately, the new	vsas bad as we	had expected.	
		a) wasn't	b) weren't	c) haven't been	d) don't
	2	My mother gave me	food. I was sti	ll hungry but I didn	't tell her.
		a) a few	b) few	c) a little	d) little
	3	There too m	any passengers on the	train. I can't get or	ı it.
		a) aren't	b) isn't	c) are	d) is
	4	Would you like	tea after the meal?		
		a) some	b) much	c) a	d) any
	5	The police t	two يستجوب two	men about the robl	bery.
		a) want	b) wants	c) has wanted	a) is warited
	6	Mohamed doesn't l	nave money.		إدارة غرب شبرا - القاعرة ٢٠٢٢
		a) much	b) many	c) some	d) few
	7	exercise ke	eps your body fit, so yo	ou should join a gyr	n class.
		a) Many	b) Much	c) A lot	a) rew
	8	A bag of money	from my father w	hile walking last ni	ght.
0		a) was stolen	b) is stolen	c) were stolen	d) are stolen
-	9	Most of our furnitu	rein Damietta		
		a) are made	b) is made	c) makes	d) is making
	10	Three days	long enough for a goo	od holiday.	23. * /-
		- Lucron't	b) aren't	c) Haven t been	d) isn't
	11	Can you tell me ho	w times you ha	ave seen this film?	1) - ft - m
		-1	b) any	c) much	d) often
	12	Would you like to h	navehelp with	this project?	1)
		-1	b) an	c) circ	d) some
	13	The money of the	clothes on that	table.	إدارة نجع حمادي٢٠٢٢
			MATA	LI Has	d) had
	14	It is very good that	I don't havelu	iggage; I can move	easily.
		1	bi some	c) III ordii	d) a lot
	15	Mariam was listeni	ng to music or	n the radio.	F.
			h many		d) some
	16	Everyone knows th	nat athleticsus	fit and healthy.	15.1
	.,	a) keep	b) are keeping	c) keeps	d) have kept

J	17	My son bought a r	new pair of shoes wh	ichvery exp	pensive.
		a) are	h) word	c) was	Q) nave
•	18	My football team	all students i	n the secondary stag	ge.
		4/15	h) havo	c) are	d) was
ì	19	I want you to enjoy	vour trip and have	good time.	
		a) many	h) a	c) a few	d) any
1	20	Five million pound	s a lot of mo	nev for this villa.	۲۰۲۲ینماان - المتبا۲۰۲
I		4/13	h) is haing	c) are	are heine
1	21	My friends manage	ed to get a lot of usef	ul information, but I	haven't got
	(a) 201116	hl many	c) any	d) few
ŀ	22	One should drink e	nough of w	ater daily.	,
ı		a) 10(2	h) many	c) quantity	d) a lot
	23	A:coffee h	ave you drunk today	1?	,
5		b. Two cups.			
		a) How many	b) How much	c) How	d) How long
	24	What Mr Osama do	es because l	ne has been verv ill r	ecently.
,					V . V V T 10 10 10 1
į		a) is	b) are	c) has	d) have
7	25	was very angry wr	nen I foundi	n my soup at the res	taurant
J		ary mans	DI no hairs	c) a hair	d) the hair
	26	THE trail is	of transport. I really	like using it.	
		a) means	b) the means	c) a moans	d) some means
0.4	27	if you want to know	the news, you can r	ead it in	
:		a) much paper	b) many paper	c) some paper	d) the nanore
ı	28	i have got no inform	nation about the acc	ident. This means the	at
		a) I have little inform	nation about the acc	ident	
		b) I have some infor	mation about the ac	cident	
		c) I don't have any ir	nformation about the	e accident	
ı	20	d) I have very little in	nformation about th	e accident	
ı	29	One of the following	sentences is not co	rrect?	
		a) We need some wa	ater to drink during t	the journey.	
		b) He told me an imp	portant information	about the crime.	
		c) I saw lots of stude	nts waiting for their	results at school.	
	20	d) I met some kind p	eople while I was in	the village.	
ľ	30 (One of the following	sentences is correct	:7	
		My trousers are ve			
	ı	Lentils soup are m	y ravourite kind of a	ppetizers.	
) Gymnastics aren't	easy sports as they r	need a lot of practice	
	C) Two hours are very	y long to wait for the	doctor.	



Lessons 3 & 4



(I) Life Skills



General Skills

للعزيدها الغرخ والترويان برجي الرجوع لعلاة العمانات

Asking for opinions

- .What is your opinion of/about?
- .What do you think of/about?
- .Could you tell me your opinion?

Accepting

- · I agree with you.
- · Yes, I couldn't agree more.
- ·That's what I think.
- You are right.
- I completely agree with you.

Giving opinions

- I think is/are/
- In my opinion is/are/
- · If you ask me, I think

Not accepting

- I don't agree with you.
- I disagree with you.
- · I don't think so.
- I think it is a very worrying problem.

	4	
4		-
4		
	1	A
	100	_

(II) Writing

Writing an email

Writing Tips:

400	

الموضوع باختصار:

اسم وعنوان الراسل الإلكتروني إذا وجد:

اسم وعنوان المرسل إليه الإلكتروني إذا وحد:



From To

•

Subject : (invitation - congratulation - complaint - apology - request)

اسم المرسل إليه ر.....

How are you? I want to tell you that

Best wishes

اسم الراسل:

You can have more information about writing emails in the booklet.

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4 223

Test Yourself (1)





Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4

	• Re	membering	Understanding	Amelia a a s	© Evaluating Creating	
	1	Ch.		t t 3 3	- Lidina	
	W.	Cnoos	e the correc	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
		1 Our	Company	20.0	. Is it in our amo	
		a) th	ree-vear be	as alt is a v	ery ampitious one.	
		c) th	ree year-bu	isiness plan	b) three-year-i	ousiness plans
		2 Carr	Ving a	usiness plan	b) three-year-l d) three-years	-business plan
			7 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	OVER VOUR should	or for a long time is lik	AIV to harm
	1 3	,	- TICy	DI WAIIAt	C) MITCA	fil riickai
ı		, .,	cruel.	nd why someone wo	ould do that unless the	ey are
1			- H II			
	4	After	vourite 'a lone	b) dear	c) nasty	d) dirt
				with his family, i	All decided to move to	a new flat.
ł	5			FIGURE	- dicciccion	
	1	who	e is a/an	between those	in favour of the work	of women and those
			The address of the			
B	6	The l	reement	b) effect	c) defect	d) debate
ĭ	Ŭ		and chilled AAG	TILLU LITE GENTIST TW	as I for his	modical in star
	7	,		UI DIOKEN	@ amazod	
	•	,	Troin Callo	IS OUT THE H	a Wante to participate	in our programme
	0	,	•	M/ 11116	c around	Maria
),	0	ine n	nedical and	staff plays a	great role in fighting	the coronavirus all
10	>	OVCIL	he world.			2
	•	a) rarr	ning	b) engineering	c) nursing	d) advertising
	9	Dong	gnt a	of toothpaste last	night.	
	4.0	a) she	et	b) slice	c) jar	d) tube
	10	There	isn't	traffic on the ring	road today.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
		a) few		b) some	c) much	d) many
	11	A: Hou	v cc	offees do you want t	to have? B: Two, please	<u>a,a.r.y</u>
		a) mud	:n	b) many	c) little	d) form
	12	There	is plenty of i	meat in the fridge, k	out there isn't	bread
		a) muc	:h	b) many	c) little	d) a lot
	13	••••••	the police	know how the accid	dent happened?	a) a lot
		a) Do		b) Does	c) Is	d) Was
	14	Three h	ours	a long time to wa	it for her to come	w) was
		a) is		b) are	c) have been	dlword
	15	am go	ing to buy.	to have my	breakfast.	d) were
		_	e breads	_		al) an un a la una a d
1					sharp enough	d) some bread
	a) isn't	,	b) doesn't	c) aren't	1, d) don't

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A good education has the ability to change the world. When we pay attention to quality education, the results can be transformational for an individual, a community and society at large. The value of investing in education is indisputable: it improves economic development, promotes peace, and lifts people out of poverty.

The right to education is not only the right to access education but also the right to receive an education of good quality. Education must be available and accessible but also acceptable and adaptable. Students must receive a quality education that enables their personalities, talents and abilities and to live a full and satisfying life within a single production.

and satisfying life within society.

The aims of education go far beyond acquiring numeracy and literacy skills. Basic skills also include life skills such as the ability to make well-balanced decisions; to resolve conflicts in a responsibility, critical thinking, creative talents, and other abilities which give children the tools needed to pursue their options in life.

Also, schools should have a sufficient number of trained teachers. All teachers should be paid competitive salaries. There should be an appropriate number of classrooms, accessible to all, with adequate and separate sanitation facilities for girls and boys.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The benefits of a good education can be noticed on
 - a) people and their families
 - b) people, their community and their society
 - c) countries, continents and islands
 - d) poor people and workers
- 2 When we invest in education, this will
 - a) make people poor and powerless
 - b) improve economic development and ignorance
 - c) encourage wars and illegal competitions
 - d) improve people's income and bring peace
- 3 The education provided to students must
 - a) enable their abilities and characters to live properly
 - b) be for free and be online
 - c) provide good salaries to students and their families
 - d) activate violence among them to motivate them

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4 225

a) can't be separate b) can't be agreed on c) must be agreed on d) not obvious 5 Education should provide students with the techniques that a) make them join the Faculty of Medicine b) follow their options in life c) enrich their argumentative abilities d) strengthen their flexibility in life 6 In order to ensure a quality education, teachers should a) get paid competitive salaries b) arrest students who make troubles c) have power and authority d) wear formal clothes with much money 7 Educational institutions should have a) sanitation materials and yoga sessions b) only one classroom for all students c) large playground with whiteboards d) enough classrooms and separate toilets 8 The best title for this passage is "	
Education should provide students with the techniques that a) make them join the Faculty of Medicine b) follow their options in life c) enrich their argumentative abilities d) strengthen their flexibility in life ln order to ensure a quality education, teachers should a) get paid competitive salaries b) arrest students who make troubles c) have power and authority d) wear formal clothes with much money leducational institutions should have a) sanitation materials and yoga sessions b) only one classroom for all students c) large playground with whiteboards d) enough classrooms and separate toilets least title for this passage is "	
a) make them join the Faculty of Medicine b) follow their options in life c) enrich their argumentative abilities d) strengthen their flexibility in life ln order to ensure a quality education, teachers should	
b) follow their options in life c) enrich their argumentative abilities d) strengthen their flexibility in life ln order to ensure a quality education, teachers should	
c) rollow their options in life c) enrich their argumentative abilities d) strengthen their flexibility in life In order to ensure a quality education, teachers should	
c) enrich their argumentative abilities d) strengthen their flexibility in life In order to ensure a quality education, teachers should	
a) strengthen their flexibility in life In order to ensure a quality education, teachers should	
a) get paid competitive salaries b) arrest students who make troubles c) have power and authority d) wear formal clothes with much money Feducational institutions should have	
b) arrest students who make troubles c) have power and authority d) wear formal clothes with much money Educational institutions should have	
c) have power and authority d) wear formal clothes with much money Educational institutions should have	
c) have power and authority d) wear formal clothes with much money Feducational institutions should have	
d) wear formal clothes with much money 7 Educational institutions should have	
a) sanitation materials and yoga sessions b) only one classroom for all students c) large playground with whiteboards d) enough classrooms and separate toilets The best title for this passage is "	
a) sanitation materials and yoga sessions b) only one classroom for all students c) large playground with whiteboards d) enough classrooms and separate toilets The best title for this passage is "	
c) large playground with whiteboards d) enough classrooms and separate toilets The best title for this passage is "	
c) large playground with whiteboards d) enough classrooms and separate toilets The best title for this passage is "	
d) enough classrooms and separate toilets The best title for this passage is "	
d) enough classrooms and separate toilets The best title for this passage is "	
a) How Can Education Be Good? b) Quality Education and Teachers c) Classrooms and Schools d) Education Investment 3 A) Translate into Arabic:	
a) How Can Education Be Good? b) Quality Education and Teachers c) Classrooms and Schools d) Education Investment 3 A) Translate into Arabic:	
b) Quality Education and Teachers c) Classrooms and Schools d) Education Investment 3 A) Translate into Arabic:	
c) Classrooms and Schools d) Education Investment A) Translate into Arabic:	
d) Education Investment A) Translate into Arabic:	
3 A) Translate into Arabic:	
1. We have to rationalise ⁽¹⁾ the consumption ⁽²⁾ of water, electricity and foo	
face the increasing ⁽³⁾ rise ⁽⁴⁾ in prices.	od to
***************************************	Coggoanmentii
2. The educational institution seeks train the young generations in positive particles.	***************************************
train the young generations in positive participation.	nt and
7 The coverage of the state of	14055000156805
3. The government and the individuals should work together to offer mor	re
support and help the handicapped ⁽⁷⁾ and the children with special need	ds ⁽⁸⁾ .
<u></u>	**************************************

	شكل الوالدان شخصيات أبنائهما منذ بداية طفولتهم فهما يعلمانهم القيم والعادات وأيضنا يشاركانهم الاهتما
الوجيا.	لعولمة(١) تأثير خطير على الدول النامية. ويجب على هذه الدول أن تبدأ بجدية للاستفادة من ثمار التكنو
ولا تستطيع	ن الفقر والبطالة(۱۰۰) هما قنبلة موقوتة، فلو لم نبذل جهودًا غير عادية لاستئصالهما(۱۰۰) سنعانى كثيرًا، حكومة أن تقوم بهذا وحدها.
Hov	v to translate
	- + اسم (بمعنی له – لها – یمتلك) يتم ترجمتها have – has – had. مصر أهمية كبيرة فی إفريقيا .Egypt has a great importance in Africa. - + اسم (بمعنی الغرض) يتم ترجمتها .to + inf.
	حاول بجد لحل المشكلة .We are trying hard to solve the problem.
	. + فعل (معنى الغرض – لكي) يتم ترجمتها .to + inf.
	. + فعل (معنى الغرض – لكى) يتم ترجمتها .to + inf. ذاكر جيدًا ليحصل عل الدرجة النهائية .He is studying hard to get the full mark. لم (إذا لم) تترجم إلى جملة مثبتة + OR unless جملة منفية + lf.
1. What w	. + فعل (معنى الغرض – لكى) يتم ترجمتها .to + inf. He is studying hard to get the full mark. داكر جيدًا ليحصل على الدرجة النهائية .OR unless + الدرجة النهائية .lf + ملة منفية + الدرجم إلى جملة مثبتة + OR unless جملة منفية + الدرجم إلى جملة مثبتة + essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following can do to overcome the problem of unemployment. The studying hard to get the full mark.
1. What w	. + فعل (معنى الغرض – لكى) يتم ترجمتها .to + inf. اكر جيدًا ليحصل على الدرجة النهائية .He is studying hard to get the full mark. الم (إذا لم) تترجم إلى جملة مثبتة + OR unless جملة منفية + lf. Ssay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following e can do to overcome the problem of unemployment.
1. What w	. + فعل (معنى الغرض – لكى) يتم ترجمتها .to + inf. He is studying hard to get the full mark. داكر جيدًا ليحصل على الدرجة النهائية .OR unless + الدرجة النهائية .lf + ملة منفية + الدرجم إلى جملة مثبتة + OR unless جملة منفية + الدرجم إلى جملة مثبتة + essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following can do to overcome the problem of unemployment. The studying hard to get the full mark.
1. What w	. + فعل (معنى الغرض – لكى) يتم ترجمتها .to + inf. He is studying hard to get the full mark. داكر جيدًا ليحصل على الدرجة النهائية .OR unless + الدرجة النهائية .lf + ملة منفية + الدرجم إلى جملة مثبتة + OR unless جملة منفية + الدرجم إلى جملة مثبتة + essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following can do to overcome the problem of unemployment. The studying hard to get the full mark.
1. What w	. + فعل (معنى الغرض – لكى) يتم ترجمتها .to + inf. He is studying hard to get the full mark. داكر جيدًا ليحصل على الدرجة النهائية .OR unless + الدرجة النهائية .lf + ملة منفية + الدرجم إلى جملة مثبتة + OR unless جملة منفية + الدرجم إلى جملة مثبتة + essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following can do to overcome the problem of unemployment. The studying hard to get the full mark.
1. What w	to + inf. ايدمس – اكى) يتم ترجمتها .he is studying hard to get the full mark. اكر جيدًا ليدمس على الدرجة النهائية . OR unless + منفية + أا. و (إذا لم) تترجم إلى جملة مثبتة + OR unless بملة منفية + أا. essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following at schools. g at schools.
1. What w	to + inf. ايدوس - لكي) يتم ترجمتها .to + inf. العرض - لكي). الله is studying hard to get the full mark. اكر جيدًا ليحصل على الدرجة النهائية .lf + جملة منفية + الم (إذا لم) تترجم إلى جملة مثبتة + OR unless جملة منفية + ssay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following e can do to overcome the problem of unemployment. g at schools. Tused the right I used a topic I wrote the conclusion. I used the right I

Unit 4 \(\int \) Lessons 3 & 4 \(\text{227}\)

Study

Chapter 4 (Treasure Island)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

as usual	كالعادة
branch	فرع شجرة
close	قريب
continue	يستمر
correct	صحيح
count	يعد/يحصي
crutch	عكاز
diseases	أمراض
downstairs	الطابق الأسفل
expect .	يتوقع
expression	تعبير
follow	يتبع
forever	إلى الأبد
glasses	نظارات
hold onto	يمسك في

hills	יגול
immediately	في الحال
marked	مشار إليه
mistake	خطأ
organise	ينظم
plan	خطة
prefer	يفضل
pretty	جميلة
relax	يسترخى
rocky tops	قمم صخرية
shore	شاطئ
thought	فكر
trust	ثقة
whistle	صفارة/يصفر

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

along the beach	بمحاذاة الشاطئ
as fast as I could	بأسرع ما يمكنني
climb out of	يقفز من
close to	قریب من
fight them for	يقاتلهم من أجل

find out	يكتشف/يعرف
jumped out of	
	قفز من على
prefer to	يفضل ان
walked off	خرج
excited to	متعمس ل



Novel Exercises

Chapter (4)

Rel		nh	er	inc	1
Rel	nei	III		11.5	3

Understanding

Applying

Analysing

Evaluating

Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	I usually put my	in my son and	he really deserves it.	
	a) truth	_		d) truly
2	The referee	and the game was	over.	
	a) whistled	b) ran	c) coughed	d) sneezed
3	I didn't find what	I wanted in this shop,	so I went to their nev	V
	a) root	b) trench	4	d) trunk
4	Don't worry, you	should and tl	hink again.	
	a) relax	b) hesitate		d) quite
5	When I go to Mat	trouh, I only stand on t	theand look	at the sea.
	a) bank	b) branch	c) edge	a) shore
6	Eating healthy fo	od can protect us from	n many serious	
	a) illness	b) diseases	c) dangers	d) SICK
7	Lwas very	when I saw him wa	lking after the operat	1011.
	a) surprise	b) surprising	c) surprised	a) annoying
8	I decided to sper	nd my next holiday	all island in the	. r delire.
		L-\ -+	c) in	
9	I realised that so	mething bad had hap	pened when I saw a s	au
	f			
	a) impression	b) explanation	ing together	the beach. I felt
10	When I saw my s	on and daughter walk	ang together	
	happy.		c) along	d) away
	a) a long	b) in Iin her fascin	ating wedding dress.	
	a) ugly	b) pretty hen I hear that there is	a match for my favo	urite team.
12		b) surprised	c) terrible	d) exciting
	a) excited	lowand bega	an to climb them easi	ly.
13	They saw some	lowund beg	c) wells	d) shells
	a) hells	b) hills ny homework and ask	ed my teacher to	my mistakes.
	a) collect	b) realise ounished for holding u	ip a man with a	
1		b) hill	c) pun	d) sun
100	a) gun	יוווו (ט	-	

Unit 4

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

•	Remembering
---	-------------

Understanding

Applying

Analysing

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Our bus was late an	d so we missed our	****************	
	a) communication	b) contact	c) connection	d) link
2	of clothing	were lying all over r	ny daughter's room.	
	a) Articles	b) Slices		d) Grades
3	My offer was receive	ed rather wi	hich made me angry	
	a) cold	b) eagerly	c) coldly	d) eager
4	There should be mo	reon learni	ing foreign language	es in schools
	a) biessure	b) press	c) stress	d) practice
5	The female parrot si	ts on the eggs while	e her hunts f	or food.
	a) coneague	b) matt	c) gate	d) mate
6	The old woman was	an expressi	ion of delight on her	face.
	a) wearing	b) dressing	c) putting on	d) acting
7	THE GIC WO	in our local health	h centre and they are	open 24 hours
	a day.			
•	a) plays	b) practices	c) locations	d) positions
8	I feel very relaxed wh	nen I my ba	bies in my arms.	
	a) dress	b) press	c) pinch	d) nurse
9	the report about the	starving children	many people	to tears.
40	a) removed	b) moved	c) made	d) 1
10	They invited me to the	neir wedding party	and I for long	whether to go or
	not. I many, I decided	i not to go.		
44	a) discussed	b) agreed	c) debated	d) frowned
11	The store sells only the	ne nighest	of clothes, so they are	e very expensive.
	u) grade	w) ucuice	Clareed	44
12	It is clear that the she	ets are starting to	out a little. W	e need to buy
	new ones.			
42		b) dress	c) wear	d) weep
13	I'm sorry, I can't buy a			
4.4		b) dear	c) fear	d) ear
14	During the last holida a) thousands			
	a) tilousarius	of thousands	c) thousand	d) thousands'

15	Everyone likes talking aboutand what they have done.				
		b) herself		d) themselves	
16	There were only	people in the	meeting, so the ma	nager cancelled it.	
	a) little	b) many	_	d) few	
17	My uncle is a sailor	who spends most	of his time at	•	
	a) the sea	b) a sea		d) sea	
18	We have hardly hea	ordnews o	f her since she trave	lled abroad.	
	a) some	b) any	c) much	d) many	
19	Make and c	ook the food, Mor	na.		
	a) a bed	b) bed	c) the bed	d) any bed	
20	I like watching	road running	during the Olympics		
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article	
21	My father booked.	seat No. 20	incarriage	2.	
	a) no article/no art	icle	b) no article/the		
	c) the/the		d) the/no article		
22	The police found the	ne dead man's	including his wi		
).	a) paper		c) papers	d) newspaper	
23	Our teacher told us	s that during the e	xam, there is no		
	a) a room	b) rooms	c) room		
24	My father has too.	and it all sh	nould be finished be	fore 8 o'clock.	
	a) much work	b) many jobs	c) many professi	ons d) much time	
25	My father once sav	ed one-ye	ear-old boy from a fir	e.	
Į.	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article	
26	My friend's father v		ent when he was livi	ng in the o.s.A.	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article	
27	a) a ' By day, I w		erk, but at night, i wo	d) no article	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	u) no article	
28	France is part of		nion.	d) no article	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	a) no article	
29	My brother lives no		c) the	d) no article	
	a) a	b) an	tor I spent		
30		ff to go to the doc	tor. I spentv	,	
	his office.	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	c) the	d) no article	
1.	a) a	b) an	4 ,	•	

Unit 4 Advanced & Open General Exercises

Unit 4



Al-Adwaa Test



				Question				The state of the s
•	Remo	embering	Understanding		alysing © E	valuating 💿	Creating	
(Cho	ose the		ect answers of th				
1	V .	110		ect answers or th	ie rive o	ptions		
	1	NOU	a is	a very nice dı	ess for h	er friend	's wedding. I	Everyone admires
		•	01/1					
	_	a) pu	itting on	b) dressing	c) dres	sed in	d) wearing	e) putting
	2	Iner	e's so much	to do and I do	n't know	where to	start. The a	ntonyms of the
		WOLC	i start" are	and				
		a) fin	ish	b) initiate	c) end		d) neglect	e) pursue
	Ch	oose	the correct	t answer from a	hor	d.		1 206
	3							
		- 116	or the mail	n jobs of the spe	ecial forc	es is to	the c	city centre
16		al no	dice impo	rtant buildings.				
	4		lice			c) close		d) stop
	7	a) ch	c look at m	y answer sheet.	That's			
	5	Llike	eating	b) cheat		c) cheat	ed	d) cheater
	5	Tilke	a nim beca	use he	bravely	in a very	difficult situ	ation.
	6	a) CO	ntinued	b) behaved		c) added	t t	d) copied
	6	II you	want the	job, you'll have	to	for it.		
0			ax			c) contir	nue	d) fight
	7	Docti	ors have to	inform patients	s of the		side effects c	of the drug.
		a) po	sitive	b) nice		c) negat	ive	d) superior
	8	After	Ali's opera	tion, Mrs Radwa		him ba	ck to health.	
		a) che	eated	b) policed		c) bullied	d	d) nursed
	9	wner	i I was in Ja	pan, I found	J	apanese g	generally sho	orter than I am.
		a) d		D) an		c) the		d) no article
	10		oldest	lion is roaring ir	n its cage	now.		
		a) A		b) An		c) The		d) No article
11 When I leave school, I want to be tour guide.								
		a) a		b) an		c) the		d) no article
	12	She as	sked me fo	r advi	ce about	how to r	evise her les	sons.
		a) an		b) any		c) some		d) few
10	13		ng to	work is par	t of my c	laily routi	ine.	•
		a) a	.1.	b) an		c) the		d) no article

14 I was so thirsty and asked for of water.

b) glass

a) the glass

d) a glass

c) a pair of glass

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment.

Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of its withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the ecological balance, therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, and biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Desertification meansa wide area of trees. c) irrigating d) spraying b) planting a) clearing 18 The underlined word "its" refers to b) global warming a) desertification d) carbon dioxide c) environment 19 Scientists recommend fossil fuels in an attempt to solve the problem. d) reusing c) reducing b) misusing a) using 20 Burning fossil fuelsglobal warming. c) leads to d) results from b) results of a) causes of

Unit 4 Al-Adwaa Test

:	21	The synonym of the u	nderlined wo	rd "ecologic	<u>al</u> "is			
1		a) environmental b)	hiological	c) chemic	cal q)	material		
e	22	Using nonrenewable	sources of en	eray is not s	afe because it	************		
e		a) produces gases like	carbon diovi	ide				
		b) can be stolen easily	,					
		c) can be flamed						
			1	- othor				
	23	d) can't be moved from	m a place to a	Mother	uctive effects of	thool		
. :		According to the pass	age, we	the desti	uctive circus of	trie glopal		
		warming.		136				
		a) will face		b) faced	f d			
;	•	c) are already facing			ever faced			
	24	The best title for this p	assage is "					
, ,		a) National Disasters		b) Global	Disasters			
		c) Trees and Nature		d) Anthro	pogenic Activiti	es		
	25	Translate into English						
		عيشة كما يجب أن نقوم باستغلال	حيد لرفع مستوى الم	جاد هو الطريق الو.	ا ونتكلم قليلًا، فالعمل ال	۔ يجب أن نعمل كثيرًا		
6				•	دية المتاحة بدون اسراف	كل الموارد الاقتصا		
		*******************************	*****************************	*******************	**************	**************************************		
N		***************************************		****************	7.800:::000000:::00000000000000000000000	100888000000000000000000000000000000000		
•	26	Translate into Arabic:						
		Egypt had to call for an international conference aiming at stabil						
		process and combatin	a terrorism	ar conference	ic anning at stat	onity in peace		
i		process and community	ig terrorism.					
				************************		***************************************		
<u>80</u>				***************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	***************************************		
	27	Write an essay of abou	It ONE HUND	RED AND FI	TY (150) words	on the		
		following:						
1		The best way to reach	success is par	tience and h	ard work.			
iv		***************************************	*********************	*************************************	******			
and the second		***************************************	######################################	*****************		***************************************		
; i		h	*****************************	######################################		######################################		
		***************************************	162036042244288888888886866664444	980409898888888888888888		######################################		
B		***************************************	990	#350cccingpainted	7,040219040404040000044402000000000000	***************************		
		***************************************	P##040103################################		<i> </i>	******************************		
2		#P-04-04-04-04-04-04-04-04-04-04-04-04-04-	***************************************	***********	*************************************) # 2 8 8 3 9 7 8 <i>9</i> 7 7 9 2 2 2 2 2 4 <i>9 9</i> 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2		
		6			*******************************	***************************************		
	•	Assess your progress	< 50%	50:64%	to taken adur reporteren es é nexe april april se proper de la proper	1 pd x + pm 4 x 80 m 0 pd 4 n 4 m 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2		
		****	Study again	Practise more	65 : 84%	85:100%		
				moif	Také more exami	Well done		





Communication

Objectives

Reading : A science article on how we may communicate in the future

Writing : An essay on IOT; a blog on how to stay safe online

Listening : A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet

Speaking : Give a presentation

Language : Future forms will, be going to and present continuous

Life Skills : Self-management; Decision making



Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

app = application (n)	تطبيق حاسب آلى	the internet (n)	شبكة الإنترنت
communication (n)	نظام الاتصال/تواصل	security (n)	نما
connected (adj)	متصل	smartphone (n)	الهاتف الذكى
hack (n) (v) – ed*	اختراق/يخترق	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا

Someone hacked my phone and stole important files.

Vocabulary on Reading

accident (n)	حادث	electric (adj)	كهربائي
business (n)	عمل تجارى	empty (v)y-ied	يفرغ
cause (v) – d	- Hall	enough (adv)	كافر /بقدر كافر
check (v) – ed	يفحص	flexible (adj)	مرن
control (v) – led	يتحكم فى	heating (n)	التدفئة
create (v) – d	يخلق/ينتج	imagine (v) – d	يتخيل
criminal (n) (adj)	مجرم/إجرامي	latest (adj)	أحدث
develop (v) – ed	يتطور	lighting (n)	إضاءة
device (n)	جهاز	lightning (n)	البرق
disadvantages (n)	عيوب/مساوئ	link (v) – ed	يتصل/يرتبط
driverless (adj)	ذاتية القيادة (بلا سائق)	machine (n)	ماكينة

rior (adi)	
major (adj)	رئيسى
network (n)	شبكة
online (adv) (adj)	عبر الإنترنت
organisation (n)	منظمة
petrol (n)	بنزين
possible (adj)	محتمل
power stations (n)	محطات توليد الطاقة
protect (v) – ed	يحمى

rubbish bin (n)	سلة قمامة
safe (adj)	آمن
sat-nav (n)	نظام الملاحة عن طريق الأقمار الصناعية
system (n)	نظام
tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحى (تابلت)
use (n) (v) – d	استخدام/يستخدم
worldwide (adv) (a	dj) عالمي/في جميع أنحاء العالم

Workbook Vocabulary

camping (n)

التخييم (الخروج في معسكرات ومخيمات)

illegally (adv)

particular (adj)

recent (adj) حديث shopping (n) التسوق survey (n) دراسة/استطلاع

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

(be) known as	معروف ک
a driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق
as often as I can	بقدر ما أستطيع
collect + (someone) بسیارة	يصطحب/يوصل شخص و
collect information	يجمع معلومات
outside world	العالم الخارجى

make a decision	يتخذ قرارًا
on your phone	على تليفونك
lose money	يخسر مالًا
important to	مهم لـ
information about	معلومات عن
listen to	يستمع إلى

Unit 5 \(Lessons 1 & 2 \)

break into	يقتحم	go shopping	هب التسوق
communicate with	يتواصل مع	do the shopping	نوم بالتسوق
connect to	يتصل بـ	protect from/against	وم من/ضد
hack into	يخترق	send messages to	سل رسائل نصية اـ
by accident	بالصدفة	the use of	بنفدام
do a survey	يقوم ببحث شامل	worried about	ق بشان
in particular	على وجه الخصوص	live on	ىش على

Derivatives

The American Control of the Control		DCITY	atives		
Verb	horage may	Nour	n an territoria in nime of the parties of the parti	Adje	ective
apply	يطبق	application وظيفة applicant	تطبيق/نموذج طلب طالب الوظيفة	applicable applied	قابل للتطبيق مستعمل/مطبق
communicate	يبلغ/يتصل	communication communicator	تواصل/اتصال محاور	communicat	مربح/تواصلی Ve
control	يتحكم	control controller	تحكم/قيادة مراقب/مشرف	controlling controllable controlled	متسلط/مسیطر مطیع/مذعن مراقب/موجه
create	يخلق	creation creativity creator	خلق/تكوين إبداع خالق/بديع	creative	إبداعي/مبتكر
develop	يتطور	development developer	تطور/تنمية مطور	developed developing	متطور نام (في مرحلة التطور)
hack	يخترق	hacking (uncount hack (countable) hacker	اختراق (table اختراق مخترق/قرصان	hacked	مُخْتَرق ۫
imagine [*]	يتخيل	imagination imaginings	خيال خيالات/تصورات	imaginable imaginary imaginative	ممكن تخيله خيالى واسع الخيال
incriminate مئا بجريمة	يتهم شذ	crime criminal	جريمة مجرم	criminal	إجرامى
secure	يؤمن	security	أمان/حماية	secure	مامون/مطمئن

<sup>I can't imagine that we lost the cup.
Films help us use our imagination.
The new employee has imaginative thoughts.</sup>

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word Mea	ining	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
connected	متصل	linked/joined	disconnected/detached غیر متصل/منفصل
control	يتحكم في	command/dominate	follow/surrender يتبح/يستسلم
develop	يتطور	advance/flourish	decline/decrease يتدهور
disadvantages	عيوب	demerits/drawbacks	advantages/merits مزایا
empty	يغرغ	clear/evacuate	fill/occupy کیملا
enough	کاف	adequate/sufficient	inadequate/insufficient غير كاف
heating	انتدغدة	warming/boiling	cooling/freezing تبرید/تجمید
illegal	غير قانونى	unlawful/banned/ unauthorised	legal/lawful/authorised قانونی
major	رنیسی	main/primary/leading	minor/secondary/trivial ثانوی/تاغه
safe	أمن	secure/protected	insecure/risky غير آمن/خطير
security	أمن	safety/protection	insecurity/danger عدم الأمان/الخطر

Check Point 1

a) secure

c) security

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b) securing

d) safety

1 We now use to help us communicate with other easily. a) intelligent phones b) smartphones c) smile phones d) start phones 2 Teachers must have the ability to take of their classes. a) contact b) communicate c) control d) connect 3 I thinkis cheaper than staying in expensive hotels. a) visiting b) heating c) climbing d) camping 4 Mohamed Salah is a football player. We are all proud of him. a) worldwide b) international c) local d) minor 5 Mostafa is a officer for one of the most famous companies in Cairo.



Workbook Text

Internet use in Egypt

Every year, more and more people are connected⁽¹⁾ to the internet in Egypt. A recent survey⁽²⁾ found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication⁽³⁾ so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones so they can listen to music or watch films.

Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand⁽⁴⁾ the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried⁽⁵⁾ about security and the possibility that their computer might be hacked⁽⁶⁾.

متصل (1) دراسة حديثة (2)

يفهم (4)

تواصل (3)

قلق (5)

يتعرض للقرصنة (6)

Reading Text

Are you with or against connecting all devices around the world? Why?

The Internet of Things

Linking⁽¹⁾ the world

Communication is no longer(2) about neople talking to one another, but about machines talking to machines. This is known as the Internet of Things (IOT). Technology is developing so fast that experts(3) believe everyone will be connected to the IOT in a few years.



ربط/اتصال (1)

لم يعد (2)

خبراء (3)

تدفئة/تسخين (4)

إضاءة (5)

تفرغ (6)

تخيل (7)

بلا سائق (8)

کھرہی (9)

مجرمون (10)

يخترق/يقرصن (11)

Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. Already, people can control their heating⁽⁴⁾ and lighting⁽⁵⁾ from their phones, but in the future computers will make the decisions for us. They'll even be able to say when the rubbish bins need to be emptied⁽⁶⁾ and control how much water we use!

No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using smartphones, but imagine⁽⁷⁾ if you can get a driverless⁽⁸⁾ car to come and collect you يسبب (12) using an app on your phone. All driverless cars will be electric (9) and much cleaner than petrol ones. Experts think our roads will be safer as there will be

Possible problems

fewer accidents using driverless cars.

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough yet. Computers collect information about people and businesses which criminals(10) can steal. They use this information to hack into(11) organisations like hospitals, power stations and airports, and cause(12) major security problems.

What more do you imagine the IOT may be able to do in the future?

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2

241

Vocabulary in Use



Forms on Vocabulary

on vocabulary	
app	_ تطبيق حاسب آلي
a computer program designed to perform/do a specific ful	nction
communication	_ نظام الاتصالات
systems to send and receive information	
connected	_ متصل
when more than one thing is joined or linked	
hack	اختراق اختراق
when a computer system is broken into illegally	
internet	 شبكة الإنترنت
a worldwide computer network	
security	ــ أمن
to protect a place or person	
smartphone	— التليفون الذكى
a device that can connect to the internet	-
technology	— تكنولوجيا
▶ the use of science to create devices for everyday use	2.00

Notes on Vocabulary

		- Carolina y
j	(be) able to + (inf.) قادر على	Birds are able to fly using their wings.
	قادر على (be) capable of + (v-ing)	Birds are capable of flying using their wings.
1	(have) the ability to + (inf.) لدیه القدرة علی	Birds have the ability to fly using their wings.
1	(someone/something) + enable + (someone/ something) + to + (inf.) ئمكُن من من	• Wings enable birds to fly.

وlectric (adj) عمربائى أى يعمل بالكهرباء (لوصف الأدوات الأجهزة) واectrical (adj)	and a second sec
وهربائي أي يتعامل مع الكهرباء (لوصف الكهرباء (الوصف عطال والأشخاص)	
electricity (n)	We can't do without electricity in our daily life.
electrician (n) هامل فنی کهرباء	• A company needs four electricians to be employed.
electronic (adj) کترونی	The manager sent me an electronic mail yesterday.
experience خبرة (ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة مهارات من خلال عمل معين) (لا تعد)	
ع experiences واقف أو تجارب أو خبرات في الحياة (تُعد)	She had some interesting experiences while she was travelling to many countries.
experiment جربة عملية/علمية (داخل معمل)	Teachers usually do simple experiments in the laboratory.
task مة او عمل صعب او غير محبوب يقوم به شخص	I was given the task of organising the school trip.
4 mission ثــة أو مأموريــة ينتقل فيها الشــخص من نان لمكان آخر للقيام بها	بع . He went on a mission to Japan.
Notes on sentence	es from Listening and Reading Texts
Technology is developing so	fast that experts believe
	تستخدم الصيغة so + adj + that بمعنى (جدًا لدرجة أن).
All driverless cars will be elec	ctric and much cleaner than petrol ones.
	يمكن استخدام much قبل صيغة المقارنة سواء كانت صفة قصيرة أو طويلة.

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 243

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough yet.

في السابق تم دراســة اســتخدام yet في النفى مع زمن المضارع التام ولكن يمكن استخدامها مع أزمنة أخرى مثل المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط.

Many people said that they did want to use the internet when shopping.

يس تخدم الفعــل المســاعد did أو does أو do قبــل المصــدر في الجملة الخبريــة للتأكيد وكلمة when يمكــن أن يتبعها (v-ing) وفي هذه الحالة تساوي while.

Around 50 million people/persons

تأتي كلمة ... hundred, thousand, million, بعد أي رقم بدون إضافة (s) ولكن الاسم الذي يليها يكون دائمًا جمعًا.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	A recentshows that a large percentage of people are getting into
	debt now.

a) survive

b) survey

c) app

- d) bill
- 2 Many on our phones are used to listen to music and watch some videos.
 - a) tabs

b) gaps

c) taps

- d) apps
- 3 I got a/an to install electrical systems in my new flat.
 - a) electricity

b) electrical

c) electrician

- d) physician
- - a) experience

b) experiences .

c) experiment

- d) experts
- 5 My computer is connected the internet to help me with my work.
 - a) with

b) to

c) into

d) up





Vocabulary Exercises

	embering • Understanding	- Analysing	Evaluating • Creating	I think number one is (a),
CI	oose the correct	t answer from a, b, c or	d:	what do you think?
(Key Vocabulary, R	eading, Listening & Wor	kbook Vocabulary	
1	The university a	asked the new students	to bringpho	tos of them.
	a) modern	,	c) recent	d) secure
2		of the causes	of lung diseases.	
	a) minor	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		d) mean
3		nd railway cove		
	a) net	b) circle		
4		thenews. Can		
	a) late		•	d) lately
5		duced in what we call.		Destar an agent
		ns b) energy stations		
6	People like to h	ave many electronic		
	a) cars		c) devices	
7		g to Al-Fayyoum for a		
		* 1	c) recent	
8		Chinese to somehow a		
	a) work	b) mission	c) task	d) profession
9	for the	job should be sent to t	he personnel manage	er.
	a) Applications	b) Communications	c) Developments	d) Movements
10	Nowadays, there	e is little realb		heir children.
	a) comment		b) comparison	
	c) application		d) communication	
11	My account was	easily into as	my password was so	easy.
	a) broken	b) picked	c) hacked	d) backed
12	The children nee	ed the of a stal	ole home environmer	it to be well.
	a) safe	b) security	c) atmosphere	d) liberty
3	Through his spec	ech, I don't think he is	enough to be	e a politician.
	al cmart	b) safe	c) developing	d) empty
4	I am sorry. I didn	't mean to step on you	r foot. It was a/an	*************
	a) chance	b) opportunity	c) incident	a) accident
5	It is hard for sma	II to survive a	t the present time du	ie to the economic
	depression.			
	a) tablets	b) tasks	c) businesses	d) surveys

	16	I don't think tha	t vou have a r	eal	for your o	omplaint. Yo	ou have to go now
£		a) reason	b) cause		c) proce	55	d) both a & b
	17	I have to	my work fo	r mistakes	before I h	and it in.	
l		a) collect	b) create		c) check		d) calculate
	18	l admired the ca	ar so much bu	t I didn't h	nave	money t	o buy it.
1		a) a lot of	b) some		c) enoug	jh	d) a little
į	19	One of the adva	intages of this	job is the	3	working hou	urs.
ı		a) rough	b) tough		c) strict		d) flexible
1	20	A Smartphone I	nas a wide rar	ge of	for b	usiness to u	se. ٢٠٢٢ أولاد على الثانوية بنات
1		a) caps	b) apes		c) abs		d) apps
ì	E	xpressions, Idiom	•				
ŀ					es, Syllon	yillo a Airton	
6.00	21	All driverless ca	rs will be	*********			مدرسة السعيدية ٢٠٢٢
		a) electricity	b) electric		c) electr	ical	d) electrically
2	22	I don't know ho	w some famil	ies live	200	0 pounds a	month.
	9	a) on	b) with		c) at		d) into
	23	We all must wor	k together fo	r the	of our	country.	
ı		a) develop	b) develop	ed	c) devel	oper	d) development
)_	24	We met our old	friends in the	street	acci	dent, so we	were all so happy.
1	05	a) in			c) by		d) for
e e	25	My friends and					elp yesterday.
		a) canc) had the abilit	.,		b) were		
	26					capable of	- 20
	20	which are all ve	ry interesting	. person. i	ne nas din	erent ways t	o illustrate lessons
		a) imaginary	,		c) imagi	nablo	d) imperiment
4.	27	This part of the	form is only	tc.	those wh	o are orpha	d) imaginary
1		a) applicable	b) applicat	ion	c) applic	ant	d) apply
	Ch	oose the Two	correct ans	wers of i	he Five	ntions	и) арріу
		Studying hard a					
	20	a) to	b) with	e) for			·
	20		per to	him if L	a)	by	e) from
	23	l asked my teach	161 to	h) cont	varit to inc		
1		a) connect to	a with	b) cont		•	c) communicate
	20	d) communicate	e with nder floor he:	e) conta	act with	£ 10	
7	30	"heating" are	and	aung, 1511 t	it wonde	rtul? The ant	onyms of the word
,		a) warming	b) cooling		מם או	ما ما - ۱۰	
		a) warring	D, cooming	Sigili	rig a)	deleting	e) freezing



Lessons 1 & 2



Look at those dark clouds; it will probably rain.

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 247

We can use "will" with the following words:

promise – expect – predict – hope – think – believe – perhaps – I'm sure

Scientists predict that we will live on the moon in the future.

I am sure we will be happy when we finish our exams.

For first conditional

If you study hard, you will get high marks.

With some time conjunctions

After/As soon as/Before/until/when/by the time/...

When Samir comes/has come, he will take his brother to the cinema.

We won't send the email until the manager confirms/has confirmed it.

be going to

مصدر الفعل . + (am / is / are) going to + inf.

For future plans, decisions and intentions. فطط مستقبلية وقرارات ونوايا.
We can use "going to" with the following:

(plan – intend – intention – (have) decided – (have) made a decision)

- I am going to buy some clothes online this afternoon.
- A: Why are you turning on the TV?

 B: I'm going to watch the news.
- I am going to study medicine. That's my plan.
- I have decided to travel. I am going to travel to London.
- Watch out! You are going to fall in the hole.

ولكن لاحظ الحملة التالية:

- Watch out or you will be robbed.
- Por predictions with evidence

التنبؤ بدليل.

- Look at the sky. It is going to rain.
- She is pregnant. She is going to have a baby.
- Something is about to happen

شيء على وشك الحدوث

- Look! He is going to win the race.
- Be careful! The child is going to fall to the ground.

Usage

الاستخدام

Important Notes



١) لاحظ الجمل الثالبة:

promise - expect - predict ... + will + inf.

He promises he will do his best to come first.

promised – expected – predicted ... + would + inf.

He promised he would do his best to come first.

أما مع عدم وجود فاعل أو إذا كانت تتبع بمفعول نستخدم بعدها (.to + inf).

He promises/promised me to do his best to come first.

٢) يتم استخدام Will غالبنا للتفاصيل والتعليقات على الحدث.

-) I am going on holiday. I will be away for a week.
-) am going to do some walking. Oh, that'll be nice.

٢) لاحظ الحمل التالية:

- Liverpool is a very good team. I think it will win the final match. (تنبؤ قائم على رأى شخصي)
- These players are very big. I think the match is going to be very difficult.

(تنبؤ قائم على دليل مرثى)

Check Point (3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I expect hehis exams easily.
 - a) would pass

b) is passing

c) will pass:

- d) is going to pass
- 2 Sallyher friends soon. That's her plan.
 - a) is meeting

b) is going to meet

c) meets

- d) will meet
- 3 She is travelling to Paris tomorrow. She the Eiffel Tower.

a) will probably visit

b) is probably going to visit

c) is going visiting

- d) probably visits
- 4 If you are too busy to clean your room, Iit for you.

a) am going to clean

b) are cleaning

c) would clean

- d) will clean
- 5 How oldnext month?
- b) will you be

a) are you going to be

d) would you be

c) are you being



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 249



Language Exercises

	Rem	nembering • Understanding	Applying Analysing	Evaluating	I think number one is (d),	
ĺ	C	oose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	ien, t it s	
١	4	The twins	seventeen next we	ek. What presents wi	Il we have for a	
	į	a) turning	b) turn	c) are going to tur	n d) will turn	
ı	2	? Tomorrow. I	the match with n	ny friend. I have inter	ided to do that	
,	1	a) will watch		b) am watching	Jan 30 do triat.	
ı	9	c) watching		d) am going to watch		
	3		less driver! He			
	1		b) is going to crash			
1	4	Iin the	hospital where I have	applied for the traini	ng post.	
١	ž	a) am probably	working	b) will probably we		
J	9	c) am probably of	going to work	d) would probably	work	
	5	That's the phone	a. I answer it.	·	مة العينية - المعينية - المعينية -	
		a) will	b) am going to	c) shall	d) could	
	6	I have applied for	or the job and I hope I.	it.		
Ď		a) will get		b) am getting		
	_	c) get		d) am going to get		
	7	· ····································	car to travel around Lo	ondon as planned.		
	0/	a) am going to	b) may	c) would	d) will	
	8	l am sure it	an exciting match			
		a) is going to be	b) is		d) will be	
	9	The ceiling of thi	s room doesn't look ve	ery safe. It looks as if i	tdown,	
			b) is going to fall		d) falls	
	10		iny plans for the week			
ľ			riends on Saturday m			
Ø	4.4	a) will meet	b) am going to meet	c) meet	d) will be met	
ı	77	A: I'm going on n	oliday to Europe this	October. Should I tak	e an umbrella?	
,		B: Yes, perhaps it				
Į.	10	a) is raining	b) will rain	c) probably rains	d) rains	
ı	12	a) will send	oice in the class or yo			
		•	nd	b) will be sent		
Š.	40	c) are going to se	nat Moustafa	d) are going to be s	ent	
1	13	a) is going to get				
	1/1	Look! He		c) is getting	d) would get	
1	14	a) will fall	b) is going to fall	c) falls		
1	15	•	lunch with m	-	d) has fallen	
	13	a) will have	b) am having		D 111	
		WIN HOVE	w, airi naving	c) am going to have	e di would have	

16	Be careful or youyour finger.		مدرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات٢٠٢٢
	a) Will Cut b) are going to cut	c) are cutting	d) cut
17	I am the first one who congratulated A	li His hirthday	tomorrow.
			مدرسة بني محمد سلطان - المنيا٢٠٢
	a) is going to be b) is being	c) will be	d) will have been
18	My brother is saving money, he	a now bike	W/ Will have a
,-	a) is buying b) is going buying	a new bike.	d) is going to buy
10	I think my brothera doctor. Al	Left was adjet that	u) is going to 24)
10	a) will be b) is going to be	of us predict that.	d) would be
20		c) is being	u) Would be
20	Our team are attacking hard. They		
	c) are scoring	b) will score	
04		d) score	
21	We expected that our teamth	e match versus Cam	eroon.
	a) will wise to the term of th	\ 1 II ·	مدرسة الفتح - الباجور - المنوفية ٢٠٢٠ حثيم لم المحيد الم
	a) will win b) 're going to win	c) shall win	d) would win
22	A: Why are you turning on the television	on?	
	B: Isome educational program	_	
	a) will watch	b) am watching	. 1
	c) will be watched	d) am going to wa	_
23	My friend is very intelligent. I think, he		ıly.
	a) is going to passing	b) will pass	
	c) is passing	d) would pass	
24	I am studying medicine. Ia do	octor.	D 1 11 1
	a) will be b) am going to be	c) am being	d) shall be
25	It was predicted that our school	in the competition	n.
	a) would participate	b) is going to parti	-
	c) is participating		iting
26	The train to Alexandria leaves at 10 o'c	lock. This is according	g to
	a) intention b) quick decision	c) prediction	d) timetable
27	Will you open the window, Medhat? Th	nis sentence expresse	es a/an
	a) offer b) request	c) intention	d) threat
28	Today is Thursday so tomorrow	be Friday.	إدارة المقطم والخليفة - القاهرة٢٠٢٢
	a) is going b) is	c) WIII	d) is going to
29	Which of the following sentences is wi	rong?	
1	a) I promise I will study hard.		
ì	b) The sky is cloudy. I think it is going t	to rain.	
	c) Be careful or you are falling.		
	d) Louise will be 40 next month.		
30	Auto L. Col following contences is CU	rrect?	
	March will marry again. He has uec	luca to do triat.	
	LANCE LANCE BOYCH HO WILL CHANGE	, ilialiks.	
,	d) Mona will probably attend the party	y tomorrow.	
	will probably access		

Test Yourself "Control of the Test Yourself"



Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2

Evaluating Remembering Analysing Understanding Applying Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 The telephone lines are down, so are very difficult in this area. d) conversations b) communications c) contacts a) connections 2 There was no evidence that the suspect was with the crime. d) connected c) collected a) contacted b) communicated 3 was tightened at the airport before the Prime Mnister arrived. c) Community d) Insecurity a) Security **b)** Maturity 4 The word "satnav" is short for اختصار لـ satellite a) navigation d) nave c) naval b) navy 5 The new project is expected to at least 2000 new jobs for the youth. d) develop a) consume c) control b) create 6 There have been major new developments in satellite a) psychology d) technology b) physiology c) biology a) hack b) hacked c) hacker d) hacks 8 We can warm up the room quite quickly with this fire. a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electrician 9 My family promised me out today for passing my exams. a) would take b) are going to take c) to take d) will take 10 This year, I am going on holiday with my family to Italy. I am sure Iit. a) are enjoying c) are going to enjoy d) should enjoy b) will enjoy 11 A: We haven't got any tea. B: OK. I some. a) am going to get b) am getting c) will get d) would get a) am being **b)** am going to be c) have been d) will be 13 Don't come late again or I punish you. a) are going to b) shan't c) are gone to d) will 14 Look over there! They off their bikes. b) are going to fall a) are falling c) will fall d) fall

1	5 He is filling the	bucket with water	. He the car.			
	a) will wash		b) washes			
0.	c) has washed		d) is going to wa	sh		
1	6 I expect my son	high mark	s in the exam.			
	a) gets	b) will get	c) is getting	d) will be getting		
2	Read the followin	g passage, then a	nswer the questions:			
			to cut down on their fo	ood expenses.		
	Since the early 1970s, the cost of food has gone up faster than the cost of all					
			Townston families it sur			

Since the early 1970s, the cost of food has gone up faster than the cost of all commodities⁽¹⁾ and services. For all Egyptian families, it swallows more than half the budget of millions of low-income families. The increase has mounted to more than 300%. People suffer from the high prices of food a lot. Is it the fate of low-income families to face starvation⁽²⁾? You can reduce your food expenses at least 20% by observing the following pieces of advice. Note the food items you need when your supplies run low. Group the same kind of food together and write a list of your needs. Use your list as you shop and don't buy any items which are not included on the list. Food is sold nowadays in different forms: fresh, canned and frozen. Choose the cheapest and healthiest ones. For vegetarians, who never eat beef or poultry, they can buy fresh vegetables instead of frozen ones because they are cheaper and healthier. Chickens are cheaper than red meat. You can have cheese, beans and eggs instead of meat. One last bit of advice, "Don't go shopping on an empty stomach". Shopping when you are hungry tempts you to buy things you don't really need.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

न्	2	(2) محا	ı		
	a) all the food c) only healthy and cheap food	b) frozen food d) canned food			
2	2 As food is the biggest item in the Egyptian family budget, people				
1	The underlined word "it" in the seconal the budget c) commodities	nd paragraph refers tob) food d) services			

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 253

3 To attract or make someone want to do or have something is to					
	a) refuse	b) distract			
	c) tempt	d) reject			
4	Those who don't eat meat are	e called			
	a) meat eaters	b) vegetarians			
	c) vegetables	d) vegetation			
5	It's advisable not to go shopp	oing while you are			
	a) angry	b) hungry			
	c) sad	d) happy			
6	Writing a list of what you nee				
	a) useless	b) expensive			
	c) important	d) a waste of time			
7		ses" means to spend on buying food.			
	a) many	b) much			
	c) less	d) more			
8	According to the passage, red	·			
	a) cheaper than	b) more expensive than			
	c) as expensive as	d) as cheap as			
A) To	anglete into Avahia				
A) Translate into Arabic: 1. Scientists make discoveries and advances which help us to cope ⁽¹⁾ with the					
		and advances which help us to cope" with the			
	changes in our world.				
2		d for building new factories, improving health			
	care and solving the probler	ns of housing ⁽²⁾ and transport.			
3	• Modern technology plays ar	n important role in the progress of industry,			
	agriculture, education, medicine and surgery(3).				
B) Tra	anslate into English:				
_,	_	- يجب على كل فرد تعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر والإنترنت لأن الحياة أصبحا			
		من من من من من من من من من من من من من م			
g004		حل فرد تعم مسرت			

,	***************************************	***************************************	******************	**************
	وما عليهم من واجبات ⁽⁹⁾ .	. فيما لهم من حقوق ⁽⁸⁾	ى أبناء الوطن الواحد	طنة ⁽⁷⁾ هى أن يتساور
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	***************************************		***************************************	***************************************
How to	translate			
بليزية.	بد من وضعه في الجملة الإنج	ن الفعل (يكون) ولكن لا	مكن أن نستغنى عر	لجملة العربية من الم
	Scien	ce is a double-	edged weapo	م سلاح ذو حدينnn
	تها إلى اللغة الإنجليزية.	ن قبلها the عند ترجما	، التى لا تجمع لا يأتر	ماء المعنوية والأسماء
	Нарр	iness is a pricel		
				- فعل مضارع يقابله ،
				+ فعل مضارع يقابله
			inf alasta	فعل مضارع بقابله م
he pros and	of about ONE HUN d cons of modern te ations concerning fo	chnology.	TY (150) word	
he pros and	d cons of modern te	DRED AND FIFT echnology.	TY (150) word	
he pros and	d cons of modern te	DRED AND FIFT echnology.	TY (150) word	
he pros and	d cons of modern te	DRED AND FIFT echnology.	TY (150) word	
he pros and	d cons of modern te	DRED AND FIFT echnology.	TY (150) word	
The pros and	d cons of modern te	DRED AND FIFT echnology.	TY (150) word	
he pros and	d cons of modern te	DRED AND FIFT echnology.	TY (150) word	
he pros and	d cons of modern te	DRED AND FIFT echnology.	TY (150) word	
he pros and	d cons of modern te	DRED AND FIFT echnology. uture communi	cations.	
he pros and	d cons of modern te	DRED AND FIFT echnology.	TY (150) word	

Study 1

Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

link (n)	رابط
hacking (n)	القرصنة (على الإنترنت)
B (1886)	تحميل برمجيات خبيثة/ضارة
downloading malwa	are (n)
download (n) (v) – ed	تحميل/يحمل من الإنترنت d
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر/التسلط الإلكتروني
click (v) – ed	يضغط على (رابط)
antivirus software (r	برنامج مضاد للفيروسات (١

lock (v) – ed	قلفي
password (n)	كلمة المرور
phishing (n)	التصيد/الاحتيال
posting photos	نشر الصور
scam [†] (n)	احتيال
uploading personal detai	
على الإنترنت	رفع بيانات شخصية :

Don't reply to this email; it may be a soam.

Vocabulary on Reading

abilities (n)	قدرات
على موقع إلكتروني) account (n)	حساب (بنکی/ء
address (n)	عنوان
advert = advertisement (n)	إعلان
bank account (n)	حساب بنكى
change (v) – d	يغير
details (n)	تفاصيل
embarrassing (adj)	محرج
experience (n) (v) – d /یجرب	تجربة شخصية

free (adj) = free of charge = for free			
furious (adj)	غاضب جدًا		
happen (v) – ed	يحدث		
join (v) – ed	يلتحق بـ/ينضم إلى		
properly (adv)	تمامنا		
recognise (v) – d	يعرف/يمير		
socialise (v) – d	يختلط (اجتماعينًا)		
support (v) – ed	مدعم		
website (n)	موقع إنترنت		

Vocabulary on Listening

almost (adv)	تقريبا
bully (v)y ied	يتنمر
careful (adj)	حريص
comment (n) (v) – ed	تعليق/يعلق
credit card (n)	كارت ائتمان
data (n)	بيانات
delete (v) – d	يمسح
employment (n)	توظیف
excited (adj)	فرحان/مبتهج
funny (adj)	مضدك

google (v) – d	يبحث على محرك البحث (جوجل)
horrible (adj)	فظيع
impossible (adj)	مستحيل
kids (n)	أطفال/صغار
post (n) (v) – ed	منشور/ينشر (على الإنترنت)
really (adv)	حقًا
rude (adj)	وقح/قليل الأدب
scary (adj)	مخيف
surprise (v) – d	يندهش
ugly (adj)	قبيح الشكل

Vocabulary on Reading

allow (v) – ed	يسمح
(be) in trouble (v)	يكون في ورطة
believe (v) – d	يصدق
dishonest (adj)	محادع/محتال
document (n)	وثيقة

frighten (v) – ed	يرعب/يخيف
provide (v) – d	يزود
steal (v)	يسرق
trick (v) – ed	يخدع
unwanted (adj)	غير مرغوب فيه

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

build friendships	يبنى صداقات	
complete a form	يكمل/يملأ استمارة	
do it online	يفعل شيئا على الإنترنت	
get for free	يحصل على شيء مجانا	
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	
advert for	إعلان لـ	
comment about	تعليق على	
complete with	یکمل ب	
delete from	يمسح من	
plenty of	وفرة من	
keep a note of	يحتفظ بملحوظة من	
look like	يبدو كانه	
on the internet	على الإنترنت	

safe place for	مكان آمن لـ
stay safe online	يبقى آمننا على الإنترنت
read about	يقرأعن
socialise with	يختلط اجتماعينا مع
steal from	يسرق من
think about	يفكر في
worried about	قلق بشأن
write about	نه بتكي
in details	بالتفصيل
make comments on	يعلق على
careful about/with	حريص على
click on	ينقر على
rude to	وقح مع

Derivatives

Ver	b	Nou	n.	Adject	ive
account J	يمثل/يشرح/يعا	account accountant accountancy	حساب/رصید محاسب علم المحاسبة	accountable مسئول/ممکن تفسیرہ	
allow	يسمح	allowance	إجازة/أجر /مصروف		
care	يعتنى	care carer	رعاية/عناية راعٍ (مقدم الرعاية)	careful caring	۔ حذر/حریص مهتم
embarrass	يحرج/يربك	embarrassment	إحراج	embarrassed embarrassing	محرج/خجلان مخجل/مربك
employ	يعين/يوظف	employee employer employment unemployment	موظف صاحب العمل عمالة بطالة	unemployed employable	عاطل عن العمل قادر على العمل

* - Dad never embarrasses me.

258

He knows well that embarrassment will harm my feelings.
 My cheeks get red when I'm embarrassed.

enable	يتمكن	ability inability disability	قدرة عجز/عدم القدرة إعاقة	able unable disabled	قا <i>در</i> عاجڑ معاق
frighten	ىغىغى	fright	خوف/هلع	frightened frightening frightful	خائف/مذعور مخیف/مرعب کریه/بغیض
		fury	غضب/سخط	furious	غاضب/ثائر
trick	يخدع/يحتال	trick trickery trickster	خدعة مراوغة/تحايل مخادع/محتال	tricky trick	خادع مخادع

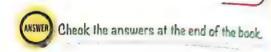
(Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

You can make your own notes and mind maps to remember them.

Word Me	aning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
careful	حربص	cautious/concerned	غیر حریص/معمل careless/incautious
change	يغير	alter/adjust	preserve/remain يحفظ/يظل
embarrassing	محرج	awkward/uncomfortable	elegant/convenient غير محرج/مناسب
employ	يوظف	hire/enlist/retrain	fire/discharge يفصل من العمل
free	مجاني	without charge/costless	مكلف costly/valuable/pricey
funny	مضدك	comical/humorous	serious/unfunny جاد/غیر مضحك
furious	غاضب جذًا	very angry/raging/boiling	calm/quiet هادئ
horrible	فظيع	unpleasant/awful	attractive/pleasant جذاب
lock	يغلق	close/shut	open/unlock يفتح
personal	شخصى	private/individual	عام/شائع public/common
scary	مخيف	frightening/terrifying	normal/calming طبیعی/ممدئ
socialise (ಟ್ಲೇ	يختلط (اجتما	mix/mingle	dissociate/separate ينفصل اجتماعينا
ugly	قبيح	unattractive/bad-looking	beautiful/pretty جميل

Check Point (1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 To open any file, juston the menu icon. a) pick d) clip c) click b) trick 2 The government salaries are now transferred to the employees' bank a) maths d) amounts c) boxes b) accounts 3 Several peopleon my last post. I was very happy with what they said. a) commented c) completed d) clicked b) excited 4 Please, walk quietly so that you don'tthe birds away. a) frightening d) frighten b) frightened c) fright 5 I think it was of them not to phone and say that they weren't coming. a) wonderful d) excited b) rude c) scared



Reading Text

What is a password, and why do you need one when you go online?

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert⁽¹⁾ for a free game. I clicked⁽²⁾ on the link and wrote my name, address and some bank details⁽³⁾. When I tried to download the game, nothing happened. It was a scam⁽⁴⁾!

My dad was furious⁽⁵⁾ because they stole money from his bank account⁽⁶⁾ and my computer stopped working properly⁽⁷⁾! Don't click on links you don't recognise⁽⁸⁾ and never give your personal details on a strange website. Oh, and remember to use antivirus software to stop thieves!

إعلان (1)

بنقر (2)

تفاصيل (3)

احتيال (4)

غاضب (5)

حساب بنکی (6)

بشكل مناسب (7)

يتعرف على (8)

How does he suggest you oan stay safe?

Listening Text





*Last week, I was reading about a new online game and saw an advert(1) that said I could get this game for free(2). All I had to do was complete a form(3) with my name, email address and credit card(4) details. I don't have a credit card, but I sometimes use my dad's card to buy things. Of course it was a scam(5). They just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.



مجائنا (2)

استمارة (١٦)

كارت ائتمان (4)

حيلة/خدعة [1]

أرياب العمل (6)

نشر (7)

يبحث في جوجل (8)

مخيف (9)

يزيل (١٥٠)

فظيع ١١١)

مراهقون (12)

2

Laila

I'm leaving school this year and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that employers⁽⁶⁾ often look online to see what we've posted⁽⁷⁾, so I decided to google⁽⁸⁾ my name to see what they might find. It was scary⁽⁹⁾. All the photos and the 'funny' comments I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't delete them. I didn't realise it's almost impossible to remove⁽¹⁰⁾ personal data from the internet.



Saeed

People write really horrible(11) things about other teenagers(12). One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of rude comments(13) about how he looked and how ugly his bike is. I couldn't believe it! These kids would never, never bully my friend at school, so why do it online? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now!

Why do people need to be careful when using the internet?

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

antivirus software

برامج ضد الفيروسات

software that removes unwanted programs from a computer

click

ينقر

what you can do to go to another page online

cyberbullying

· التسلط عبر الإنترنت

when someone is threatened by another person using electronic communication like email

downloading

تحميل من الانترنت

when someone transfers information from the internet to their computer

hacking

اختراق/قرصنة

using a computer to break into another computer system, such as a bank

link

رابط

a place in an electric document that takes you to another page or website

- lock

قفل/يقفل

what you can do to stop other people using your phone or social media accounts

malware

برمجيات خبيثة

computer program or software that is harmful to a computer system

password

كلمة المرور

a secret group of letters or numbers that you must type into a computer before you can use a system or program

phishing

احتبال/تصيد

tricking someone into giving information or money over the internet or by email

posting photos

نشر صور عبر مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي

when someone transfers one of their photos from their phone or computer to social media

unknown files

حيل أو خدع

dishonest schemes by someone to get money from another person

uploading personal details

تحميل بيانات شخصية

when someone adds their name, address and other personal details to an internet site

Notes on Vocabulary

allow + مفعول + to + inf.

ا المحمل السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح السمح

allow + v-ing/noun يسمح بـ allowed playing here.

scam

The email was only a scam to take my money.

skim

l usually skim the newspapers in the morning. 🏓 يقرا أو يتصفح سريعنا لمعرفة الفكرة الرئيسية

فقط دون تفاصيل

scan

We scanned the list until we found our friend's

.name يفحص أو يتصفح بدقة للبحث عن شيء محيد

download ... from

onto my computer. يحمل أو ينزل من الإنترنت

If I like anything on the internet, I download it

upload ... to

When I finished my research, I uploaded it to

the internet. يرفع على الإنترنت

unload

He parked his vehicle and began to unload it.

يقوم بتفريغ الحمولة (سيارة مثلًا)

upgrade

You must upgrade your computer version as it is very old. يرقى - يصعد (من أقل لأعلى)

update

You must update your computer programs more often.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

I saw an advert for a free game./I could get this game for free.

My computer stopped working properly.

عندمـا يأتــى بعد الفعل stop فعل مضاف إليه ing تكون بمعنى توقف عن عمل الشــىء أما إذا جاء بعدها. to + inf فمعناها نوقف من أجل عمل الشيء.

▶ He was listening to the radio, but he stopped to answer the phone.

Sometimes teenagers experience bullying different opinions and experiences.

كلهة experience جاءت في الجملة الأولى كفعل بمعنى يمارس و في الجملة الثانية جاءت اسمـًا بمعنى تجربة.

You have plenty of information.

ستندم كلمة plenty of قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد بمعنى مزيد من أو وفرة من.

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

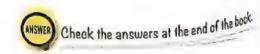
- 1 Children under five usually travelon trains.
 - a) freelance
- **b)** freely
- c) free

- d) freedom
- 2 To get information about my project, I decided to it to see what I will find.
 - a) goggle
- b) google
- c) log

- d) download
- 3 It was muchdriving through the desert at night.
 - a) scar
- b) scared
- c) scare
- d) scary
- 4 I like my children to spend time talking andwith people to build new friends. a) social
 - b) sociable

- 5 You must be careful when you files from the internet.
- c) socialise
- d) socialising

- a) download
- b) upload
- c) overload
- d) upgrade







Vocabulary Exercises

cho	ose the correct answer from a, b, c or ey Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Work	d:	I think number one is (b), what do you think?
1	You must the car when you lea a) look b) lock	ve it. It is not safe here	d) locker
	There is a strong between lung a) link b) connect	c) communication	d) website
	When people began fighting each othe a) relaxingb) exciting	c) lovely	d) ugly
4	You should give of your educatorm.	tion and experience	on the application
E	a) components b) documents It is known that fame always	c) accounts eople, but not my fath	d) details ner!
	a) exchanges b) changes Children like to new games and m	c) charges	d) challenges
	a) upload b) download	c) downside	d) destroy
7	The email said it was from a bank, but w	۲.	إدارة المنتزه التعليمية - الإسكندرية ٢٦
8	a) software b) lock The streets have changed so much sir	nce I last visited my	
9	a) recognise b) know دخيل so	c) realise ftware developed by	d) understand cybercriminals to
	steal data from computers. a) Software b) Hardware	c) Malware	d) System
	is sending messages online to	(Cyberbullying	d) Shoplifting
11	Yesterday, I got up late, missed my train	, lost my mobile and i	injured my leg.
10	a) incredible b) horrified The we have on our computer	c) terrified and mobiles is very ir	d) horrible nportant.
	We mustn't lose it.	c) data	d) accounts
13	and hacking technologies have	made it possible to s	teal users' accounts
	and misuse their private information. a) Fishing b) Skimming on "next" when you have finish b) Load b) Load	c) Scanning	d) Phishing n. بدارة قويسنا التعليمية

ľ	1	5 When yo	u want to rem	ove unwanted	d programmes fror	n your computer
R		you can i	install an	******		TOTT degand . 2
8		a) antivir	us b) an	tibiotic	c) anticipation	d) anticlimax
ı	1	6 I have to	this o	ld version of \	Mindows to enjoy i	naving more program
ı						
9	1	7 Lusually j	iust th	rough the ne	wspaper in the mo	orning. I read headlines,
1		a) skim	b) sca	ım	c) scan	d) count
U.	1	B	means putting	photographs	online.	
ı		a) Posting			b) Downloadin	g malware
				etails	d) Antivirus sof	tware
ı,						
		Expressions	, Idioms, Prepos	sitions, Deriva	tives, Synonyms & A	Intonyms
ı.	19	You must	a note	e of everythin	g you hear from yo	our teachers.
		a) make		,		d) keep
1	20		change beg	gan in the 198		
			e b) soc			d) socialism
2	21					ole and talking to them.
			b) soc			d) socialism
2	22	*			mpany in Alexand	ria.
						d) accountant
2	23	Leen	her mothe	r in her appea	arance and lifestyle	2.
		a) looks lik	e b) likes	5	c) is like	d) a & c
2	4	The magic	ian performed	a in	which he made a r	abbit disappear.
		a) tricky	b) trick	ster	c) trick	d) truck
2	5	I saw some	adverts	different j	obs in Cairo and Al	exandria.
		a) with	b) for		c) on	d) from
2	6	Spending t	oo much time	the	internet is harmful	to your mental and
		physical he	ealth.			
		a) on	b) in		c) at	d) with
C	h	oose the T	wo correct a	nswers of t	he Five options	•
			wa ch			
_	•					v al anyone to hully
			•			y e) anyone to bully
2	3	• •			an appli	
			b) complete		•	e) complete in
29	9	•		-	out work? The wor	d "funny" is
		the antonyr	m of the words	and	\$44499999444-60088bee #	
					us d) attractive	•
30)			n your exams.	The antonyms of t	the word "careful"
		are	. and			
		a) careless	b) incautious	c) raging	d) painstaking	a) nleasant



Lessons 3 & 4



Language

Future forms

1)

Present Continuous

المضارع المستمر

(am, is, are) + v + ing

استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل.

🛈 To talk about things that you have arranged. المسبقا.

- I have already booked the tickets; we are travelling abroad next Friday.
- I am meeting my friends in the club tomorrow evening.

Usage الاستخدام



- (المناسـبات الاجتماعية أو الأنشـطة التى تقوم بها المؤسسـات مسـتقبلًا تحتاج إلى ترتيبات ... لذا تستخدم مع زمن المضارع المستمر)

We can use "present continuous" with the following:

(arrange - make arrangements - prepare)

Amira is visiting her aunt; she has arranged everything.

- عدم القدرة على فعل شيء في المستقبل تعنى وجود ترتيبات لفعل شيء آخر.

I can't attend your wedding tomorrow. I'm travelling with my father to France.

2)

Present Simple

المضارع البسيط

استخدام المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل.

جدول المواعيد الثابتة.

For timetables (Schedules).

The train to Tanta leaves at 6.30 tomorrow morning.

The English lesson starts at 2.30.

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4 267

3) Future Continuous (will be + v.ing)

المستقبل المستمر

حيث سوف يكون مستمرًّا في وقت محدد في المستقبل

- Ali will be playing a match with his friends this time tomorrow.
- At 5 tomorrow I will be sleeping.

4) Future Perfect (will have + P.P.)

المستقبل التام

حيث سوف يكتمل حدوثه قبل وقت معين في المستقبل أو في خلال فترة معينة.

- In two hours, we will have finished our work.
- By 2025, I will have graduated from Tanta University.

Important Notes



لاحظ: استخدام .be about to + inf لحدث في المستقبل القريب.

- The audience are in their seats, and the performance is about to start.
- Hurry up. The coach is about to leave.

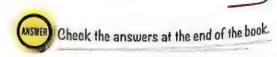
أيضًا من الممكن استخدام be + to + inf. للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الترتيبات.

The Prime Minister is to watch the final match in the stadium.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 |my next summer holiday in Marina. | have arranged everything.
 - a) have spent
- b) spend
- c) am spending
- d) will spend
- 2 According to the timetable, our exams in May.
 - a) start
- b) starts
- c) will start
- d) are starting
- - a) am meeting
- b) will meet
- c) meet
- d) meeting
- 4 He to America tomorrow. He's got the tickets.
 - a) will fly
- b) is flying
- c) flies

- d) is going to fly
- 5 Marwan married next week. Everything is arranged.
 - a) will get
- b) is going to get
- c) is getting
- d) gets





Language Exercises

	Rodib	- soul - market			
a Reif	embering Understanding Applying	Analysing	Evaluating	Creating	I think number one is (a),
1 -	oose the correct answer fr	om a, b, c	or d:		WALLE ALL
Ch	We in the forest n	ovt Friday	Everythin	na is prepared	1.
1	We In the lorest in	oing to cal	mp c) are	camping	d) would camp
4	a) will camp b) are go According to the timetable	offig to car	n c, a.e.	at 12 p.m.	,
2		e, the exam	b) fin	ishes	
	a) finish		d) is c	oing to finish	
	c) will finish I Mr David tomori	ow morni	ng He ha	s accepted my	y invitation and
3	I Mr David tomori	OW HIGH	ng. He na	,	
	booked a flight.		h) am	meeting	
į	a) meet		d) am	going to me	et
1	c) will meet Look at the schedule! The f	Guet train to	o Acwan	at 5.0	0 a.m.
4	Look at the schedule! The i	ina	c) is a	oing to leave	d) will leave
,	a) leaves	ing ing a mato	morrow.	- · · · · ·	النازة عوب المرتثريني - الشرقية ٢٠٠٠
5	This museum at 9	:00 a.m. to	b) ope	ens	
	a) will open		-Nic a	oing to open	
	c) open Wea party for my da	uahter's Si	uccess tor	norrow, Wou	ld you like to come?
6	Wea party for my da a) are having b) going	to have	c) wou	ıld have	d) has
).)	a) are having b) going A: Are you leaving this ever	ning? R: Ye	s. my trai	n at	7.15.
7	A: Are you leaving this ever	illig: D. i	b) leav	/es	
4	a) is going to leave		النبعدال	he leaving	
,	c) will leave Dina can't see her friends th	is afterno	on. She	her mo	other in the kitchen.
8	# \ 1 1 m				
	a) is helping b) helps I my uncle at the a	irnort at si	x oʻclock.	Everything is	arranged.
9	my uncle at the a	etina	c) will	meet	d) meet
	a) going to meet b) am me Amalher birthday	narty next	week. Sh	e has made a	lot of preparations.
10		purcy riexe	b) will	give	
	a) gives			oing to give	
	c) is giving This train exactly a	t 10 30 in		-	إدارة القناطر - القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
11	- Navino	1	c) is lea	aving	d) leaves
12	Salwa to London no	ext week.	Her fliaht	leaves at 7 in	the evening.
12	a) going to fly b) is flying	1	c) will h	nave flown	d) would fly
13	I to London next Fr	idav. Every			مدرسة السعيدية - الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
	a) will travel	,)	b) am	going to trave	el
	c) am travelling		d) trave		

	14	When he arrives, Idir	nner with him. I have just de	cided.
		a) am having b) would ha	eve c) have	d) will have
	15	He will introduce us to his friend	nds as soon as we	
		a) arrived b) will arrive	e c) arriving	d) have arrived
	16	I hope all my dreams	in life.	
		a) will achieve b) would ac	hieve c) to achieving	d) to achieve
	17	I my father what you	said. I promise.	
		a) won't tell	b) am not going t	to tell
		c) am not telling	d) don't tell	
	18	I can't meet you tonight becau	use I my brother at	the airport.
j				إدارة شرق المحلة - الغربية ٢٠٢٢
		a) am meeting b) will meet	c) had met	d) going to meet
ľ	19	Somebody is knocking on the		
		a) am going b) would go		
l	20	your work یکدس Stop piling up		ail.
		a) will b) would	c) are going to	d) will be
ŀ	21	Hany to France tomor	row. He's got the ticket.	مدرسة الكويت - إدارة المنتزه - الإسكندرية
Ĭ		a) is going to travel	b) is travelling	·
		c) will travel	d) travels	
		Al-Ahly is a very good team. It .	the match.	
0		a) would win b) is going to	o win c) will win	d) are winning
	23	It is predicted that ordinary peo	ple on space holidays	in the next fifty years.
		a) are going b) are going		d) will be going
ı	24	Are you tennis after so	•	
l		a) going to play	b) played	
0		c) play	d) probably playin	g
ľ	25	I that mountain one da		
	-	a) am climbing b) am going		d) will climb
	26	Look, the sky is really dark, I		1)
	07	a) will be staying b) will be stay		d) will stay
	21	Everything is prepared for my si		nis means that
		a) my sister will marry next wee		
		b) my sister is going to marry no		
		c) my sister is getting married n	ext week	
	28	 d) my sister marries next week Jana is about to sleep soon. This 	maans that	
	20	a) she will sleep soon		l
		c) she is sleeping soon	b) she is going to s	ieep soon
	29	I'm going to attend the conferer	d) she sleeps soon	- i /
		a) future fact b) intention	c) threat	e is a/aii·
	30	Ramy will join the Faculty of Me	dicina This contanta is a face	a) promise
	-	a) intention b) plan	c) prediction	d) fact
		,	• DIEGICHOH	

Studu

Lessons 3 & 4



General Skills

للمرود والشرح والتنوان يرجي الرجوع لعلدة العطالان.



(I) Writing

A reflective essay

. It is an essay in which the writer examines his/her experiences in life.

- مقال التدبر يكتب فيه الكاتب عن خبراته وتجاربه في الحياة وكيفية الاستفادة من هذه التجارب. ويتكون من:

1. Introduction المقدمة:

It should be more direct to explain what experience that he/she will talk about.

2. The body الموضوع:

It explains how the writer has changed or what he/she has learned. What things caused him/her to change.

3. Conclusion الخاتمة:

The writer sums up why the change is beneficial and how it will affect him/her in the future.

A blog

It is a personal website in which a person can write about his/her personal life and make comments.

The problems children might have with the internet.

Children, who are among the most active internet users, are unfortunately subject to a number of threats and problems. If you allow your children to spend much time surfing the web, it's important to know what threats they face to be able to deal with. The most common problems that face children are loneliness, depression and anxiety. Parents should be aware of what their kids see and hear on the internet. Also, who they meet and what they share about themselves. You must talk with your children, using tools to protect them and keep an eye on their activities. They must never post or reveal personal information such as addresses or phone numbers.

sciden Question—

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- Taha Hussein wrote about his life and descr	ribed his suffering i	n his book "Al Ayyam".
This kind of writing is called		d) autobigraphy

- a) descriptive
- b) narrative
- c) biography
- d) autobigraphy

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4 271

Test Yourself 1000



Unit 5

Lessons 3 & 4

Reme	mbering Understanding	Applying Analysing	Evaluating Creating	
0	hoose the correct	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
	All drivers should	d really know how to		
	a) buy	b) change		d) have
2		ur colleague Adel to	overcome his seriou	is disease
	a) support	b) allow	c) give	d) lot
3	Computer	has become a glob	nal threat alle was	a) let
	It leads to a lot o	f problems	السييد عاصل المادين	over the last decade.
	a) downloading	b) uploading	e) backing	
4	You need to up	date your	C) nacking	d) account
	viruses on your c	computer	oftware regularly to	look for and remove
_	The largest same	b) antivirus	c) antibiotic	d) antibodies
3	The largest comp	pany in our town has	600 .	
	a) employers	b) employments	c) employees	d) employable
6	The special word	you need before you	ı can sign in a Faceb	oook account is
	called a			
	a) key	b) secret	c) passport	d) password
7	Inever. m	y students to waste t	their time. I always e	encourage them.
- a	a) let	b) make	c) allow	d) prevent
8	Peaders can	the author's lates	t novel to read on a	computer or tablet
	a) upload	b) unload	c) offload	d) download
9	I can't watch the f	film in the cinema wit	th you as it a	t 6.30 and I have work
	at this time.			a sist and thate work
	a) will be started	b) starts	c) is going to star	t d) is starting
10		your friend to	omorrow?	c a, is starting
	a) are you meetin		b) you will meet	
	c) you are meetin		d) do you meet	
11	There is no doubt	that we out	of petrol one day	
	a) will run	b) are going to run	clare rupping	d) would rup
12	This year, we	on holiday to Asv	van lam cure verv	a) would run
	a) are going	b) will have gone	son. Faith Sure you w	
13	Mum to the	he dentist on Monda	y morning the hear	d) would go
	a) will an	hi aging to go	y morning, sne has	arranged everytning.
14	I need to get in th	b) going to go ape. I on a di	c) will be going	a) is going
	a) will an	b) am going to go	el.	11.1
		מם מז שווושע ווופ נש	riam doing	MI have done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are many periods in a person's life. Each period has its pleasures and pains and the happiest person is the one who enjoys what each period gives him without wasting his time in useless things. Childhood is a time when a child relies⁽¹⁾ on parents who offer him everything he needs, such as food, clothes and money. During this period, there are few responsibilities. A child finds pleasure in playing in the rain or on beach sand. But, a child has pains since he is not free to do what he wishes and he is always told what to do or to be punished for what he has done wrong.

When a child becomes a young man, he or she starts to earn his or her own living⁽²⁾, and becomes free from the discipline⁽³⁾ and the control of school and parents, and accepts responsibilities. However, if they work hard, they can have the great happiness of seeing himself make sustainable⁽⁴⁾ progress in their professions to build up for themselves their own position in society.

Wisdom and the ability to help other people come with the old age. Old people can enjoy seeing their children doing great things in life. Also, they may feel the happiness of having passed their life safely. At the same time, they may suffer from loneliness and illness.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	There are periods of life ment	ioned in the passage. b) three d) five
2	c) four The underlined word "they" refers to a) children	b) young people
3	c) grandchildren A child is not free to do what he wishe	d) old people es. The synonym of wishes is "".
	a) desires c) hates	b) dislikesd) refuses
्रीड्र धर्ड	انضباط.	كالمعيشة (2

	4	Young people are usuallya	ccording to the passage.
		a) lazy	b) wise
		c) hardworking	d) inactive
1	5	Which period has more responsibili	ties?
II.		a) Childhood.	b) Youth.
		c) Old age.	d) Teenage.
	6	The happiest persons are those who	O
		a) spend much time in bed	b) waste time
1		c) enjoy good and bad things	d) play all the time
	7	There areresponsibilities in	the first period of our life.
. [a) many	b) a lot of
		c) little	d) not many
	8	A suitable title for this passage is	***********
		a) Childhood and its trouble	b) Old age and loneliness
		c) Periods of life	d) Youth and hardworking
3	A) T	ranslate into Arabic:	
		1. The great development in industr	y ⁽¹⁾ has led to an increase in the amount ⁽²⁾
		of carbon dioxide(3) and this has led	d to climate change and global warming(4).

H		***************************************	***************************************
		Our historical monuments are pric	eless(5) treasures, so we should do our best
		to protect them.	

		***************************************	***************************************
80)		3. Co-operation among nations of t	he world will result in(6) spreading peace
15		and security. They should help ea	ch other to improve the living conditions
		of their people.	
		•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
		***************************************	***************************************
	B) T	ranslate into English:	
		لريف من مناظر طبيعية خلابة وهواء نقى.	ً " تعتبر حياة الريف أكثر نقاء (◊ من حياة المدينة لما يتمتع به ا

@		***************************************	***************************************

*****	************	****************	12011012021111777777	**********			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
 نیة (۱۰).	الكائنات الد	لکت ^(۹) جمیع	، ولولاهما له	ً الماء والهواء	ستغنی(۸) عر	من الأحوال أن يد	متطيع الإنسان بأى حال ه
** **********************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	*****************	660088886688 4 0016880	#204942#42#42#40########################	*************		
Н	ow to	transla	ate				
		·a	انه dverb	نه يترجم على	نجليزية ولك	للق في اللغة الإ	جد ترجمة للمفعول المص
		Smok	ing affec	ts health	negativ	ى الصحةely	التدخين تأثيرًا سلبيًّا عل
	ل:	ة العربية مث	, معناها باللغا	رغم وجوده فی	ها حرف جر	يزية لا يأتى مع	ل الأفعال فى اللغة الإنجا
	affec	ايۇثر على t:	شعر بـ feel	ا بـ/enjoy)يا	ad/یستمتع 	ب بـ Imire 	ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
wito an	ASSAV O	fabout	ONEHUN	IDRED AN	ID FIFT	Y (150) wo	rds on the follo
How c	an we st	end ou	r free tim	e well?			
			0				
HOW T	o stay sa	fe onlin	С.				
Howt	o stay sa	fe onlin		9800:0000000000000000000000000000000000		***************************************	
Howt	o stay sa	fe onlin				*************************	
How t	o stay sa	fe onlin					
HowT	o stay sa	fe onlin					
Howt	o stay sa	fe onlin					
Howt	o stay sa	fe onlin					
Howt	o stay sa	fe onlin					
Howt	o stay sa	fe onlin					
How	o stay sa	fe onlin					
HowT	o stay sa	fe onlin					
HOW	o stay sa	fe onlin					
HOW To	than	l used the	right	I used a top sentence		I wrote the conclusion	

Study

Chapter 5 (Treasure Island)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

allow	يسمح
believe	يصدق
bottom	الأسفل
dangerous	خطير
dead	تيه
different	مختلف
dry voice	صوت جاف

fresh	شعثم
group	مجموعة
interested	مهتم
kneel	يركع
leader	عيم/قائد
sail	شراع
spade	جاروف

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

allow me to	يسمح لى أن
at the end	فى نهاية المطاف
burned by the sun	احترقت من الشمس
come out from behind	يخرج من الخلف
dream of	يحلم ب
flying above	تحلق فوق
from the start	من البداية

from up the hill	من أعلى التل	
in front of me	أمامى	
knelt down	رکع	
left here by a ship	غادر من هنا على سفينة	
on your own	بمفردك	
to my surprise	لدهشتي	
work for	يعمل لدى	



Novel Exercises

Chapter (5)

	Remembering	
۸	Rememberning	

Understanding

Applying

Analysing

Evaluating

Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

00				1 1. 10
1	A has a lo	ong wooden handle an	d a flat piece of meta	l and is used for
	digging.			d) lenife
	a) sword	b) spade	c) spam	d) knife
2	I think you are	to refuse this wo	nderful offer.	E. 1
	a) crazv	b) wise	c) dizzy	d) lazy
3	My father always	advises me not to get	into a at scho	ool.
	- \ right	h) flight	c) figure	a) light
4	I'm beginning to	that teaching pro	ofession isn't as easy a	as I thought it was.
	a) docido	h) hear	c) realise	u) Kileel
5	The child I met w	as so short that I	down to talk to hir	n.
	a) kneeled	b) reeled	c) kicked	a) spent
6	We have chosen	Ali to be the of	our group as he is th	e best one.
	a) waiter	b) leader	c) pirate	a) employer
7	Lasked the traffic	to give رجل المرور warden	e me to the p	ost office.
•	a) infections	b) destinations	c) directions	d) taxis
Ω	Communications	companies shouldn't	anyone to ok	يتحصل على otain
0	norsonal informa	tion about their custor	mers.	
	personal morna	b) make	c) allow .	d) prevent
	a) let	te a few notes while th	e lecture is still	in my mind.
9	Ta like you to wil	b) fresh	c) different	d) dead
40	a) burned	the sea as the waves	were too high and it	was
10	I coulan't swim ii	b) attractive	c) interesting	d) dangerous
	a) safe	D) attractive	the navy	a, aangara
77		ne who worksb) as	c) against	d) out
	a) for	D) as	other as my father w	as asleen
12	I spoke in a very	low with my m	other as my father w	d) voice
	a) cry	b) shout	c) noise	
13	It was a pity that	nearly all the passenge	ers werewhe	il the ambulance
	arrived.		Adama	d) doath
	a) alive	b) survived	c) dead	d) death
14	When the ministe	er arrived at our schoo	l, some students wer	e carrying
	and waving with	them.		es es esta
	a) flats	b) flags	c) clothes	
15	The wind was blo	owing hard against the	and drove tl	ne ship so fast that
	we couldn't cont			
	a) sailor	b) masts	c) sails	d) sales
	,	•		

Unit 5

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

O F	Rememi	bering Ounderstanding	Applying Analysing © E	valuating © Creating	
CI	1009	se the correct ans	wer from a, b, c or d:		Let's strengthen our knowledge.
	1	He was exhauste	d as he had a lot of	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
- 8			b) communication		d) position
-10	2	The explorers	their way throug	h the jungle.	ay position
п		a) packed	b) broke	c) hacked	d) spaded
	3	Everyone should	their children	up when they go to s	chool
п		a) smarten	b) lighten	c) frighten	
в	4	I don't mind givin	ng a lot of money to a	good	d) shorten
,		a) reason	b) pause	c) result	d) cause
R	5	The atmosphere	in the room was		and aroument
		a) electricity	(a) electrical	c) electric	d) plactricin-
	6	A bandage is ned	cessary to the	flow of blood from the	a) electrician
В		a) cneck	b) chalk	c) treat	d) curo
	7	Once I'd found th	ne missing letter, every	thing into pla	100
		a) cnecked	b) licked	c) clapped	d) clicked
	8	My wife gave the	police a full	f the robbery and the	robbers
(0,)	a) count	b) account	c) describe	d) prescription
	9	This winter, the v	veather has been reall	V	
		a) frightful	b) frightened	c) fright	d) frighten
	10	The atmosphere	in our office is very	and easy. We are	all good friends
,		a) occupied	D) electric	c) tree	d) bucu
	11	My son likes hea	Ithy food and so he alv	vays the crean	n of the milk hefore
		drinking it.		, and the electric	it of the fillik before
		a) scans	b) skims	c) scams	d) unloads
	12	Theshow	wed that the baby was	in the normal position	n
		a) Scall	b) scam	c) skim	d) download
	13	Critics dismissed	the speech as a politi	cal for winning	a support.
- 5		a) gauget	machine machine	c) advice	d) dovice
	14	The player said t	hat he was not a footh	oallas he mad	le mistakes just like
Ī		arryone else.			ic mistance just
		a) application	b) technology	c) machine	d) business
	15	It's important for abroad.	the intelligence to bu	ild up aof pro	ofessional spies
		a) connection	b) business	c) device	d) notwork
			-	C) device	d) network

16	The weather rep	ort says ithot	all day.	
	a) will be	b) is going	c) is	d) is being
17	Look out! The g	girl is going to fall fro	m the balcony. This r	neans that the girl
	from the	e balcony.		
	a) falls	b) has fallen	c) fell	d) is about to fall
18	The boy is sharp	ening his pencil, he	his homework.	
	a) is writing		b) will write	
	c) writes		d) is going to write	
19	This museum wi	ll be 100 years old nex	t month. This is a/an	***************************************
	a) intention	b) future fact	_	
20	It was predicted	that hehis ne	ighbours with their pr	oblems.
	a) will help	b) was helping	c) was going to help	d) would help
21		nds at the club tomori		
	•	b) am going to see		d) see
22	Oh dear, it's alrea	ady 6 o'clock. We	late.	D
	a) are being	b) would be	c) are going to be	d) must be
23		and thunder doesn't		***************************************
).)	a) is going to rai	n b) will rain	c) rains	d) is raining
24		high marks ir		D
	a) will get	b) is going to get	c) is getting	d) gets
25	The company is	making losses. It		
	a) will close		b) closes	
	c) is closing		d) is going to close	
26		the future all shoppin	gon the inter	net.
	a) will be doing		c) will have done	d) will do
27	A: to the	zoo this week? B: OK		
	a) Might we go		b) Are we going	
	c) Are we going t	_	d) Shall we go	
28	We must hurry. T	he trainand w	we will miss it.	n to leave
	a) is leaves	b) leaves	c) is about to leave	
29	At 10 o'clock tom	norrow, my brother		/.
	a) will be watching	ng	b) watches	
	c) going to watch		d) would watch	
30	It's 10 o'clock nov	w and my brother	_	
	a) will be watchir	ng	b) is watching	
	c) going to watch	1	d) would watch	

Unit 5 Advanced & Open General Exercises 279

Unit 5



Al-Adwaa Test

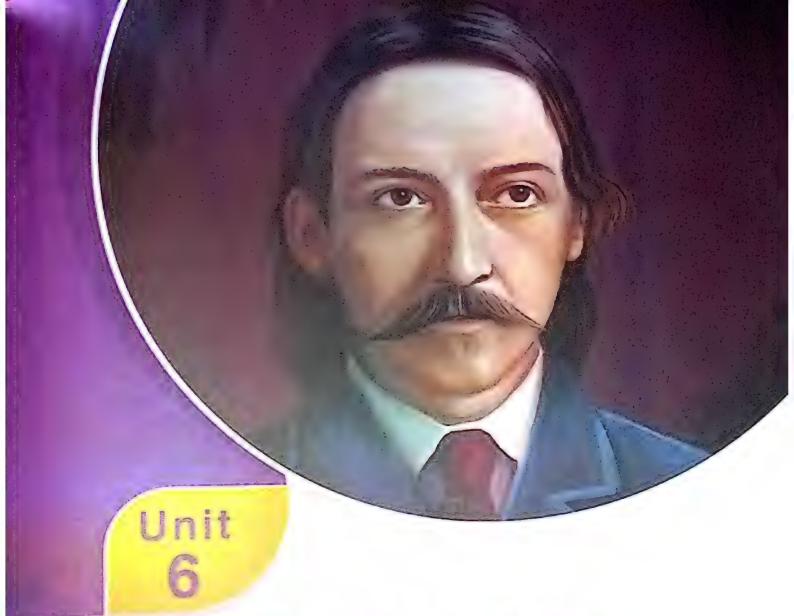


Remembering	Understanding	Applying	Analysing	Evaluating	Creating
Choose	the Two cor	rect answ	vers of th	e Five or	tions:

Ch	oose the Two co	rrect answers of	the Five option	is:	
1		weets is a major o			
	a) minor	b) leading	c) warming	d) secondary	e) adequate
2	Children should	be prevented fro	om using the inte	ernet	- quate
		b) every-day	_		e) daily
Ch	oose the correct				
	The email looke			t was an exampl	e of
		b) phishing	•		oading
4		have won a prize			J
	a) scam		c) link		
5		details. Inclu			
	the space provide		ace your name, a	daress arra prior	io iidiiibei iii
		b) personal	c) nerson	ality d) pers	sonally
6		quite I could			
	•	b) sticky			
7		n are ena			•
′	a) internet	b) hacks	c) contact	ts d) com	munications
8		earching for them			
0	The police are so	b) illegally	(a) lawfully	(d) easil	
0	Don't come late			, u, cas	,
9			c) will leav	ve d) is ac	ing to leave
10	a) leavesI've booked two				
10		b) will watch			
44	a) are watching The boys are col		•		
11		lecting some ary	b) are mal		
	a) make	naka	d) will ma	•	
40	c) are going to m Watch out or you				
12		b) are falling	c) fall	d) are q	oing to fall
13	a) will fall	ded that he	-		
10	a) will perform	aca that he	b) is perfo		
	c) is going to per	rform	•	performing	

	a) am going to be	able to finish this e	research on to b) would be d) will be	ime.
	c) am being	er with my colleagues	tomorrow. We	eat my house
	at noon.	1.) III.I mot	c) are meeti	
	That's her plan. a) is being	b) is going to be	c) will be	d) will have been
Read t	the following pas	ssage, then answer th	e questions:	
cr to ar pl fa ar ca co m du	f firearms and nobringing are can be a matter of fact conomic situation. A hungry man simes such as robota a great extent, not a great extent, not a great extent, not one of the mean anned correctly. It was are healthy and the private seen to a lot to decompany are responsed to the conomic of their children to deviate from the deviate from the control of their children to deviate from the control of their children.	nigratory flows from uses behind an alarm, poverty plays a very in increases social imbis an angry man. The oberies and murders. In ade the authorities unsures to decrease crimicator can provide measures against crimicator can provide measures rease violence and crimically for the spread of known by the companion the right path.	ing increase important robalance and continuous from runable to meet t	values, growing amounts bad company and bad in crime and criminality. It in criminality. The bad crime rate. It are inclined to commit ural to urban areas have, it the needs of the newly-on. Education should be ekshops, factories and on ernmental organisations g honest living and this bad upbringing and bad company corrupts good Here, parents must take wicked people who trick
		answer from a, b, c or		ıı .
18 7	a) Lack of education b) Man's enemies The unemployed b) robberies b) thefts	commit crimes such as	d) Poverty b) murders d) all the me	values
a) children		c) parents	d) wicked people
		e" can be replaced by b) reduce	c) quality	d) raise
				Unit 5 Al-Adwaa Test 281

		_	ces in						
7			b) countries	c) the countryside	d) continents				
	22	Bad company mea	ns	·	strents				
,		a) a man is known by the company he keeps							
		b) a company of fir	rearms						
		c) a company that	does not provide	job					
		d) bad friends or c	ompanions						
	23	"A hungry man is a	n angry man". Thi	is shows that					
(4	り	a) when a man is a	ngry, he is hungr	у.					
		b) hunger is the sa	me as anger.						
		c) hunger is the ca	use of misery and	anger					
	,	d) hunger is a bles	sing.						
1	24	"A man is known b	y the company he	e keeps."This refers to th	e fact				
ı		a) you cannot live	without friends	,	Constanting in the Constant of				
		b) you can make fr	iends with others						
ı		c) a bad person bu	ilds up a circle of	good friends					
,		d) the circle of frie	nds shows a man'	s character					
	25	Translate into En	alish:						
	4	نها ترتبط ارتباطئا	شعوب والحضارات؛ ذلك لأ	رئيسيـة والأساسيـة لنهضة مختلف اا	11 161 11				
ì	İ			ريست و دُدَاف الأفراد	متبر القراءه من الوسائل ال ثبقنا بتناقل المعارف والعلم				
•	0 1	PD + 0.0 1 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4		المالية المستعد المالية	ثيقنا بتناعل المعارف والخدر				
4		000224440000000000000000000000000000000	0401101849480001444	***************************************	P99>>>0074344*********************************				
	26	Translate into Ara	ahic.	***************************************	######################################				
	20	i ranciava invo Av	IDIC.						
	1		mployment are ti	ma hamba Unia					
		Poverty and une	mployment are til	me bombs. Unless we ex	ert efforts to				
			mployment are tii will suffer a lot.	me bombs. Unless we ex	ert efforts to				
	a married a married and a marr	Poverty and une	mployment are tii will suffer a lot.	me bombs. Unless we ex	ert efforts to				
(0)	000	Poverty and une uproot them, we	will suffer a lot.						
(0)	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the west of the west and une uproof them.	will suffer a lot.	me bombs. Unless we ex					
	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the wear with the wear was a second with the following:	will suffer a lot. about ONE HUN	DRED AND FIFTY (150) v	vords on				
(6)	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the wear with the wear was a second with the following:	will suffer a lot. about ONE HUN		vords on				
(00	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the wear with the wear was a second with the following:	will suffer a lot. about ONE HUN	DRED AND FIFTY (150) v	vords on				
(6)	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the wear with the wear was a second with the following:	will suffer a lot. about ONE HUN	DRED AND FIFTY (150) v	vords on				
(6)	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the wear with the wear was a second with the following:	will suffer a lot. about ONE HUN	DRED AND FIFTY (150) v	vords on				
	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the wear with the wear was a second with the following:	will suffer a lot. about ONE HUN	DRED AND FIFTY (150) v	vords on				
(6)	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the wear with the wear was a second with the following:	will suffer a lot. about ONE HUN	DRED AND FIFTY (150) v	vords on				
	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the wear with the wear was a second with the following:	will suffer a lot. about ONE HUN	DRED AND FIFTY (150) v	vords on				
	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the wear with the wear was a second with the following:	will suffer a lot. about ONE HUN	DRED AND FIFTY (150) v	vords on				
	27	Poverty and une uproot them, we were with the wear with the wear was a second with the following:	will suffer a lot. about ONE HUNI ould be like with	DRED AND FIFTY (150) v	vords on				



Learning from literature

bjectives

Reading : A biography on Stevenson; A poem, The Gardener

Writing : A short review of a poem; A book review

Litering : A conversation about Robert Louis Stevenson

Consider Police requests

Language . Verbs + infinitive or -ing form

👉 : : | : : Communication; Critical Thinking



Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

صف من العنب/الزبيب	novel (n)	رواية
يحفر	plot (n)	قطعة أرض زراعية
حصى	poem (n)	قصيدة
الأدب	poet (n)	شاعر
قش/تبن	poetry (n)	 شعر
	يحفر حصى الأدب	plot (n) يحفر poem (n) حصى poet (n)

* Fortunately, my cat fell on a pile of hay.

Vocabulary on Reading

adventure (n)	مغامرة
case (n)	حالة/قضية
form (n)	شکل
full-time (adj) (adv)	دوام کامل
gardener (n)	جناينى
improve (v) – d	يحسن
kidnapped (adj)	مختظف
lawyer (n)	محام
line (n)	سطر/خط
lock (v) – ed	يغلق/يحبس
pirate (n)	ر قرصان

piracy (n)	القرصنة	
popular (adj)	محنوث	
rhyme (n) (v) – d	قافية الشعر/يتناغم	
rhythm (n)	الإيقاع	
serious (adj)	جاد/خطير	
suppose (v) – d	يفترض	
tools (n)	أدوات بسيطة	
treasure (n)	كنز	
warm (adj)	دافئ	
wish (v) – ed	يتمنى	

vocabulary on Listening

biography (n)	السيرة الذاتية
choice (n)	اختيار
consider (v) – ed	يعتبر/يضع في الاعتبار
discuss (v) – ed	يناقش
discussion (n)	مناقشة
each other	بعضهم البعض
helpful (adj)	مقتد

issue (n)	قضية
romantic (adj)	رومانسى
publish (v) – ed	ينشر
sailing (n)	إبحار
Scottish (n) (adj)	إسكتلندى الجنسية
unwell (adj)	مريض/معتل الصحة

Workbook Vocabulary

call (v) – ed	يسمى/يدعى
compare (v) – d	يقارن
joy (n)	فرح

favour (n)	معروف/جميل مدير	
manager (n)		
sentence (n)	جملة	

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

(be) best known for	معروفة كــ
a piece of writing	قطعة مكتوبة
do a job	يقوم بعمل/ بوظيفة
follow rules	يتبع القواعد
do something for	يفعل شيئًا من أجل
keep the gravel walk لحصى لكى لا تطأ قدماه النباتات	يلزم الطريق المفروش با
were made into films	حولت إلى أفلام

put away	يرتب
a variety of forms	مجموعة متنوعة من الأشكال
do a favour	يقوم بعمل معروف
from different times	من أوقات مختلفة
get away from	يبتعد عن
go for me	يذهب من أجلى
different from	مختلف عن

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2 285

make a film	ينتج فيلمئا
arranged in	مرتب/منظم في
compare to	يقارن بين
a piece of	قطعة من
bring to	يُحضر إلى
hear about	ر يسمع عن

form of	شکل من
kind of	نوع من
learn about	ند ملع
sail from to	يبحر من إلى
for a while	لفترة من الوقت

Derivatives

V	erb		Noun	Adjective
venture*	يغامر	adventure adventurer	مغامرة مغامر	adventurous جریء/متھور
***************************************		biography biographer	سيرة حياة شخص كاتب سيرة	biographical متعلق بسيرة شخص
joy	يمرح	joy	مرح/فرح	joyful فرحان/مسرور/مفرح
kidnap	يخطف	kidnapping kidnapper	اختطاف/خطف خاطف	kidnapped مختطف
		law lawyer	قانون محام	lawful قانونی/مشروع
		literature	الأدب	literate متعلم ادبی literary
popularise	ينشر/يروج/ينتشر	popularity	انتشار/شعبية	شائع/شعبی/متداول popular
		seriousness	خطورة	serious خطير/عنيف
suppose	يفترض/يظن	supposition	افتراض/ظن	supposed مفروض/افتراضی/مزعوم
treasure	يعز/يبجل	treasure treasurer treasury	كنز أمين صندوق وزارة المالية	
warm	يدفأ/يسخن	warmer warmth warming	سخان/أداة تدفئة دفء/حميمية تسخين/إحماء	دافئ اودی احمیم warm

 ⁻ I like adventures.
 - I used to be an adventurer when I was young.
 - My actions seemed to be adventurous.

words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
far	गंहां	remote/distant	near/close قريب	
improve	يحسن/يطور	enhance/develop	decline/damage يتدمور	
joy	فرح	charm/delight	sadness/sorrow حزن	
popular	محبوب	favoured/beloved	unpopular/disliked غير محبوب	
serious	خطير	dangerous/severe/tough	safe/facile/calm آمن	
strange	غريب	unfamiliar/deviating	familiar/common/conventional مألوف/شائع/تقليدي	
successful	ناجح	fruitful/favourable/ profitable	unsuccessful/losing/hopeless غیر ناجع	
warm	دافئ	heated/hot	cold/freezing بارد	
wish	يأمل	desire/aspire	یابی/ینبد spurn/reject	

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: **Check Point** 1 On the beach, the children are always busy in the sand. d) digging c) sailing b) dragging a) picking d) gardener c) poet b) doctor a) lawyer 3 I like reading about the history and of El-Sadat. d) geography c) biography b) autography a) autobiography Pollution is one of the mostproblems that face the whole world. c) lawful d) warm b) serious a) illegal 5 Watching films is one of my hobbies. d) adventure c) adventuring b) adventurous a) adventurer

Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text

What kind of books do you enjoy reading? Why?

Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died⁽¹⁾ 44 years later in Samoa, a small island⁽²⁾ in the South Pacific. He was not always well⁽³⁾ because the weather in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child, he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a lawyer⁽⁴⁾ at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a full-time⁽⁵⁾ writer.



مات (1) جزيرة (2) جزيرة (3) بصحة جيدة (4) محام (5) دوام كامل (5) أدمًا (6) فترة من الوقت (7)

قراصنة (8)

He often travelled to warmer⁽⁶⁾ places to try to improve his health. For a while⁽⁷⁾ he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although he is best known for his novels, like *Kidnapped* and *Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, Stevenson also wrote many poems and travel books. His first successful novel was *Treasure Island* – an adventure story about pirates⁽⁸⁾. His books are still very popular today and many of them have been made into films.

Why do you think Stevenson travelled to warmer places?



Reading Text

How do you think children with no parents were treated in the past?

The Gardener



The gardener⁽¹⁾ does not love to talk,
He makes me keep the gravel⁽²⁾ walk;
And when he puts his tools⁽³⁾ away,
He locks⁽⁴⁾ the door and takes the key.

Away behind the currant row⁽⁵⁾,
Where no one else but cook may go,
Far in the plots⁽⁵⁾, I see him dig⁽⁷⁾,
Old and serious⁽²⁾, brown and big.

He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue,
Nor wishes to be spoken to.
He digs the flowers and cuts the hay⁽⁹⁾,
And never seems to want to play.

الجنايني/البستاني (1)
الحصى (2)
أدوات (3)
يعْلق (4)
صف من العنب (الزبيب) (5)
قطع أرض زراعية (6)
يحفر (7)
خاد (8)
القش (9)

Listening Text



Teacher: This week we're studying the Scottish writer(1), Robert Louis Stevenson, in particular(2) his poetry not his novels. Have any of you heard(3) about him or read any of his works?



Nesma

: Didn't he write Treasure Island?

I tried reading it last year, but it was a bit boring(4), so I decided to watch the film instead.

Teacher: Did you like it?

Nesma

: Yes, it was really good. I love adventure(5) films and I enjoy reading adventure stories too. I just found Treasure Island a bit difficult.

:Well it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and Treasure Island was published⁽⁶⁾ in 1881. And Waafa, have you read any of his books?

Wafaa

: I don't think so. I prefer reading romantic(7) stories and poems.

Teacher

: Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing stories when he was

كاتب (1) بشكل خاص (2) سمع (3) ممل (4) مغامرة (5) نشر (6) رومانسی (7) مريض (8) مجموعة (9) يبتعد (10)

a child and unwell⁽⁸⁾. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing Treasure Island while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a collection (9) of poems called A Child's Garden of Verses and he also travelled a lot to get away(10) from the cold Scottish weather.

Nesma: Where did he go?

until he died in 1894.

*As a young man, he went to Europe, France and Switzerland mainly. In fact, his first book was about his travels(11) in France. He and his family loved sailing(12) and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family lived there

رحلات (11)

إبحار (12)

يُحضر (13)

يناقش (14)

Now for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or poem by Stevenson and bring⁽¹³⁾ it to class to discuss⁽¹⁴⁾. Then...

	check Point	Choose the corre	ect answer f <mark>rom</mark> a, b,	c or d:				
1	Ali is a daydreamer.	He alwaysacti	ions and imagines sce	enarios.				
ľ	a) thinks	b) drags	c) supposes	d) digs				
2 to meet you one day in a final match. It will be amazing, my brother.								
-	a) 'd better	b) wish	c) hate	d) could				
3	•	on. Everyone asks me f	or help once they see	me.				
	a) helping	b) help	c) helpful	d) helpless				
4	This player is	I saw him play for th	ne national team vers	us Poland.				
	a) Scottish	b) Scotland	c) Polish	d) Poland				
5		e rules of the place if)	ou want you to stay	here for long.				
	a) seek	b) run	c) create	d) follow				
	-,	•						



Vocabulary in Use

FOCUS on Vocabulary



Can you tell us the meaning of "dig"?

currant row	صف من العنب (الزبيب)
a line of plants that have small fruits	
dig	بحفر
break up and move earth with your hands or a machine	<i>></i> =
gravel	
small stones	
— hay	قش/تبن
dried grass that people use to feed animals	0,10
حصى لكى لا تطأ قدماه النباتات keep the gravel walk	بلزم الطريق المفروش بال
stay on the path through the garden	
novel	ر
a long story	
plot	قطعة أرض زراعية
small pieces of land for growing things on	
poem	صقصيدة
a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme	
poet	ساعر شاعر
someone who writes poems	
poetry	
a form of writing	

Notes on Vocabulary

Knowing how to use the word is extremely important.

publish بنشـر (کتابــُــا/مجلة/صحيفة) – يمکــن أن ببنى للمجھول	She was only 19 when her first novel was published.
come out بَضَــدُر (كتابـًا/مجلة/صحيفة) – لا يمكن أن يبنى للمجهول	She was only 19 when her first novel came out.
biography سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها شخص آخر	Famous people have different biographies written about them.
autobiography الشخص نفسه عليه الشخص نفسه	He published his autobiography last year.
(be) born in + (مكان/سنة) ولد في	My sister was born in Alexandria. Ali was born in 2002.
(be) born on + (تاریخ/یوم) ولد فی	His mother was born on 21st August 1979.
3 (be) born into ولد في عائلة	Nora was born into a good family.
(be) born with + (disease) مولود (بمرض)	Madonna was born with a small hole in her heart.
at the age of = aged في سن	At the age of 30, Ali got married for the second time.
in the age of في عصر	They inherited this house which had been built in the age of their grandfather.
Success	• The company achieved a great success under the new leadership.
5 (be) a success	* Taking part in the competition was a success.
successful ناجح	You should work properly to be successful.

kidr	nap يخطف شخصئا (طمعئا في فدية)	Two businessmen were kidnapped by terrorists.
hija	ck يختطف (عربة/طائرة)	The plane was hijacked by two armed men on a flight from London to Cairo.
6 capt	ure: يأسر/يقبض على	The town was captured by enemy troops after 10 days fighting. She was captured at the airport as she had illegal drugs.
arre	يلقى القبض على	• He was arrested for shoplifting سرقة المعروضات yesterday.
impi	يسجن ison	They were imprisoned for possession of drugs.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

His first successful novel was Treasure Island – an adventure story about pirates.

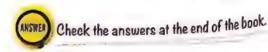
لاحظ هنا أن كلمة adventure ليست صفة ولكنها اسم وأضيفت إلى كلمة story لأن المقصود بالمعنى هو قصة عن مغامرة.

▶ He is one of the most adventurous travellers in the world.

أما الصفة من adventure فهي كلمة adventurous وتستخدم لوصف شخص يريد فعل شيء خطير أو يجرب شيئًا جديدًا.

Check Point Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I am a teacher. Teaching is myjob and I really like it.
 - b) full-time a) part-time
- c) temporary
- d) short-term
- - a) interesting
- b) bored
- c) excited
- d) boring
- 3 A lot of novels and stories are every year by many great writers.
 - a) published
- b) come out
- c) spread
- d) punished
- - a) public
- **b)** particular
- c) general
- d) private





Vocabulary Exercises

C	onbering Ounderstanding	Applying Analysing answer from a, b, c	• Evaluating • Creating	After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practice. I think number one will be (a),
CH	(ey Vocabulary, Re	ading, Listening & W	orkbook Vocabulary	do you agree?
•	The writer's last	novel which was pul	blished last year was	,
7	a) a success	b) succeed	c) successful	4,000
	al mad Shawai I	was a great	•	مركز هية النصر - الدفهية **. *
2	- 4	h) noem	c) poetry	d) verse
	The lion ran awa	v from the zoo, but 1	the police could	it.
3			e cantille	
	a) arrest	sidered a good	about Taha Husse	in. He wrote well
4	about his own life	fe.		
		hl nlav	c) poem	d) autobiography
	a) biography	of modern technology	ogy, we can live an ea	sier life.
5		1 \ D	E LID	
	a) At	lich with all	lits wonderful novels	plays and poems.
6		La litaratura	Ciculture	4/36/44
	a) agriculture	b) literature	plots' can be replaced	l by "
7	'Far in plots, I see	nim aig. The word	plots call be rep	لدارة شرق العملة التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
•)			c) fields	d) dreams
	a) plans	b) hay	a of hard wor	k not a chance.
8	Mohammad Sala	h's success is really of	c) reason	d) treasure
	a) cause	b) case	c) reason	
9	A/An is	a piece of land that i	is surrounded by water	d) island
		1) Command	cillingle	1010110
10	Our English teach	ier has always been v	ery with his stu	dents and colleagues.
	al a amudae	h) nonulate	c) likea	a) fairie
11	He usually wears	suits. It is really	to see him in jea	ns.
	-) C :1:	b) common	c) foreign	u) strainge
12	VOLL WOT	the prize and took	the car, what would y	ou do?
	a) Unless	b) Think	c) Suppose	d) Suspect
13	The path isn't we	Il paved. It is full of		بنى سلطان الثانوية - المنيا ٢٠٢٢
	a) barrel	h) funnel	c) saddle	d) gravel
14	He has the ability	to write the whole	story in, he is	s a talented writer.
•		b) whithm	c) verse	d) plot
15	a) rhyme	b) rhythm	o sense of	•
.0			c) verse	d) plot
	a) rhyme	b) rhythm	C) VCIDC	

	16	I always	any matter wit	th my parents bef	ore making a d	ecision	
		a) regret	b) remove	c) discus	S d)	impro.	
	17	are v	ery bad as they liv	e on attacking ar	d robbing ship	S at sea	
1		a) Parrots	b) Robbers	c) Burala	ers d)	Pirate.	
ŀ	18	The governm	ent is trying hard	to solve the	of homeless	children	
ŀ		everywhere.				a maren	
		a) issue	b) tissue	c) form	d)	itch	
ı	19	The members	of the gang were	trying to look for	a hidden	in the in	
		, la condité	w) treason	e) trease	'11 Q)	treasure	
:	20	Hanan left ho	me to travel, hopi	na for excitement	and .		
		a) adventure	b) furniture	c) creatu	ire d)	structure	
	(E		oms, Prepositions,				
						_	
	21	Could you do	me a and	d go to the marke	t for me?	إدارة جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٢	
a bill an		a) favourite	b) favour	c) duty	d)	help	
ı	22	Don't walk or	the plants in the	garden. You must	en. You must		
ı		a) make the g	ravels walk	b) keep	the gravel walk		
		c) make the gravel walk					
	23	Ali had to wa	it for whe	en he went to app	ly for the job.		
			b) while			hall	
3	24	Literature co	mes in a	of forms poetry, no	ovels, etc.	مدرسة السعيدية الجيزة ٢٠٢٢	
		a) various	b) different	c) many	d) :		
	25	The writer be	came well-known	because his nove	l was	•	
		a) success	b) a success	c) a succ	essful d)	successfully	
1	26	The poor chil	d was born		prevents him f	rom walking.	
١		a) into		c) in	d) '	with	
			o correct answe	_	otions:		
	27	The writer's r	new book	last week.			
	,	a) published		b) came out	c) was publish	ned	
ı		d) was come	out	e) spread			
	28	The story wri	itten by the great v	writer was	into a film.		
	0	a) turned		c) taken		e) put	
	29	We can walk	if it's not far. The sy			and	
		a) remote	b) near	c) close	d) safe	e) distant	
	30	I could hears	trange voices outs	ide the room. The	antonyms of the	word"strange"	
		are	and		,,,,,		
	:	a) familiar	b) conventional	c) unpopular	d) deviating	e) safe	

Study



Lessons 1 & 2



Language

1)

Verbs followed by (-ing form)

admit (to)	يعترف ب	involve	يشمل/يتضمن	recommend	یوصی ب
avoid	يتجنب	resist	يقاوم	fancy	يتخيل
suggest	يقترح	risk	يخاطر	delay	يؤجل
practise	يمارس	postpone	يؤجل	prevent	يمنع
consider	يعتبر	enjoy	يستمتع ب	escape	يمرب
mind	يمانع	finish	ينمى	forgive	يسامح
imagine	يتخيل	deny	يئكر	miss	يفتقد
understand	يفهم	go	ندهن	dislike	يكره

- The criminal admitted to committing the crime.
- He enjoys meeting people from other cultures.
- My brother suggested spending the weekend on the beach.

2)

Verbs followed by (to + inf.)

decide	يقرر	wish	يتمنى	arrange	یرتب
agree	يوافق	swear	يقسم	offer	يعرض
promise	. عد	determine	يصمم	need	يحتاج
hope	يأمل	fail	يفشل	prepare	يجهز/يعد
plan	يخطط	want	يريد	attempt	يحاول
manage	يتمكن	expect	يتوقع	prove	يثبت
refuse	يرفض	threaten	يهدد	neglect	يهمل
seem	يبدو	intend	ینوی	can't afford	لا يتحمل

I have decided to play a match with my friends.

He asked me for some money, but I refused to give him any.

Do you want to come with me to the party?

Ali proved to be the cleverest in the class.

Make your own mind maps to memorise these verbs and expressions.

You can draw circles on a sheet of paper and write each group in a different circle with different colours.

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2

Verbs followed by (object + to + inf.)

advise	ينصح	permit	يسمح	tell	خبر
recommend	يوصى بــ	instruct	يعلم/يخبر	order	امر
expect	يتوقع	ask	يطلب	warn	يحذر
encourage	يشجع	persuade	يقنع	teach	ملع
force	يجبر	allow	يسمح	remind	يذكر
invite	يدعو	promise	يوعد	request	بطلب

- He advised me to study and revise regularly.
- I managed to persuade my wife not to travel alone.
- Parents encourage their children to be good citizens.

فل) إذا لم يأت بعد هذه الأفعال مفعول يأتي بعدها (v-ing)



advise - recommend - encourage - allow - permit + (v-ing)

- He doesn't allow smoking in his office.
- I often encourage playing football on Fridays.
- The company recommends using their buses instead of private ones.

Expressions followed by (-ing form)

feel like	يرغب في	It's no good	ليس من الصالح
It's worth	يستحق	It's no use	لا فائدة من
can't help	لا يستطيع أن يساعد	(have) difficulty (in)	لدیه صعوبة فی
can't stand	لا يستطيع تحمل	(be) busy	مشغول
can't stop	لا يستطيع التوقف		
What/How about?	ما رأيك؟ (اقتراح)	(have) fun	يمرح

- This film is worth watching more than once.
- My mother has difficulty (in) climbing up and down the stairs.
- It's no use eating fast foods.

Expressions followed by (to + v-ing)

admit to	\$ -00-100 to 10 to \$ 40 101-45 11 # 101 # 111 # 111	prefer(v-ing) to v-ing	يفضل عن
(be) exposed to	معرض اـ	owing to	नंगम
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	take to	یعتاد علی
contribute to	يساهم في	(be) accustomed to	معتاد على
object to	يعترض على	(be) used to	معتاد على
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	own up to	يعترف بــ

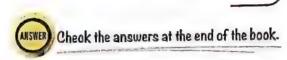
- We look forward to living in a remote island.
- All people object to using horns late at night.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The old man denied my money last week.
 - a) steal
- b) to steal
- c) stealing
- d) to stealing
- 2 My son admittedher time before the exam.
 - a) to waste
- b) wasting
- c) of wasting
- d) b & c
- 3 She decideda new dress before attending the party.
 - a) to buy
- b) buying
- c) to buying
- d) buy
- 4 Ahmed avoidedhis old friends at the wedding yesterday.
 - a) meet
- b) to meet
- c) to meeting
- d) meeting

- 5 My father advised early to keep healthy.
 - a) to sleep
- b) sleeping
- c) to sleeping
- d) sleep





Language Exercises

0	Remembering	
---	-------------	--

Understanding

Applying

Analysing

Evaluating

Creating

Practice is the best way to apply what we have learnt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	The manager a	rrangedsom	e of the workers to kn	ow their problems.	
	a) to meet		c) to meeting	d) meet	
2					
	a) to do	b) did		d) will join	
3	Menna hopes	the Faculty of	Medicine one day.		
		b) joining		d) to joining	
4	Do you mindsome photos of your wedding on Facebook?				
			c) in sharing		
5	My father taugh	nt us people	with respect.	•	
	a) treats	b) to treat	c) treat	d) treating	
6	The teacher thre	eatened the lazy stud	denthim out o	of the class.	
	a) sends	b) sending	c) to send	d) sent	
7	He to us	sing the mobile pho	ne at school.	دارة القناطر - القليوبية ٢٠٢٢	
)	a) agreed	b) refused	c) objected	d) enjoyed	
8	Do you fancy	on a day trip to	o Alexandria next wee	k?	
	a) to come	b) come	c) to coming	d) coming	
9	They couldn't af	ford the hou	ise at that high price.		
	a) buy	b) to buy	c) buying	d) to buying	
10	l dislike	away from my family	for a long time.		
	a) to be	b) to being	c) be	d) being	
11	He suggested	to the club.		منرسة السعيدية - الجيزة ٢٠٢٢	
	a) goes	b) went	c) going	d) to go	
12	We're planning to Europe for our holiday next year.				
	a) flying	b) to fly	c) fly	d) to flying	
13	Mona offeredus do the washing up.				
	a) to be helped	b) helping	c) to help	d) help	
14	Our national tear	m is expected in	the next World Cup fi	ادارة غرب الإسكندرية nals. ٢٠٣٢	
		b) playing	c) to play	d) to playing	
15	Hala agreed	to her younger s		. , , -	
			c) apologising	d) to apologising	

16	I can't stand	around doing noth	ning.			
	a) sit	b) sitting	c) to sit	d) to sitting		
17	My son was very	annoyed. He seemed .	bad marks in	the exams.		
	a) to get	b) getting	c) to getting	d) get		
18	My wife was busy	/ the flat, so sh	e didn't go out with ι	ıs.		
	a) cleaning	b) with cleaning	c) cleans	d) to clean		
19	I couldn't talk to	him. He couldn't stop .	his homework	⟨,		
	a) do	b) to do	c) doing	d) in doing		
20	When you finish.	the report, sen	nd it to the manager.			
	a) writing					
21	The salesman	taking the mone				
	a) wanted	b) refused	c) denied			
22	Owingh	ard, my daughter coul				
	a) study	•				
23	We had fun	many historic place				
	a) visiting	b) to visit		d) visit		
24		norrow, so we could go				
	a) sailing		c) to sail	d) sail		
25	My father allowe	d me my friend		e.		
	a) phoning	b) phone				
26		allows our frie	ends using his phone.			
	a) phoning			d) phone		
27		to revise your voca		iute.		
	a) trying	b) try	c) to try	d) tried		
28		Egypt a better		إدارة الخليفة والمقطم - القلمرة ٢٠٢٢		
200	a) to see	b) to seeing	c) seeing	d) to being seen		
29	Which of the following sentences is INCORRECT?					
		gested leaving his new				
	b) I don't really enjoy going to the opera.					
1000		c) She accused her neighbour of stealing her money.				
30		visit that frightening				
The state of the s		owing sentences is CO				
		ping her with her prob				
	_	nging her new laptop aking the train to Asw				
	-					
	d) I don't mind to watch this movie again.					

Test Yourself 20





Unit 6

Lessons 1 & 2

th inf	membering	understanding	Applying	Cyaloating Creating		
1	Choo	se the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:		
6 mar P	1 All	the prisoners	must bein for	the night and taken	to court then	
8	a)	ooked	b) lucked	c) blocked	d) locked	
		The writer's new collection of short storieslast week.				
, (a) 1	was come out	b) came out	c) published	d) came in	
3 The diplomat was and two million dollars was demanded for h					nded for his	
	release أطلاق سراحه.					
	a) l	nijacked	b) captured	c) kidnapped	d) arrested	
4 My father died 66 as a result of heart disease.						
N.		aged	b) when he was	c) at the age of	d) all mentioned	
	5 Sor	me animals us	uallyholes in	the sand to bury their	eggs.	
		drill	b) dig		d) research	
1	6	row is a li	ine of plants that have			
1	_	Currant	•		d) Fruitless	
;	7	is long gr	ass that has been cut	and dried, often used	as food for cattle.	
. 8			b) Plot			
			ays buys red roses for I			
0.)			b) horrible			
			arda well-kno		up.	
			b) for joining		d) to joining	
1	0 Mai	ny people in o	ur town objected	the new bridge.		
•			b) to building			
1			his invitation			
	a) a	ccept	b) to accepting	c) accepting	d) to accept	
1:	12 What a hot day! I feel like for a swim in the sea in Alexandria.				kandria.	
	a) g		b) going	c) to go	d) to going	
13 They are wo. تماثيل They are wo. المستسلم looking at the sculptures				hey are wonderful!		
1	-	ecide	b) promise	c) dislike	d) enjoy	
14			well respected			
		_	b) to be	c) having been	d) be	
15	Doy		vill be able to afford	-	year?	
	a) to	-	b) going	c) to going	d) go	
16		•	ory is worthby			
	a) to	read ,	b) to reading	c) reading	d) read	

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I have always wished that I knew more about the moon, so I did a project about it at school. The moon orbits the earth every 27.3 days, so that is about once a month. However, we only see one side of it. That is because it takes about the same time for the moon to spin once as it takes for the moon to orbit the earth. The side which we do not see is called "the dark side of the moon". However, like the earth, both sides of the moon are illuminated by the sun at different times, so it is not dark all the time. We just can't see it.

Like the sun, the moon rises in the east and sets in the west. A full moon is what we see as a circle. This occurs when the moon is on the opposite side of the earth to the sun. The average⁽¹⁾ temperature on the moon is 107 degrees centigrade⁽²⁾ in the day and –153 degrees centigrade at night. If the astronauts who visited the moon hadn't worn spacesuits, they would have died. The moon's gravity makes our seas rise and fall twice a day. Gravity on the moon is only 17% as strong as it is on earth. That means you can jump really high there!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 What is the moon's effect on earth?
 - a) The size of mountains.
- b) Its gravity.

c) its weather.

- d) Seas.
- 2 Why is one side of the moon called "the dark side"?
 - a) It is always dark there.
 - b) It is never dark there.
 - c) We can't see it from earth.
 - d) You can't see it from a spaceship.
- 3 What do you think would be most dangerous about visiting the moon?
 - a) The temperature.
 - b) The gravity.
 - c) The height of the mountains.
 - d) The fact that it is dark.
- 4 What kind of text is this?
 - a) A newspaper article.

b) A novel.

c) A diary extract.

d) A poem.



(2) مئوية

متوسط/معدل

1	5		erlined word "That" refer to?	
		a) Your ability to ju		
			ity is weaker than the earth's.	
	c) People are weak on the moon.d) The earth's gravity is weaker than the moon's.			
	6	What do you think		
		a) Special clothes f		
		b) Special helmets	and clothes for pilots.	
		c) Special shoes an	d clothes for astronomers.	
		d) Special hats, tro	users and T-shirts.	
	7	What is the average	temperature on the moon?	
И		a) 153-107	b) 701-513	
		c) 107-153	d) 531-170	
	8	Another word for "s		
1		a) involve	b) evolve	
100		c) remove	d) revolve	
(2)	Δ) T	ranslate into Arabi		
		despair ⁽³⁾ , happine achievements.	hat life is a mixture ⁽¹⁾ of success and failure ⁽²⁾ , hope and ss and sadness, but in all cases, it should be filled with	
	2	2. Increasing produc our national incon	tion and improving its quality is the only way to increase se which helps to raise the standard of living ⁽⁴⁾ .	
%	3	B. Every child has the everything possib	right to lead a happy life ⁽⁵⁾ and the government must do e to make sure that children survive ⁽⁶⁾ and develop.	
e estado em el estador de el estado en el es		ranslate into Englis اب، وتساعدهم على قضاء أوة	ا: ١- تلعب النوادى الرياضية (١ مورًا هامـًا في المجتمع، كما تقدم خدمات (١٠) عظيمة للش الفراغ بشكل مفيد.	
100				

ة الأكثر تحدثًا في	صة(١٠) عمل جيدة فهى اللغا	ليزية لكى تحصل على فر	ـث وكتابة اللغة الإنج	من الضرورى أن تجيد تحد
002000222222222222222222222222222222222	***************************************	***************************************		العالم الآن.
***************************************		***************************************		***************************************
How to	translate)			
	∙me – hin	n – her – us – then	یکون ضمیر مفعول ۱	الضمير المضاف إلى فعل ي
	.my - his - her	-our-your-the	يكون صفة ملكية lir	الضمير المضاف إلى اسم إ
		.will + inf.	،) تدل على المستقبل	حرف الـ (س) وكلمة (سوف
			أسبوع القادم.	سيقوم صديقى بزيارتى الأ
friend will vis	sit me next week.			
inc an assay	of about ONE HU		(150) 00010	is on the following
Your favourit	te writer.			
		read		
	te writer. w of a poem you	read.		
Your favourit A short revie		read.		
		read.		
A short review		read.		
A short review	V of a poem you	Tused a topic	I wrote the	I used the righ
A short review	w of a poem you		I wrote the conclusion.	I used the righ punctuation.
A short review	V of a poem you	Tused a topic		
A short review	V of a poem you	Tused a topic		

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2

305



Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

activities (n)	أنشطة
candlelight (n)	ضوء الشمعة
clear (adj)	صاف /واضح
describe (v) – d	يصف
differently (adv)	باختلاف
dress (v) – ed (n)	یرتدی ملابس/فستان
especially (adv)	خصوصنا
exciting (adj)	مثير

fair (adj)	عادل
*grown-up (adj) (n)	راشد/بالغ
hate (v) – d	يكره
hop (v) – ped	يقفز على قدم واحدة
season (n)	فصل في السنة/موسم
situation (n)	موقف
subject (n)	موضوع
verse (n)	ر بیت (فی قصیدة)

or I'm grown-up now, and I'm aware of what's going on.

Workbook Vocabulary

brief (adj) (v) – ed	مختصر/يختصر
broken (adj)	مكسور
narrate (v) – d	يروى (قصة - حكاية)

repeat (v) – ed	يكرر
summary (n)	ملخص
toy (n)	لعبة أطفال

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

at night	ليلًا
by day	نهارًا
go past	يمر أمام
look for	يبحث عن
in brief	باختصار

at different times	فى أوقات مختلفة
stay in	يبقى في
the other way	على العكس تمامئا
write about	يكتب عن
in my opinion	فی رایی

Derivatives

Ve	rb	
break يكسر/يتوقف عن العمل		
clear	يوضح/يظهر	
describe [*] مصي		
dress يلبس/يداوي/ينظف الجرح		
narrate	یروی	
repeat	يعيد/يكرر	
situate		
يعين/يضع في مركز معين		
specialise		
	يتخصص	

N	oun
break	كسر/تعطل
breakage	كسر/حطام
clarity	وضوح/اتضاح
description	وصف
dress	ملابس
dresser	
ل ارتداء ملابسهم	من يساعد الممثلين علر
dressing	
لل يضاف إلى الطعام	ضمادة/خليط من السواأ
narration	سرد/أخبار
narrator	راوِ/قصاص
repeat	حدث مكرر
repetition	تكرار/إعادة
situation	حالة/موقع
special	شیء خاص
specialist	أخصائي/خبير
specialty	اختصاص/تخصص

Adjective					
breakable broken	قابل للكسر/صش مكسور/متعطل				
clear	ولضح اظاهر				
describation descriptive					
dressed dressy	لابس متانق/انیق				
narrative	روائی/قصصی				
repeated	متكرر/معاد				
repeatable	یمکن تکراره و				
situated	قائم/واقع في مكان معين				
special specialised	خاص/مخصوص متخصص				

- * I can describe the suspect for you.
 - I have the description of the suspect.
 - The suspect is easily describable.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

vvord	Meaning
brief	مختصر
broken	مكسور
clear	صاف ِ/واضح
describe	يوصف
especially	خصوصنا
especially	خصوصنا

المرادف Synonym

short/compressed
crushed/damaged
apparent/bright/ cloudless
explain/detail
particularly/specifically/ exceptionally

المضاد Antonym

long/lengthy	طويل			
intact/complete	سليم/كامل			
ambiguous/cloudy/foggy غامض/غیر واضح/غیر صافہِ				
conceal/hide	يخفى			
generally/normally/commonly				
	عمومنا			

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4 307

exciting	مثير
fair	عادل
grown-up	كبير/بالغ
narrate	یروی
repeat	يكرر

inspiring/astonishing unprejudiced/impartial adult/mature describe/detail duplicate/do again

boring/dull	ممل
prejudiced/partial	متحيز
immature/teenager/ adolescent هامراهق	غير ناض
conceal/hide/suppress	يخفى
stop/cease	يوقف

Check Point (1

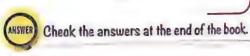
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The sky is today. I think it is going to be a nice day.
 - c) cloudy b) clear a) clean
- 2 I asked my teacher to what he said as I didn't get it. c) break a) hide b) delete
- 3 The woman gave the police the of the man who took her in. d) description
- c) deduction b) situation a) solution
- 4 The hotel offers a variety of leisure b) toys a) subjects
 - c) activities
- d) problems

d) muddy

d) brief

- 5 My wifethe children while I got their breakfast ready.
 - a) put on
- b) cleared
- c) wore
- d) dressed



Reading Text

Bed in Summer

In winter I get up at night And dress(1) by yellow candlelight(2). In summer quite the other way, I have to go to bed by day(3). I have to go to bed and see The birds still hopping(4) on the tree, Or hear the grown-up(5) people's feet Still going past me in the street. And does it not seem hard to you, When all the sky is clear(6) and blue, And I should like so much to play, To have to go to bed by day?



- يلبس (1)
- على ضوء الشموع (2)

- صافر (6)

Reading Text (2)

Khaled, 4:04 PM

The words Stevenson has used very clearly describe(1) the situations(2) he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's subject(3) is very interesting because everyone feels differently in different seasons(4). In my opinion, poets should write about everyday life. However, I think the second verse (5) is too long and its rhythm(6) is too slow.

Hamid, 5:36 PM

I love the language in the poem, especially the way Stevenson describes the light at different times of day. I also think the second verse is great because the rhymes⁽⁷⁾ in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite(8) boring because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting activities(9). I think poets should write about more exciting things.

يصف (1)
مواقف (2)
موضوع (3)
فصول السنة (4)
بيت شعر (5)
الوزن الشعرى (6)
القوافي (7)
إلى حد ما (8)
أنشطة (9)

Reading Text (3)

My favourite poem is Bed in Summer because it describes how I felt(1) when I was young. In summer I had to go to bed when it was light(2) and I hated(3) it. Like the author I wanted to be outside playing and I didn't think it was fair that everyone else was outside having fun.

It's a good length'6) for a poem, only three verses and l like the fact that the words rhyme⁽⁷⁾. I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember (8)! Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.

Which poems or poets do you like? Why?



1	ISM ISM
	شعرت (1)
	مـُضىء (2)
	كَرِهت (3)
	مؤلف (4)
	عادل (5)
	طول (6)
	يتطابق في القافية (7)
	يتذكر (8)

Why does she think Stevenson wrote this

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4 309

Vocabulary in Use



Notes on Vocabulary

	quiet	هادئ	We'll have to be quiet so as not to wake the baby,
1	quite	إلى حد ما/تمامًا	The food in the canteen is usually quite good.
	quit	يغادر (يترك العمل)	He quit his job after an argument with a colleague.
	lay – laid – laid جھز	يضع/تضع البيض/ي	 He laid his hand on my shoulder. The flies lay their eggs on uncovered food. John was laying on the table for lunch.
2	lie – lay – lain	ينام/يرقد	Don't lie in the sun for too long as it is very harmful.
	lie – lied – lied	يكذب	She lied to her father about her exam results.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

I love the language in the poem, especially the way Stevenson describes the light at different times of day.

لاحظ أن كلمة especially من الظروف التي تستخدم لوصف جملة كاملة أو فقرة.

This makes it easy to say.

جاء بعد make مفعول وبعد المفعول جاءت الصفة بمعنى يجعل.

▶ He makes me sleep early.

أما هنا فجاء بعد make مفعول وبعد المفعول جاء المصدر بمعنى يجبر.

check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: It is wrong for children to go to bedday. d) for b) by a) on 2 He injured his leg and now he can walk without a stick. d) hardy c) harden a) hard b) hardly 3 | was angry when | discovered that my son to me about his exam results. d) laid c) lied b) lay a) laid 4 I could answer the test in half an hour as it waseasy. d) quietly c) quit b) quiet a) quite Taha Hussein is the of Al-Ayam. d) playwright c) author b) publisher a) poet





- I love reading novels, Robert Stevenson's ones.

- a) specially
- c) especially

- **b)** promptly
 - d) incredibly



Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary Exercises

Re		pering Ounderstandin	g Applying Analysing Ctanswerfrom a. b, C	Evaluating © Creating	After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise.		
			Reading, Listening & Wo		I think number one will be (a), do you agree?		
	1	It isn't	to give him a better r	nark although we ha	ive the same numbe		
		of mistakes.					
		a) fare	•	c) verse			
	2	Poems which l	have a few numbers of				
		a) poets		c) rhythm			
	3	My grandmoth	her was the of	most of the stories the	nat I know.		
		a) narrated		c) narrative			
	4	My grandmot	her was the one who	most of the st	ories that I know.		
		a) narrated		c) narrative			
	5 Children mustn't use the cooker unlessare there to help th						
		a) grown-up	b) grown-ups	c) kids	d) toddlers		
	6	6 I asked my son toupstairs and get my phone. I was in a hurry.					
D,		a) walk	b) stay	c) hop	d) hope		
	7	He lost all his	moment.				
		a) situation	b) position	c) station	d) activity		
	8	Before the nev	w lesson, I always give r	my students a brief	of the last one		
		a) summer					
	9	We had to hav	e dinner byas	•			
		a) torch	b) wax	c) lamp	d) candlelight		
	10		ken" with "brol		لرة المرج التعليمية ٢٠٣٢		
		a) hops	b) plots	c) narrates	d) rhymes		
	11	is a regular repeated pattern of sounds in music, speech, etc.			•		
		a) Verse		c) Rhyme	d) Rhythm		
	12	After the baby	had slept, his mother				
		a) lied	b) lay	c) laid	d) lain		
	13		some in my ho	•			
		a) toys	b) trays	•	d) keys		

14 The students are very worried. The exam difficult for them.

c) looks

b) appears

a) seems

d) all mentioned

15	Most Egyptians speak in English. They can't speak it perfectly.				
	a) native		c) brok		smashed
16	6 The club arranges social and cultural for its members.				
9 5 9 4	a) activities	b) subjects	c) toys	d)	problems
(1	Expressions, Idio	ms, Prepositions, I	Derivatives, Syno	onyms & Antonyms	5
17	 Lasked my wif	e to tell me what	has happened	not in de	tail.
1	a) in particula		c) in br		on show
18		and I was eager t		•	
,	a) play	b) played			playing
19		my key while you		I think I have lost	it there.
3	a) at	b) up	c) for		like
20	Three boys	past us on r	mountain bikes	last week.	
	a) went	b) made	c) did		took
21	We want to do	thingsa	s we don't want	to do the same t	hings.
	a) differently			•	differences
3		correct answer			
22	I never liked lo	ng walks, especia	lly in winter. The	synonyms of the	e word
	"especially" are	and	*************** B		
	a) generally	b) interestingly	c) specifically	d) particularly	e) amazingly
23	I've got some v	ery exciting news	for you. The an	tonyms of the w	ord "exciting"
	are an	d		a) C 1	.) alasa
	a) dull	b) boring	c) interesting		e) clear
24	We stopped by	Ali's house for a l	orief visit. The sy	nonyms of the v	vora "briet
	arean	d		al) longélay	a) maturo
	a) long	b) short		d) lengthy	
25	The main chara	cter narrates the	story. The synor	lyms of the word	i Harrates
	areand		Nhome	d) describes	e) details
26	a) dresses		c) hops		e) details
20		the new tower ha	c) success	d) a success	e) succeed
27	a) a successful		c) success	a, a success	-,
	My father died.		c) aged	d) at the age of	e) ageing
	ine age of	b) for the age of	c) aged	a, at the age of	-, -99

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4 313



Lessons 3 & 4



Language

Important Notes



ر) افعال تتبع بـ ing - أو to + inf دون تغير في المعنى،

like	بحت	love	تحن
hate	یکره	prefer	يفضل
start	ايبدا	begin	ايبدا
continue	يستمر	intend	ينوى

- I like to play football.
- = I like playing football.
- He started to study English.
- = He started studying English.



- ١- عند وجود كلمة would أو اختصارها d' قبل الأفعال السابقة لابد أن يأتي بعدها (to + inf.).
- I'd like/hate/prefer/love to go to school early.
- ٢- إذا كانت Would تعبر عن زمن الماضى.
- 'd (like prefer love ...) to have + P.P.
- It's a pity we didn't visit Ali. I'd like to have seen him again.
 - 'd rather 'd prefer استخدامات

prefer

rather

- 1 'd prefer + to + inf.
 - I'd prefer to have lunch.
- 2 prefer + v-ing + to + v-ing
 - I prefer studying to sleeping.
- 3 'd prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf.
 - I'd prefer to study rather than sleep.

- 1 'd rather + inf.
 - I'd rather have lunch.
- 2 'd rather + inf. + than + inf.
 - I'd rather study than sleep.
- 3 'd rather + فاعل + past simple/past perfect
 - I'd rather he played well.

*) أفعال تتبع بـ ing أو (to + inf.) مع اختلاف في المعنى:

remember (to + inf.)	يتذكر ثم يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم بعد).
remember + (v-ing)	يتذكر أنه قام بالفعل (الفعل تم في الماضي).

- I remembered to phone her. (I remembered first, then I phoned her.)
- | remembered phoning her. (I phoned her and now I remember that.)

forget (to + inf.)	ينسى أن يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم).
forget + (v-ing)	قام بالفعل ونسي أنه قام به (الفعل تم).

- I forgot to go to that meeting. (I forgot so I didn't go.)
- I forgot going to that meeting. (I went to the meeting, but I forgot the action.)

regret (to + inf.)	يأسف لفعل شيء سوف يقوم به لأنه مضطر لذلك (الفعل لم يتم بعد).
regret + (v-ing)	يندم على فعل قام به (الفعل تم).

- I regret to say that your interview was not successful. (I am sorry to say that.)
- I really regret being so rude to my friend.

(The action here took place in the past and the regretting takes place now.)

stop (to + inf.)	يتوقف لكى يقوم بالفعل.
stop + (v-ing)	يتوقف عن القيام بالفعل.

- When he saw the restaurant, he stopped to eat. (the reason why he stopped)
- He decided to stop smoking as he felt so ill. (He no longer smokes.)

go on + (to + inf.)	ينتقل من عمل لآخر
go on + (v-ing)	يستمر (في القيام بنفس العمل)

- After he finished his maths homework, he went on to study English.
- My son went on studying English all night.

suggest/recommend + v-ing

- = suggest/recommend that + فاعل آخر + inf. or (should + inf.)
- I suggest going for a swim. = I suggest that we (should) go for a swim.

see – hear + مفعول + inf. see – hear + مفعول + v-ing رؤية واستماع الحدث كله رؤية واستماع جزء من الحدث

- I heard them talk about global warming. It was a very useful programme.
- I saw my friend Ali playing but I left before the end of the match.

the first - the second - the third - the last ... + n. + to + inf.

Hana was the last person to come to the party.

ask – decide – know – remember – forget – explain – understand

· هذه الأفعال إذا جاء بعدها أداة استفهام نستخدم .to + inf.

- We asked him how to get to the station.
- I haven't decided where to go yet.

make + مفعول + inf. = cause + مفعول + to + inf. make + مفعول + inf. = force + مفعول + to + inf. let + مفعول + inf. = allow + مفعول + to + inf.

يجعل ...

يجعل/يجبر ...

سمح ...

- My teacher always makes me study. (= causes me to study)
- I only did it as they made me do it. (= forced me to do it)
- He let me go out with my friends. (allowed me to go out)

- ولكن في حالة المبنى للمجمول نستخدم بعدها .to + inf.

He was made to come early.

check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Nader suggested that his sister with him.
 - a) going

b) go

c) has been

- d) goes
- 2 I'd like with my family. This makes me happy.
 - a) to go

b) going

c) to going

- d) go
- 3 You must stop your time if you want to get high marks.
 - a) to waste

b) waste

c) to wasting

- d) wasting
- 4 I always have fun comic films.
 - a) watch

b) watching

c) to watch

- d) to watching
- 5 Noha would rather lunch in the club.
 - a) to have

b) have

c) having

d) to having







Language Exercises

	Rem	embering • Understanding	Applying Analysing	Evaluating Creating	I think number one is (a)
	Cho	oose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c or	d:	len't H?
			ring summer. I swim r		
	1	1 lovedu	b) to swimming	c) swim	d) swam
	0	a) swimming	erything to the last time	me.	4) 3 W 4(1)
	2	a) to laws	b) leave	c) to leaving	d) leaves
1	2	L soon began	what the proble	ms were.	<u> </u>
	3	a) to understandi		b) understand	
		c) understands	119		
Ì	4		ooking at home		
	•	a) to buy	b) than buy	c) to buying	d) than buying
1	5	Would you like	out for a meal	tonight?	, 3
Į			b) to going		d) to go
	6	Could you explain	n how this m	ath problem?	
,		a) answering	b) to answer	c) to answering	d) answer
	7	Noha would prefe	erlunch in th	e club.	
•		al to have	b) have	c) having	d) to having
(8	You should avoid	friends with	such bad people.	إدارة نجع حمادى ٢٠٢٢
),)	a) to making	b) makes	c) making	a) to make
ĺ	9	I'll never forget	down in the m	iddle of the road. It w	as terrible.
4		a) breaking	b) to break	c) to breaking	d) broke
	10	The police never	allow in this a	area.	هدرسة الكويت - إدارة المنتزه - الإسكند أحماء حصر مطاع منا (الم
4		a) parking	b) park	c) to park	d) to be parked
	11	What a terrible th	ing! You forgot	the important doci	uments.
,		a) signing	b) sign	c) to signing	a) to sign
,	12	The postmen hav	e stoppedle	itters to the nouses in	Our area. We are w
Í		the age of the int	ernet now.	-) to delivering	d) delivering
		a) deliver	b) to deliver	vestorday's evams Sl	ne failed to answer
000	13	Jehan regrets	her time before	yesterday's exams. Si	إدارة شرق المحلة - الغربية ٢٠٢٢
		some questions.	1-)asting	c) to waste	d) will waste
9000		a) had wasted	b) wasting	*	عدرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات٢٠٢٢
20-00	14	I suggest that she	to the hospi	c) go	d) goes
	45	a) is going	b) will go g the motorway wher	n I saw a restaurant, so	I stopped
	15	I was driving alon	g the motorway when	i i sait a l'estadiaire, so	
- 1		something. a) eat	b) to eat	c) to eating	d) eating
139		a) cat	w/ to cat	_,	•

14	6 I forgot	my medicine,	so I took it twice.	معرضة بني محمد سلطان - المنيا ٢٠٢٠ ٢
Г	a) taking	b) to take	c) take	d) to taking
4	Marwa recor	nmended	. that new restaurant. She s	aid it was good
Ι,	a) trying	b) to try	c) to trying	d) that try
41	regretted	my mother wit	th the housework yesterda	y as she was really ill.
	a) helping	b) to help	c) not to help	d) not helping
40	like listening	to Dr El-Baz	on television. I can't mis	s a word of his speech.
	a) talking	b) to talk	c) to talking	d) talk
20	On my first da	ay at school, I reme	ember into the cla	ssroom and seeing
-	my teacher.			
	a) to go	b) went	c) to going	d) going
21	My father usu	ially stops	. us some sweets on his wa	y back home.
	a) to get	b) getting	c) to getting	d) get
22	Please, remine	d your brother	me the book he has l	porrowed.
	a) getting	b) to get	c) to getting	d) get
23	I don't always	recommend	on your own.	
	a) study	b) studying	c) to study	d) to studying
24	The police for	ed the criminal	c) to studythe truth about the	theft.
	a) tell	b) telling	c) to telling	d) to tell
25	I consider	Luxor and Ası	wan my best memory ever	•
	a) visit	b) to visit	c) to visiting	d) visiting
26	I remember	the Queen i	in London. It was a wonde	rful day.
	a) meet	b) to meet	c) meeting	d) to meeting
27			ot again to lose weight. Thi	s means he
	a) stopped eati		b) enjoyed eating	
00:	c) regretted to	eat a lot	d) forgot eating a l	Ot
28		ry that I had met A	hmed Mekky in Alexandri	a before. This means
	that			
	R a c	meet Ahmed Mekl	•	
		ing Ahmed Mekky		
	d) I rome and	eet Ahmed Mekky	in Alexandria.	
29	remember r	neeting Ahmed M	ekky in Alexandria.	manns that
	a) I romanate	do my homeworl	k before going to bed. This	means that
	b) I remarala and	d doing my home	work	
	first I romand	hat I do my homev	work	
,	d) first I did mod	ered, then I did m	y nomework	
30	forgot to being	nomework, then I	remembered neans that	
	my mobile is	my mobile. This m	neans that	ith ma naw
•	my mobile is v my mobile wil	vith me now	b) in y mobile isite i	
	, wonie Mil	be with me	d) I didn't buy a mo	bile

Study

Lessons 3 & 4



General Skills

للعزيدها القرح والتدويات برجي الرجوع لملحة المعالات.



(I) Life Skills

Making polite requests:

- 1. Can you help me + inf./to + inf.?
- 2. Could you possibly help me ...?
- 3. I wonder if you could help me ...?

تقديم طلبات مهذبة،

- 4. Do you think you could help me ...?
- 5. Could you do me a favour, please?
- 6. Could you do something for me, please?

Reply to requests:

- 1. Yes, sure I can do this.
- 2. Yes, of course.
- 3. Certainly. What is it?

- 1. No, I'm afraid I can't.
- 2. Sorry I can't do this.
- 3. I'm sorry I'm busy now.



(II) Writing

- When you write a review of anything especially a poem, you should follow the following steps:
 - 1. What is the poem you are going to write about?
 - 2. Who is the author of the poem?
 - 3. Do you think the rhyming is good or not?
 - 4. What is the main idea of the poem and why the author wrote this?

Model Essay

A review of a poem

I really like reading poetry and I like short poems in general. My favourite poem is Bed in Summer by the poet Robert Stevenson. I like it because it describes how I felt when I was young. In summer, I had to go to bed when it was light and I hated it. Like the author, I wanted to be outside playing and I didn't think it was fair that everyone else was outside having fun. It's a good length for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact that the words rhyme. I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember! Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.

Test Yourself





Unit 6

Lessons 3 & 4

Understanding Analysing Evaluating @ Remembering Applying Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 The footballer had to after his injury in his right leg in the match. d) hop b) crawl c) run a) hope 2 | like outdoor such as hiking or climbing. d) briefs b) subjects a) activities 3 At the party, her jewels sparkled in the d) toy c) candlelight **b)** description a) situation 4 Menna was playing happily with her new when her father came. d) situation c) activity b) subject a) toy 5 My father the money on the table to persuade the man to sell his car. c) lied b) laid 6 Her mother told her to herself in her nicest clothes. d) narrate c) describe b) clear 7 Families, those with young children, benefit from the health programme. d) fairly c) excitingly b) especially a) nearly 8 It was impossible to see everything during our visit to Paris. d) brief c) brave b) pure a) bare 9 I really try to forget this very bad man who made me annoyed. d) meet c) to meet b) to meeting 10 I regret to the cinema. It was not a very good film. d) to going c) going a) go b) to go 11 I still remember to Alexandria as a reward for my success. c) to be taken d) being taken a) take b) taking 12 My sister hates by air. She gets nervous every time she does. a) to flying d) flew c) flies b) to fly 13 Part of this exam includes in Arabic. d) writing a) write c) written b) to write 14 ladvised my children their time before the exam. a) to waste d) not wasting c) not to waste b) wasting

15	I always hea	or the birdsin the	mornings.	
(O.)	a) to sing	b) to singing	c) singing	d) sings
16	I don't	meeting you here. Wh	nat a lovely surprise!	
	a) expect	b) fancy	c) predict	d) stand
2 R	ead the follo	wing passage, then ans	wer the questions:	

The World Cup is one of the biggest sporting events in the world. This great football championship features⁽¹⁾ players from thirty-two nations. The World Cup was created in 1928, and the first World Cup games were held⁽²⁾ in Uruguay in 1930. It was an all-male contest at that time. The first women's World Cup was held in China in 1991. Surprisingly, football is not quite as popular in the United States as basketball, or baseball, but it is still popular around the world.

People all over the continents often get up in the middle of the night or skip work to watch their nation's team compete. People in the winning nations celebrate their teams' victories. When Pelé played for Brazil in 1970, his team won the World Cup. This team is considered one of the greatest. Pelé is regarded as the best football player by many fans. Brazil has won a total of five World Cups, far more than any other nation. Another matchless player was Maradona who was regarded as one of the greatest footballers who played the game, and was awarded FIFA Best Player of the 20th Century, but he was not a good idol like Pelé. He was known for drug addiction and he was arrested in Argentina for cocaine possession.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	From the context of the p	passage, which	is the best antonym	for "victories"?
---	---------------------------	----------------	---------------------	------------------

a) Wins.

b) Happiness.

c) Results.

d) Defeats.

2 Who is Pelé?

a) A cocaine addict.

b) A Brazilian team.

c) An average football player.

d) One of the greatest football players.

3 In America, basketball and baseball arefootball.

a) more popular than

b) less popular than

c) as popular as

d) more dangerous than

(2) اليم

(1) يضم

4	People all over the world admired	d Maradona despite
•	a) his bad behaviour	b) leading his team to the World Cup
	c) his matchless talent	d) scoring so many goals
5	The FIFA Best Player award goes to	o players who
	a) addict drugs	b) have achievements in the game
	c) take part in the World Cup	d) deal in drugs
6		ir nation's team matches are
	the game.	
	a) crazy about	b) hardly interested in
	c) have no affection for	d) might be arrested
7	The first women's World Cup was	held in
1	a) Africa	b) Uruguay
	c) Asia	d) South America
2	In the last paragraph, the pronour	n "He" refers to
9	a) Pelé	b) Maradona
	c) the good idol	d) local icon
	It has become an important sour	
	2. Reading literature(3) introduces us	s to other people's experiences (4) and
	cultures ⁽⁵⁾ which are very differen	t from our own.
3	3. We should all work hard in all field the most developed and prosper	ds so that Egypt will become one of ous ⁽⁶⁾ countries.
	anslate into English: الاقتصاديـة والاجتماعية. فمى تعرض المشاكل وتقد	'- للصحافة دور كبيـر فـى تنميـة الوعـى(*) العام تجاه القضايــا ^(^) لها الحلول.

*******************				بة السياح.
بروح التعاون والود	بن أســرة واحدة ويتحلون ب	ت تبين لنا أن المصريي	ها مصر في بعض الأوقا	زمات التي تتعرض لد
***************************************		••••••		٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠
How to	translate			***************************************
F HOW LO	transtate			
		ا في اللغة الإنجليزية.	بة العربية يجب إظهارها	مائر المستترة في اللغ
		.You	should work h	ر ان تعمل بحد ard
	- يتناول).	دى – يتمتع – يمتلك –	۱ لأكثر من معنى (لـ – لـ	رحمة to have.
			دول العالم.	ر مكانة عظيمة بين
ypt has a great	position among	the world cour	ntries.	
 A novel you na 	of about ONE HUI ave read and enjo ce of teaching lite	oyed.		s on the follo
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follo
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follo
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follow
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follo
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follow
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follow
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follow
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follow
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follow
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follow
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		s on the follow
 A novel you na 	ave read and enjo	oyed.		I used the
The important	ave read and enjoice of teaching lite	oyed. erature at scho	l wrote the	I used the punctuation (9) introduce

Study

Chapter 6 (Treasure Island)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

VC)		
advantage	ميزة	
alive	على قيد الحياة	
cannon	مدفع	
careful	حذر/حريص	
contact	يتصل ب	
cry	یبکی	
enter	يدخل	
fort	حصن	
including	بما فيها/متضمنا	

medicines	ادوية	
move	يتحرك	
prevent	يحول دون/يمنع	
sinking	غارقًا	
slowly	ببطء	
supplies	إمدادات	
weapons	أسلحة	
well defended	محصن	
wind	رياح	

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

a good servant to him	خادم جید له
at all	على الإطلاق
at the other side	في الجانب الآخر
at the same time	في الوقت نفسه
big enough for	کبیرة بما یکفی ل
easy for them to	سهل بالنسبة لهم أن
far from	بعید عن
fell down	سقط
fire his gun	يطلق النار من سلاحه
from a different direction	من اتجاه مختلف
impossible for them	مستحيل بالنسبة لهم

made us all move	جعلنا جميعنا نتحرك		
move towards	يتحرك نحو		
on the island	على الجزيرة		
one side of the boat	جانب واحد من القارب		
prevent the boat from	يمنع القارب من		
stay on	يبقى على		
take it down	ينزله للأسفل		
to get there first	للوصول إلى هناك أولًا		
to put food and more weapons into لوضع الطعام والمزيد من الأسلحة في			
walk a little way	يمشى قليلًا		
we're finished	انتمينا		

Unit 6 Chapter 6



Novel Exercises

Chapter (6)

0	Remem	bering

Understanding

Applying

Analysing

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

١	,	Stories about	often include a se	earch for buried treas	ure.
İ		a) applies	b) supplies	c) pirates	d) flags
	2	Our brave soldie	ersour country	against any attacks.	
		a) define	b) reflect	c) surround	d) defend
	3	Can you please.	the manager ar	nd tell him about our	needs?
		a) communicate	b) connect	c) react	d) contact
	4	He was arrested	as he hadhis g	un at some people ir	the street
		a) illed	b) fined	c) framed	d) found
	5	The enemies cou	ıldn't get into the town	as it was	a) round
		a) well organised	b) well arranged	c) well defended	d) well dressed
	6	There were 30 str	udents in the class,	only ten girls.	, wen aressed
		a) containing	b) including	c) enclosing	d) consisting
7 They had a/an over their enemies as they had guns but their enemie					
,)		a) disadvantage	b) demerit	c) con	d) advantage
8 The clever pilot could the plane from damaging.					
		a) predict	b) move	c) prevent	d) remove
-	9	Ais a larg	ge gun with wheels.		
		a) canoe		c) pistol	d) rocket
1	0		the woman and tried	to rob her.	
			b) attached	-	d) attended
1	1		the station, the train v	was about to leave.	
		a) got	b) arrived	c) went	d) reached
1	2		es should stand agains		destructive
	_	a) supplies		c) weapons	d) medicines
1	3		d to get through as the		soldiers around it.
_		a) fort	b) forth	c) entrance	d) soft
1	4	They decided to this old fence and put up a strong wall.			
_	_	a) take in		c) take up	d) take to
1	3	_	phone them as there w		
		a) possible	b) probable	c) impolite	d) impossible

Unit 6

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

_					
	DAF		nah.	OF	na
-	DAR	ne			115

Understanding

Applying

Analysing

Evaluating
Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Newspapers ha	ve up so	me facts about the famous	actor's private life.
	a) plug		c) drill	d) done
2	Have you got a	nyon op	ening a new school in Cair	0?
	a) literature	b) culture	c) tradition	d) chaos
3	He was arrested	d foragai	inst the government.	
	a) protecting	b) making	c) stealing	d) plotting
4	Can you think o	of a for "p	eace"?	
	a) rhyme	b) rhythm	c) plot	d) verse
5	I think of Germa	an as having	hair but a lot of them a	re dark.
	a) fur	b) dark	c) tair	a) bold
6	The husband w	rote his valentine	e's message to his wife in	***************
1	a) rhythm	b) verse	c) cold	d) reverse
7	! I will gi	ve you a lift to yo	our workplace.	Al Llow in
	a) Get off	b) Take in	c) Run into	d) Hop in
8	Please,	me off for a while	e. I want to finish my work.	all take
	a) lie	b) lav	c) drop	a) take
9	I am really	with the idea	of moving to Cairo for a ye	d) doing
	a) toving	b) playing	c) making	d) doing
10	What have you	gotup fo	or the weekend?	d) dono
	-1	h) lined	c) plan	d) done
11	He his e	ntire savings on	the project, but he thinks i	LISTIAIU LOTTIANE
	a profit.			d) owed
	a) adventured	b) earned	c) gained	
12	Please, be	and get to th	e point. We do not have m	nuch time for further
	details.			d) abbreviate
	a) shorten up	b) brief	c) shut up	a) appleviate
13			re likely to get a sunburn.	-I) fair
	a) dark	b) black	c) fine	d) fair
14	They came to	the drivew	ay today to make it availal	ole for walking.
4-	a) discover	b) gravel	c) ease	d) prove
15			ich television, so my know	leage of
	culture is somew	hat limited.		Danielan saare
	a) similar	b) infamous	c) popular	d) unknown

l	16	Which sentence	of the following is CO	RRECT?	
Į.		a) I prefer eating	fish than meat.		
		b) I'd rather to sti	udy in the early morn	ing.	
		c) I regret not to	visit my uncle yesterd	day.	
IJ		d) I remember fri	ends criticising my st	yle of clothes.	
	17	A: Why to	o Alexandria togethe	r? B: It's a good idea.	
I		a) go	b) to go	c) not go	d) going
ı	18	No one can stop	her what she	chooses.	a) going
		a) buy	b) to buy	c) buying	d) to buying
ĺ	19	My mobile needs	n'tlt works v	vell.	a) to buying
		a) repair	b) repairing	c) be renaired	d) repaired
١	20	Let's nois	se because the baby i	s asleep.	w) repaired
1		a) make	b) making		d) not make
ı	21	He was made	to the police.		a) not make
ı		a) lie	b) lying	c) to lie	d) to lying
1	22	Theard Dr. Magdy	y Yacoub talking on ti	he radio. This means t	hat
		a) i neard nothing	g ne said	b) I heard everything	na he didn't sav
•		c) I heard everyth		d) I heard part of w	hat he said
	23	My friend seems	weight.		matric said
)0		a) losing	•	c) to be lost	d) to have lost
	24	Try using this me	dicine. This means th	at	a) to have 103t
		a) I know this me	dicine must work		
1		b) I know this me	dicine won't work		
1		c) I hope this med	dicine won't work		
1		d) I want you to u	ise it and see what w	ill happen	
	25	Why do you go o	nus the same	e stories again and ag	ain?
1		a) to tell	b) telling	c) to telling	d) tell
	26	Isleep lat	te to keep fit.		
4		a) would rather to	o not	b) wouldn't rather	
1		c) would rather d		d) would rather no	
	27	You keep	about your ex-fiance	ée. No wonder she lef	t you.
		a) talk	b) talking		d) to talking
	28	I want to work ab	proad, but not if it me	eans to live wi	thout friends.
		I don't like that.			
•,		a) having		c) to having	d) have
12	29	Ali was alarmed.	the new chair	rman of the company	the following week.
1		a) to see	b) see	c) to seeing	d) seeing
3000	30	The little boy was	s clinging to his moth	ner's legthat he	wanted a candy bar
1		a) screams	b) screaming	c) to scream	d) to screaming

Unit 6



Al-Adwaa Test



Remembering

Understanding

Applying

Analysing

Evaluating

Choose the	Two correct answers of	the Five options:		
4 Lwante	ed to improve my Frence	ch to travel to Paris. T	he synonyr	ns of
the wo	ord "improve" are	and		
1 doct	ine b) describe	c) enhance	d) dig	e) develop
2 Young	people's style of life is	very different	ours.	e) from
a) with	b) for	c) about	d) to	e) nom
	correct answer from	a, b, c or d:		
a I tried t	oon my good	foot while holding o	nto my frie	nd Ramy.
	h) crawl	c) run		d) hop
	- back about the life o	f someone a/an	*******	No stable graphy
				d) autobiography
	co of the accident is a l	old Mercedes that we	as coming	d) another's
5 The driv	er of the car was lucky	to stay arter	the terribi	e accident.
	to see the	eir children successfu	il in their ii	Ves.
	hlusiches	C) DCCOIIICS		d) supposes
	CDTHORY	when I was learning	Linging	d) hopeful
	- cooperative	2 Dui cicaia.		a) Hoperui
9 Hesham	likes a rest in t	ne arternoon as he i	eels tirea.	d) takon
	h taka	CILOUN		d) taken
10 Hanyano	his sister enjoy	tennis after schoo	ol every day	y.
a) nlaving	b) to play	c) to playing	9	d) play
1 Amina ad	lmitted notho	w to answer the les	t.	Dimensing
	L. Manager	C) to know		d) knowing
2 I saw ther	nown b) known nangrily, so l l	eft the room to let t	hem comp	olete their
argument				
_	b) talk	c) to talk		d) to talking
3 It is very n	ice here, but I really m	iss my frien	ds.	
2)		el speind		d) seen
Iranent	was that Nahil will a	ot join the team. I k	(now you v	want him with us.
a) telling	you that Nabil will it	c) for telling		d) to be told

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. The dark figure stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17	The strange sound, the creaky st	airs, the darkness and the dark figure
	Sally.	
	a) screamed	b) scared
	c) cared	d) entertained
18	Sallyreading ghost storie	es.
	a) enjoyed	b) did not enjoy
	c) feared	d) avoided
19	Who does the underlined phrase	"The dark figure" refer to?
	a) The strange noise.	b) Sally.
	c) Sally's brother.	d) The ghost.
20	Sally realised it was not a ghost w	hen her brother
	a) stretched his hand	b) turned on the lights
	c) walked down the steps	d) laughed

27	the follo				65:84%	85:100% Well done!
27	the follo	wing:			TY (150) word:	s on
		989446444444444444444444444444444444444				*****************
26	Scientific	e into Arabic: c researchers h effect on man'	ave proved the spersonality.	nat the early e	experiences of c	hildhood
25	Translate لوث بكل	e into English ن التلوث البيئى. فالتا	: نبذلها للتخلص مر	ى نجاح الجهود التر	ة على الأرض يتوقف عا دمار شديد للبيئة.	ن مستقبل الحياة نواعه يؤدى إلى د
24	a) Read	ing is Importa s Coward	-	b) Scary Tal	es Effects other's Trick	
04	-	asleep shopping title to this pa	ssage is"	b) got outd) didn't lik	e tricks	
23	c) hadn' Sally tho	t entered the lught it was a g		d) had hidd all of her fam	len under the be	ed
	Ken	n't give a hand when Sally been outside			•	
22		/4 1		b) couldn't		

Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

continue (v) – d	يستمر
cruel (adj)	قاس/وحشی
encourage (v) – d	يشجع
mysterious (adj)	سری/غامض
old-fashioned (adj) قديمة	عتيق/قديم الطراز/موضا
password (n)	كلمة السر
penfriend (n)	صديق مراسلة
pleasant (adj)	مېھج/سار
reply (n) (v) – y ied	رد/یرد
roof (n)	سقف

soon (adv)	سريعا/قريبا
surprisingly (adv)	غجاة <i>اباندهاش</i>
swing (n)	أرجوحة
action (n)	حركة
adventure (n)	مغامرة
character (n)	شخصية
fun (n)	متعة
mysterious (adj)	غامض
real (adj)	حقيقى
situations (n)	مواقف

Vocabulary on Listening

contain (v) – ed	يحتوى على
copy (v) – <i>y</i> ied	ينسخ
cover (n) (v) – ed	غلاف/يغطى
judge (v) – d	يحكم
paintings (n)	رسومات

print (v) – ed	يطبع
printing (n)	طباعة
similarly (adv)	بالمثل
the Dark Ages	العصور المظلمة
weak (adj)	ضعيف

Workbook Vocabulary

access (v) – ed	يصل إلى
balance (n)	توازن
concern (n)	اهتمام
content (n)	محتوى
digital devices (n)	الأجهزة الرقمية
educational (adj)	تعليمى
essential (adj)	ضروری/جوهری

pattern (n)	نمط
physically (adv)	بدنينا
research (n)	بحث علمي
screen (n)	شاشة
skill (n)	مهارة
solution (n)	حل
well-educated (adj)	متعلم جيدًا

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

keep on a compu	ter يحتفظ على الحاسب الآلى
on a ship	على سفينة
recommend to	يوصى لـ
arrange for	یرتب لـ
copy onto	ينقل إلى
bad for	سيئ لـ

send away to	يطرد إلى
take a long time to	يأخذ وقتا طويلًا لـ
with care	بالعناية
details about	تفاصيل عن
full of	مملوء بـ

Reading Text (1)

Communication is easy today. Many people use apps on their smartphones to talk to their friends. When we send a message to a friend, we take it for granted that he or she will reply very soon.

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had penfriends. These were people they did not always meet, but people they chose to write to about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive, but penfriends were very popular.

An example is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first decided to write to each other in the 1930s, and are now perhaps the longest two people ever to be penfriends. Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend continued to write to her. Like Nellie, Daphe lived on a farm and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. As well as letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter.

Nellie still prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use technology to communicate.

Surprisingly, there are now many online clubs for penfriends. They encourage people to write letters to penfriends around the world, and they are very successful. Many say that writing letters is relaxing and a warmer way to communicate than with an email or text. You do not need apps, passwords or antivirus software. As Nellie says, 'Just a pen and paper will do'.

Reading Text (2)

Most Helpful Customer Reviews

A fantastic adventure story!

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's *Kidnapped* is not as great as *Treasure Island* or as exciting as *The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, but it is full of action and really fun. I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his mysterious uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a cruel man and he tricks David. He arranges for a ship to take David away to America. However, David manages to escape with a friend and that is just the start of their adventures. I recommend this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

Not the best book for me

As far as I'm concerned, this book is too old-fashioned. The story is interesting and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the characters are very real. David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. I prefer to read more modern books. *Kidnapped* is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canada)

My favourite book!

Kidnapped has so much action and adventure! This really is my favourite book. David Balfour's uncle tries to send him away to America on a ship, but David escapes and makes friends with a man called Alan Breck. Together they travel through Scotland and face many dangerous and exciting situations. I love all the details about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will definitely read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)

Listening Text



Interviewer: Hello, today I'm talking to Professor Marwan Shabana, a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about the future of technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?

Professor: That's true, although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

Interviewer: What are you worried about?

Professor : Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the Dark Ages, because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to have an information Dark Age in the future.

Interviewer: Why is that?

Professor : Today we use computer technology for almost all our information. We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is fantastic, of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today quickly becomes old. I think that we'll lose a lot of material because new technology won't be able to read it.

Interviewer: But we'll copy all the important information onto our new technology, won't we?

Professor : I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to save, or we will forget the passwords to give us this information.

Interviewer: What can we do about this?

Professor : In my opinion, we need to print more, like we did in the past. Look in a museum and you will see wonderful old paintings, photographs, maps and so on. With care, these will be with us for a long, long time.

Interviewer: So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?

Professor : I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow? We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping it on a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

Interviewer: It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.



Workbook Exercises

O Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord;

I S	110022			
4	I don't know wha	at to do, so I am going to	ask my uncle for	203800
•	al an	b) some	c) a	d) arry
2	There is always a	lot of before you	ican go on a plane.	
Ka	the lange	h) security	c) maiware	6,12,00
3	the Faci	ulty of Engineering when	I grow up, it's my in	treft sp
J	a) will join		b) join	
	-lng to in	in	d) am joining	
	Most people take	e clean water for,	but not all places h	ave it.
4	. tod	b) given	c) naving	
-	My cousin spend	s a lot of time ph	otos on the interne	t.
5	1 mast	b) posted	c) posting	d) posts
0	Your computer	is very easy to gue	ess: it's 1, 2, 3, 4!	
6	-l ann	b) software	e) virus	d) password
64	I want to write	short story. It looks	s like fun.	
7		b) the	c) an	d) a
0	You will find infor	mation about the sports	club on the school	
8) mmunicatio	n b) connection	c) noticeboard	d) notice
	Bamy promised	me to finish my so	chool project.	
9	-1 holps	b) help	Chelping	d) to help
40	Refere you plant a	tree, you'll need to	. a hole.	
		h) ant	() lake	d) want
44	a) dig	ested to the libra	ary to borrow some	poetry books.
	.)	h) to go	c) to going	2, 3 - 3
10	a) go	the for us to all	travel in cars witho	ut drivers.
12		b) technology	c) scientist	d) model
12	a) speed	ad yesterday is really inte		
13		b) An	c) The	d) No article
14	a) A	tphones, so they are all	to the inter	met.
14		b) communicated	c) disconnected	d) connected
	a) joined	b) Communicated		

15	We never allow	this sch	nool.	
	a) bully	b) bullying	c) to bully	d) is bullied
16	The email said it	was from a bank	, but we all knew it w	
	a) software	b) lock	c) scam	d) hack
2 c	omplete the text brackets:	with the past s	imple or past conti	nuous form of the verbs
		•	ce Tourism	
th m sc	ne future? Some p noney in the futur o it (4)b	eople say "Spac e. The training se available to r	e Tourism" is (2) programme (3) nost people. Howeve	ne moon for a holiday into generate a lot of cost over \$200.000, er, some companies have me astronauts in the next
tv	vo years. Perhaps y	your grandchild		e their holidays on Mars!
1	I don't think that	t people	. (ever live) on the m	oon.
2	Aisha decided	(buy) a t	ravel book.	
3	Robert Louis Ste	venson always	wanted(be)	a writer.
4	I (play) v play too?	olleyball with m	ny cousins at the wee	kend. Do you want to
5	The phone is ring	ging. l(i	answer) it.	
6	Look at those clo	ouds! It	(rain).	
7	Do you enjoy	(read) poe	ms?	
8	We didn't understo it again.	stand the record	ling, so the teacher s	suggested (listen)
4 Tra	inslate into Arabi	ic:		
1	Do you think ma	n will live on the	e moon in the future	?
2	Young people are	e able to share i	n doing voluntary w	ork in different fields.
(5) Tra	ınslate into Engli			
			اتف المحممان كانشهن	١- دائمًا أتذكر أن أغير كلمة السر له
				٢- علينا أن نستغل أوقات الفراغ في م
(Rea	ad the following	passage, then	answer the question	ns:
338				

Is screen time good?

Many people like to access information and social media easily. But is it bad for us to spend so much time in front of a screen?

On the one hand computers, tablets and smartphones are useful tools for communicating with friends and family. Young people can use the internet for its educational content, learn important research skills and also see a variety of cultures from around the world.

On the other hand, technology can make young people less physically active. And there are also concerns that the light that comes from digital devices can cause health problems. For example, looking at a screen at night can make it more difficult to sleep. The internet is still quite new, so we do not really know what the long-term effects that using it are going to have on our health.

The internet has also introduced us to new words for problems that people

did not have in the past.

Your parents did not have cyberbullying, for example. There have always been scams, but problems such as phishing for personal information and hacking into banks are also quite new.

In the end, the solution is about balance. Technology can help us to develop new skills and it can open up the world. We will almost certainly have more technology in the future, too. We need to learn how to use it carefully for the good of everyone. However, physical activity and regular sleep patterns are essential too. Balance both and we can all live in a healthy, well-educated world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

4	According to the text, people like technology because they can
	According to the territy

a) play games

b) find information

c) take pictures

a) communication

b) education

c) physical exercise

3 People are worried that the light from tablets can cause difficulty in

a) sleeping

b) reading

c) turning off the screen

4 In the past, there were

a) never any scams

b) no words for some of today's problems

c) different words for the same problems

B) Answer the following questions:

339 Revision 2 Units 4, 5 & 6

- What is the most positive effect of having access to the internet, in your opinion? Why?
- 6 What sort of new technology will we have more of in the future?
- 7 In what ways do you balance using technology with staying active?

Write what you would say in the following situations:

- 1 A friend tells you that all sports are boring. You do not agree.
- 2 The teacher asks you to begin a presentation about the advantages of the internet.
- 3 A friend asks you if you can help him/her with a project, but you are busy.

Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

- 1 The children were all wearing an uniform.
- 2 Excuse me, can you give me advices?
- 3 Is this computer connection to the internet?
- 4 We have our tickets! We will go to London in the summer!
- 5 You look thirsty, I am going to get you a drink.
- 6 One day, I think we are all living in very tall buildings.
- 7 Robert Louis Stevenson wrote stories and poets.
- 8 Sorry, I forgot buying bread when I went to the shops.
- 9 I promise phoning you when I arrive at out cousins' house.
- 10 I don't suppose could you help me carry this bag?

(150) words on the Two topics. Write about (150) words on the topic:

- 1 Write an email to a friend about a problem or a decision you have to make. Include some information about the situation and ask your friend for advice.
- Write an email to a friend who has moved to a new town. Include some advice about how to make new friends and arrange a time when you can visit them.



Novel Exercises

Chapters (4-6) SB

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	People who suffer	r from starvation usually	need food	
_	a) cupplies	b) survevs	c) reviews	d) analysis
	Our brave army so	oldiers our coun	try against enemies.	
2	a) offend	b) defend	c) attack	d) fight
^	When did you	to your office?		
	-1 ctav	b) reach	c) arrive	d) get
•	Lucually	ny friends by using my r	nobile phone.	
4	a) communicate	b) connect	c) contact	d) control
_	· in a hoar	w metal weapon.		
	· 1 · 6-	h) cannon	c) pistol	d) gun
•	What are the	and disadvantages s	sides of the internet.	
6		h) naints	c) sides	d) demerits
~7	My mother	down to take the little	girinto nei arris.	n
7		la) fall	CIVILLIC	d) raised
_	Lusad to depend	on myself and do the ho	IIIework	own.
	The young man he	Laured facilishly so neo	ple believed he was	
	a) Wise	to save the	6 2111b Hour Sure, an	
	A Lama	h) nian	e/ piani	d) pain
	a) plane	to look for the	of the pharaohs.	
11	Archaeologists try	b) pressures	c) treasures	d) sessions
	a) pleasures	is to end the m	atch.	
12	The referee blew in	b) fire	c) gun	d) voice
	a) whistle	b) fire	doctor.	
13		,,, you should see your	c) review	d) custom
	a) habit	b) disease	-	
14	I saw a lot of boats	near the sea	c) valley	d) canal
	a) shore	b) bank	The state of the s	
15	We our frie	end Ali because he neve	a) truct	d) distrust
	a) disagree	b) agree	c) trust	-
16	In the morning, I us	sually see a lot of birds	on theor the	d) trunks
	a) roots	b) branches	c) seeds	u) trains

Revision 2 Units 4, 5 & 6

341

1	7 Children played or	theand n	nade sandcastles.	
	a) beach	b) bank	c) shore	d) mud
1	8 Can I the p	oetry competition	, please?	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	a) take place	b) take part	c) go	d) join
1	9 At work, the team	has a great	. who tells each on	e what to do.
	a) fool	b) captain	c) leader	d) fellow
2	O The worker used a	to make a	hole on the groun	d.
	a) saw	b) spade	c) knife	d) hammer
2	Read and fill in the	missing word, usi	ng the words in th	ne box:
	guarded	prevent	role	treasures
	The ancient Fount	ian civilisation is	woll knows - "	
	Egyptian archaeologi	ists are trying to fin	veli-known all ove	r the world. Even today
	important things nee	d to be well	10 the(1)	of the Pharaohs. Such
	Me must (2)	d to be well	(2) to stop po	eople from taking them
	Our great civilization	ariyone from try	ing to damage or:	steal anything related to
	monuments	it is the(4)	of all of us to	protect our wonderfu
	monuments.			
3	Answer these quest	ions:		
	1. Do agree that Flint			
	2. Describe the Treas			
	3. Was Jim mistaken	when he decided t	to go to the island?	Why do you think so?
	4. Do you think that.			
	5. What do we find or	ut about the charac	ter of Silver when l	he goes onto the island?
	Choose the correct a	nswer:		
	1jumped b	ehind a tree. So, Ji	m decided to walk	back towards the
	a) A huge animal		b) Ben Gun	
	c) Flint		d) John Silve	er
	2 Jim thought that	Ben Gun was crazy	because	
	a) he wanted to kil			
	b) he said he had f			
	c) he said he was ri			
	d) he asked Jim to			
		icha mini money		
2/15				

- 3 What happened when Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates?
 - a) No one was killed.
 - b) They fired at him and he was injured.
 - c) They cried and ran away.
 - d) One of them fell.
- 4 When Dr Livesy and Hunter reached the island, they walked a little way and then they found a fort which
 - a) had been destroyed before
 - b) was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended.
 - c) was not big enough and was very badly defended
 - d) was small and not defended well

6 Match characters with events:

Characters	Events
1. Jim	a) was left on the island by ship and lived on fish and fruit there.
2. Silver	b) said, "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"
3. Ben Gun	c) couldn't trust anything Silver said.
4. Captain Smollett	d) helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore.
5. Dr Livesy	e) is the narrator of Chapter 6.

1 Imagine that you are Jim. Write a diary entry about your time on the island.



Al Adwaa Test



Units 4, 5 & 6

				-										201.0
@ I	Remembe	ering	Understa	nding	Applying	Ana	lysing	Evalu	ating	Crea	ting			
Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:														
ŀ	1 Do	you	know	how	the phor	ne go	t bro	ken?	The s	ynor	nyms c	of the	word	
	"b	roke	n" are	********	and	*********								
	a)	amb	iguous	b)	damage	d	c) c	rushe	d	d)	foggy	/	e) mature	
2	2 All	we a	are aski	ng fo	or is a fair	wage	e. The	e anto	nym	s of 1	he wo	ord "fa	air" are	
N O			*********											*****
	a)	leng	thy	b)	prejudice	ed	c) c	loudy	,	d)	adult		e) partial	
C	hoos	e the	corre	ct an	swer fro	ma,	b, c c	ord:						
3	Ter	n tou	rists we	ere	by	a ga	ng in	a ren	note	area.	,			
	a) [kidn	apped		b) impro	ved			c) sa	ved		d) disappear	ed
4	111	go h	unting	alon	e, you ha	ve no	sen	se of.	*********	at	all!			
1	a) :	succ	ess		b) humo	ur			c) ac	lvent	ure	d) loyalty	
5	Eac	ch gr	oup is	name	ed after a	fictio	onal (خيالر	*********	like	Micke	еу Мо	ouse.	
	a) 1	role			b) chara	cter			c) pa	art		d) device	
6	The	e pol	ice are	inve	stigating	the		dea	ths o	of chi	ldren a	at the	e hospital.	
	a)	pleas	ant		b) clear				c) m	yster	ious	d) clean	
7	You	u sho	uld ne	ver	a ¡	perso	n by	their	appe	aran	ce.			
	a) j	udg	9		b) teach				c) kn	ow		d	help	
8	The	e cor	npany v	will a	rrange	***********	. a ta	xi to r	neet	you	at the	airpo	ort.	
	a) \	with			b) for			(c) to			d)	by	
9	lt	••••••	alon	g tim	e since l	met r	ny fri	end E	hab.					
	a) \	was			b) is			•	c) ha	d bee	en	d)	will be	
10	Rar	nia		ate v	vhen she	was o	on ho	oliday.	She	no lo	nger (does	now.	
	a) (usua	ly sleep	os				I) is	used	to slee	eping	1	
			to sleep								sleep			
11	On	*******	his	your	nger brot	her, h	e felt	some	ethin	g wr	ong in	his s	peech.	

a) was hearing

b) heard

d) hear

c) hearing

12his long study, he did so many researches. c) When d) As soon as a) As b) During Mido is in Tanta with his family. He Paris on business. a) has gone to c) has gone d) has been to b) has been 14 I can't move and go to my company as I my leg. d) would break a) had broken c) breaks b) have broken 0. 15 I don't fancy that film. There is a lot of violence in it. d) watching c) watches b) watched a) watch 16 She denied the dishes as she was afraid of her mother. c) to breaking d) break a) breaking b) to break

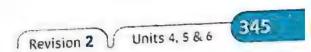
Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"She's coming. Hide it quickly! When Miss Farida entered the classroom, everyone stood up and greeted her. She gave them a smile. The girls noticed that there was sadness in her eyes. Poor miss Farida. They wished with all their hearts that they could do something to help her. Miss Farida explained that she would give anything to stay as their form teacher, but she had no choice. Her father was gravely ill. Her mother was too elderly to be left alone with him.

She simply had to return to her hometown in a neighboring country. Looking at the list of email addresses in her hand, she promised she would keep in touch with them. She encouraged them to study and play hard and to always give their best. Then she got ready to leave. Our class monitor walked over to her and handed her a small package. Miss Farida opened it. "It is from our trip to Siwa the last term. Look at it and always remember us," said our monitor. Miss Farida said, "Thank you. I'll frame it and put it up on the wall of my room."Then she left. Miss Farida is one of the best teachers who devotes all her life to people, and she is never forgotten because of her cooperation and tolerance.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17 The best title to the passage is "....."
 - a) Miss Farida's departure
 - b) The bad relation between Miss Farida and her class
 - c) The gift from Miss Farida
 - d) Miss Farida's strong personality



	18	Miss Farida was
		a) the school headmistress
		b) a good student at a secondary school
		c) the class teacher
		d) ungrateful to her parents
	19	What did the students hide when Miss Farida entered the class? a) Homework.
		b) A book.
		c) Some money.
		d) A picture.
	20	
		Miss Farida planned to keep in touch with the students by
		b) exchanging emails
		c) visiting each other
		d) meeting at the nearby club
	21	The pronoun "it" prefers to
)		a) Miss Farida's photo at school
		b) the pictures of Miss Farida's house
		c) the pictures of Miss Farida's parents
		d) the gift for Miss Farida
	22	The girls wished with all their hearts that they could do something to
		her, but there was nothing that could do.
		a) visit b) go
		c) play d) help
	23	Who handed Miss Farida the package?
		a) The headmaster.
		b) The headmistress.
		c) One of the teachers.
		d) One of the students.
	24	The students will remember Miss Farida because of
		a) the gift they gave her
		b) her wealth and happiness
		c) her good qualities
		d) her care for her parents

25	Translate into English: - استعر صحارح به الكثير من عادات وتقاليد وثقافات الشعوب.
26	Translate into Arabic: Nowadays, we face a lot of epidemics that threaten our lives Companies one of these diseases that scientists should find a cure for
27	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following: What can we do to keep ourselves safe from illness?
	Assess your progress < 50% 50:64% 65:84% 85 10% 85 10%



Treasure Island



Chapter 1

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins:

I'll start by writing about the time when my father owned an inn called the Admiral(1) Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn(2). He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a scar on his face. He looked around him.



"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay

here. Please, take this up to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four gold coins.

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the cliffs(3). When he came back, he always asked, "Did any sailors visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we realised that he didn't want any sailors to find him.

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain' stories, but I think people liked them.

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare(4) to ask him for more.

One morning, the Captain went for a walk along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and pale⁽⁵⁾, with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain.

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar (6) on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"



(5) شاحب الوجه (6) علامة اندية (3) منحدرات (4) يجرؤ (1) رتبة في البحرية

(2) حائة

Chapter 1 Treasure island

"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk."

"Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.

When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill.

"Black Dog!" the Captain said.

"That's right," **he replied.** "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of adventures(1) since I lost these fingers!"

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were loud shouts⁽²⁾ and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a sword and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the fight. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick.

"Help us, Dr Livesy! The Captain is hurt!" said my mother.

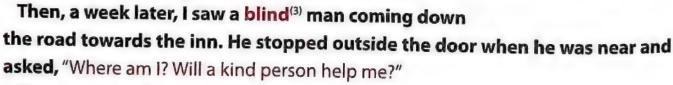
The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him upstairs."

We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some medicine.

The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted.

"Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men." he said, "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

That evening, my father died. I felt terrible and forgot all about the strange things that the Captain told me.



"You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he grabbed⁽⁴⁾ my hand.

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!"



(4) جنب

(3) كفيف

(2) صياح/أصوات عالية

(1) مغامرات

I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very surprised to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned round and left.

The Captain looked at what the man gave him.

"Ten o'clock!" he said. "I have time!"

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead.

I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesy, but I did not want to leave my mother. We



knew that we were in a danger⁽¹⁾. We decided to go to the nearest village and ask our neighbours for help guarding the inn.

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesy. Another man said that we could have his gun.

It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the captain's jacket. I also saw the message that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight."

We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins⁽²⁾ inside.

"We only have time until ten o'clock," I said. "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain owes us," my mother said, opening the bag. We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," **said my mother.** "I'm too weak⁽³⁾ to continue." I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a bridge⁽⁴⁾, where we could hide⁽⁵⁾ in the dark.

(5) يختبي



(3) ضعیف(4) کوبری

(1) خطر

351

(2) عملات معدنية

Chapter 1 Treasure island



Chapter (1) Exercises

Remembering

Understanding

Applying

Analysing

Evaluating

Creatin

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	1 In	the past soldie	ers used to figh	nt others during wars.	
	a)	swords	b) knifes	c) tanks	d) submarines
	2 10	didn't t	o tell my father about i	my exam result.	
1		guard	b) attack	c) owe	d) dare
	3 Th	ne thief	. the woman's bag and	ran away quickly.	
		released	b) grabbed		d) brought
4	4 Th	ne police should	d these import	ant places for fear of	being robbed
	a)	steal	b) frighten	c) guard	d) owe
4	5 Th	ne wound after	the accident might lea	ive a/anon he	er cheek.
	a)	scar	b) scare	c) scarce	d) scaring
6	M	y friend	me a lot of money an	d I need them urgent	ly.
	a)	owns	b) owes	c) has	d) possesses
7	' Iw	ant to find a sr	mall to have a	meal and spend the n	ight at it.
	a)	pool	b) inn	c) beach	d) prison
8			y ill, so he looks so		
		healthy	b) powerful	c) strong	d) pale
9	If y	ou want to vis	it a remote, yo	u need to have a ship	
	a) :	sword	b) inn	c) island	d) scar
10	So	rry, l can't climl	b this high rocky	with climbing equi	ipment.
	a) i	island	b) cliff	c) pool	d) beach
11	Му	r friend needs s	someone to help him o	cross the road as he is	***************************************
	a) s	strong	b) powerful	c) wealthy	d) blind
12	Av	vife that cooks	well, cleans, and moni	tors her children care	fully is a real
	•				•
		treasure	b) guard	c) adventure	d) scar
13	No	one dared	into the old hous	e at night alone as it i	s frightening.
	a) \	with going	b) for going	c) to go	d) by going
14	The	e teacher point	ted me and sai	d that I was a loser.	. , 5
	a) a	at	b) with	c) for	d) towards
15	Mc	m! There's som	neone at the door aski	ng Dad.	,
	a) a	at	b) for	c) with	d) by
					,,



Chapter 2

Chapter Text

I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"



"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the

Captain's bedroom and a man called out, "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it there?" said the blind man.

"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!"

The men started to look around the house.

"If you find it you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the

horses, they started to run in all directions.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesy, and the rest were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon felt better, and the others tried to catch the men. But it was too late: we heard that they escaped(2) on a boat.

I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, the head(3) of the police.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket."I'd like to take them to Dr Livesy."





(3) رئيس/قائد

(2) مرب

(1) يم*سك إيل*حق

Chapter 2 Treasure island

"That's a good idea," said Mr Dance. "He's a magistrate(1) as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

We found that Dr Livesy was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy the papers that the Captain had in his box.

"I think this might be a clue as to where Flint buried his treasure!" said Dr Livesy.

"That is why those men were not interested⁽²⁾ in money," agreed Mr Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure⁽³⁾ ourselves!"

"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now." The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed⁽⁴⁾ of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a map⁽⁵⁾ of an island, with a big cross⁽⁶⁾ on it next to the words, "most of treasure

"Dr Livesy, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney. "In a few days,

we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor."

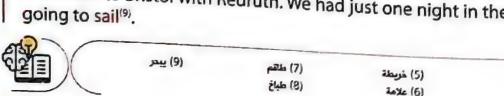
"I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

It took us longer than we thought to be ready to leave England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for

the journey in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.

One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the *Hispaniola* for us. Trelawney said that he had found a crew⁽⁷⁾ ready to work on it. The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook⁽⁸⁾. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was excited by the thought of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news of the treasure a secret.

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to say goodbye to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when going to sail⁽⁹⁾.



(3) کنز

(4) سرق

(1) قلض

(2) معتم



Chapter (2) Exercises

Remembering	Ì
-------------	---

Understanding
Applying

Analysing

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	The of th	e plane were very chee	erful and treated us ki	ndly.		
	a) engine	b) sailors	c) crew	d) staff		
2	To solve this crime, the police should find a clear					
	a) clue	b) secret	c) head	d) map		
3	The decided that she wasn't the killer, so she was set free.					
	a) crow	b) magistrate	c) pilot	d) pirate		
1	We need to hire a to clean the house and take care of our food.					
	a) landlady	b) magistrate	c) servant	u/ Captain		
5	Along the new road, there are signs which give useasily.					
	\ husestires	h) secrets	c) drawings	u) unections		
G	of the company should take important decisions from time to tir					
	-l contain	b) head	c) heart	u) magistrate		
7	a) captain b) head 7 Yesterday, some thieves tried to the bank, but they were arrested					
	a) deceive	b) hide	c) steal	4/100		
0	Ho tried to	from prison, but he	was arrested last wee	k.		
	- \ bida	h) catch	c) escape	4/ (1033		
0	During the storm	the ship's trie	d to control it, but they failed.			
9		b) sailors	c) magistrates	d) cookers		
40	a) cookers	ectric cables are				
10		b) caught	c) escaped	d) included		
44	a) buried	need to! I can				
	-1	h) occane	c) agree	d) shout		
10	a) cross	ar when he tried to	over the road n	ear Euston station.		
12		ar when he thed to	c) cross	d) escape		
10	a) shout	b) catch	•			
13		ou can borrow if you re	c) at	d) away		
4.	a) over	b) out				
14		e team are busy prepa	nng themselves	d) to		
4-	a) for	b) at	c) with	۵, ۱۵		
15	The police are still looking the escaped prisoner.					
	a) at	h) after	c) after	d) for		

Chapter 2 Treasure island



Chapter 3

Chapter Text

The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take a note to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was full of people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"



At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

"Yes, stop him! He did not pay for his food!" called Silver to one of his helpers(1). The helper ran after the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who attacked my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied.

"Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked."

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the harbour⁽²⁾ past boats of different sizes, all preparing to go to sea.

Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

We found Dr Livesy with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.



(1) مرسي/ميلاء

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.

It took some time to reach the Hispaniola. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said. "Why not?" asked Dr Livesy.

"I was told that the destination(1) of the journey was a secret(2)," he explained."But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew."

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns(3) with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

"Are you worried there will be a mutiny(4)?" asked Dr Livesy.

"It's my job to keep you safe, that's all,' said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship. "I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesy. "That's Long John Silver and Captain Smollett."

"I know Long John Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is."

I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

The Hispaniola finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch(5). All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his parrot⁽⁶⁾. He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always made me laugh.

One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept

in a big barrel which I climbed inside, because it was nearly empty. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking nearby. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.

"On that journey, Flint was the captain," he said. "It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today."





(5) عكاز

(6) بيغاء

(3) أسلحة (4) تمرد (1) جهة الوصول

Chapter 3 Treasure island

"You won't be able to return to Bristol after this journey," said another sailor called Dick. "What will happen to your inn?"

"I've sold it," said Silver. "My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you'll have lots of money, too."





Another man joined them and said, "I'm tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?"

"You must be patient," said Silver. "Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack."

"We shouldn't wait that long," replied another sailor.

"You're like the others," said Silver. "You want to do things quickly. That's what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is dead."

I began to realise that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a pirate⁽¹⁾, and the other crew were part of his gang⁽²⁾.

"No, we wait," continued Silver. "When the time is right, I'll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?"

When I heard these words, I was very frightened⁽³⁾. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out:

"I can see land!"

It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.



(3) خالف

(2) عصابة

(1) قرصان



Chapter (3) Exercises

 -	b 40						
	O	еп	iei	nt	er	in	g

Understanding
Applying

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	My friend told me a/an and asked me not to tell anyone about it.						
	a) public	b) tip	c) advice	d) secret			
2	Why are you?! The lion is in its cage.						
	a) tired	b) frightening	c) pleased	d) frightened			
3	This area isn't safe. You can't go sailing because of the						
	a) patriots	b) pilots	c) pirates	d) rescuers			
4	They led a/anagainst the captain, but they failed to take the ship over						
	a) crew	b) note	c) barrel	d) mutiny			
5	My son wants to buy a/an that can sing and repeat what we say.						
	a) monkey	b) kitten	c) parrot	d) puppy			
6	The coach should depend on his to study the other teams.						
	a) helpers	b) servants	c) pirates	d) parrots			
7	The police	en of the terrorists la	st week.				
)	•	b) attacked	•				
8	The price of oil	is increasing	daily and this will le	ad to a disaster.			
	a) parrots	b) pipes					
9	A of thi	eves were arrested w	hile robbing the bar	nk.			
	a) barrel	b) pirate	c) sailor	d) gang			
10	My nextis Paris. I'm going there next week.						
	a) destination	b) mutiny	c) crutch	d) location			
11	I was on for three months after the operation.						
	a) pirates	b) crutches	c) pipes	d) barrels			
12	If you want toyour goals, you should work hard.						
	a) lose	b) mistake	c) reach	d) fail			
13	My father paid my driving lessons because I want to buy a car.						
	a) with	b) by	c) at	d) for			
14	Susan lookedus very well. She's an excellent cook.						
	a) after	b) for	c) up	d) at			
15	I have spent all day running around the kids. They are noisy.						
	a) up	b) after	c) for	d) at			

Chapter 3 Treasure island



Chapter 4

Chapter Text

I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors at the side of the ship. We could see two low hills⁽¹⁾ and one big one. The island was now very close.

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."



"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure marked on it.

"Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I smiled at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not trust anything that he said.

I soon found Dr Livesy and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some terrible news."

Dr Livesy's expression did not change. He asked me to find his glasses⁽²⁾ downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett.

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me.

"What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.



(2) نظارة

(١) تلال

I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me.

"Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and

been a better crew than I expected⁽¹⁾. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us immediately. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesy. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted⁽²⁾ the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.

The next morning, the *Hispaniola* stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the rocky tops of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore⁽³⁾. It was very hot and very quiet. It smelled like bad eggs.

"This place is only good for diseases," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesy talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard as usual.

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan (4).

(5) يثق

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust⁽⁵⁾ about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax, if they wanted to.



(3) ساحل

(4) خطة

(1) توقعت

(2) عبدت

Chapter 4 Treasure island

"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

Captain Smollett asked Silver to organise the men. Six men would stay on the



Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big mistake⁽¹⁾?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto⁽²⁾ the branch of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them!"

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.



(1) خطا

Silver smiled and said, "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

(3) صفارة

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit(1) him hard on the back. He fell(2) to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife.

Silver now blew a whistle(3) and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now? When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island forever.



(2) سقط

(1) ضرب



Chapter (4) Exercises

_	Remember	
	144-1214-111734-1	mv.

Understanding

Applying

Analysing

Evaluating

Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	T	he referee ble	w his to start t	the final materia	d) branch
	a	sword	b) whistle	c) flute	I'm sure he won't do
-	2	my f	riend Ahmed because	e he is honest and	I'm sure he won't do
	ē	anything bad o	b) lie ned a newin o	-) Amount	d) blow
	3 '	Vodafone oper a) coast	ned a newb) shore	c) hill	d) branch important tasks.
	4	My father need a) relax	b) shore ded toas he w b) shout	c) trust	d) doubt money to be treated.
			b) shout y dangerousv b) branch		d) disease
	6	The place of o	ur street ison (d) trusted
D.	7	I noticed the	on our teacher	L) luca	•
	8	Alexandria is o	on the northof b) coast	c) Island	d) sea
		Birds lay their	eggs on the of b) barrel	c) snore	d) wave
		a) like	came firstusua	c) so	d) as
		a) cake	gise to my teacher as I b) achievement	c) wrong	a) mistake
		a) along	the beach during	c) long	d) longing
١	13	When the tea	cher entered the room	of the headmaster	, I walked to let
	14	a) of	b) at very excitedo	c) off our school football to	<mark>d)</mark> in eam.
•	**	a) with	b) for	c) to	d) by
*,	_	a) into	y held the brain b) to	c) at	d) onto



Chapter 5

Chapter Text

I finally stopped running and saw that I was close to the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was fresher here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous. I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but



he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me feel safer. I decided to walk towards the man.

When he saw me walking towards him, to my surprise, he came out from behind the tree and knelt down in front of me.

"Who are you?" I asked.

"Ben Gun," he said in a dry voice. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years." The man had very long hair and skin that was burned(1) by the sun. His clothes

were dirty and made of old sails(2).

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I dream of eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said.

"It isn't a problem with you," I replied.

"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not believe him.

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"





(2) اشرعة

(1) محترق

Chapter 5 Treasure island

I realised now that this man could help me.

"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us." I told him.

"Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their leader," I explained.

"If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said.

I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and allow me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked.

"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home, I'm sure."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship on his own. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long John Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where the treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'

"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not happy when we found nothing. One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay. 'Here's a gun and a spade⁽¹⁾. You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates."

"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him.

"I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!"

Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"

I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions⁽²⁾, and ran easily next to me. We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.







(1) جاروف



Chapter (5) Exercises

	III III	inding Applying Analysing		
ho	ose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	rd:	
	The	of my team can control	all the players.	
	a) servant	b) leader	c) sailor	d) group
2	All ships have	e to control win	d power during the	eir voyages.
	a) sails	b) engines		•
3	When we we	re camping, we used	to dig searchi	ing for water.
	a) sails		c) swords	
4	We enjoy the	air of the sea w	vhen we go to Marii	na.
	a) dry			d) fresh
5	After years, th	ney managed to find th	e ship at the	of the sea.
	a) direction		c) sails	
6	The teacher a	sked me to raise my	so that he cou	uld hear me.
	a) sound	b) voice	c) noise	d) head
7	The robber	down to his knee	es and gave up whe	n the officer fired
	his gun.			
)	a) led	b) believed	c) knelt	d) replied
8	We are going	on a voyage tomorrow	. Are you to	come?
	a) interesting			d) interest
9	The headmass	ter me to leave	school early as I wa	as tired.
	a) let	b) denied	c) made	d) allowed
10	The police are	trying to contact the fa	amily of the	man.
	a) dead	b) different	c) bottom	d) sail
11	You shouldn't	everything you	read. A lot of new	s are not true.
	a) kneel	b) allow	c) believe	d) lead
12	Her face and n	eck were quite badly	by the sun.	
	a) allowed	b) burned		d) believed
13	my sur			e is a good young man.
	a) At	b) For	c) By	d) To
14	l wouldn't drea	mletting strar	ngers look after my	own grandmother!
	a) by	b) with	c) of	d) at
15	We both work	the same com		tional one.
	a) for	b) with		d) over

Study



Chapter 6

Chapter Text

Dr Livesy:

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind⁽¹⁾ at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried⁽²⁾ about him.



I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small fort⁽³⁾. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended⁽⁴⁾. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the *Hispaniola*. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my plan. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to contact Silver, you will be dead."

They looked very surprised.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the *Hispaniola*.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an advantage⁽⁵⁾. On the *Hispaniola*, Trelawney helped me to put food and more weapons into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and supplies 5. now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to prevent 7, the boat from sinking. The wind blew from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.



(7) يمتع

(5) أغضلية/ميزة

(6) موار*د ا*مۇن

(3) حصن

(1) رياح (2) س

(4) محصن جيدًا

(2) مَلق

"We must keep in this direction," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient(1), and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The cannon!(2)" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the *Hispaniola* were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.



Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollet. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."

"They are only using one boat" I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us."

"It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a race(3) to get there first."

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three feet of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including some of our guns.

There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to get to the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.



Before we could enter the fort, we heard another gun fire, and poor⁽⁴⁾ Redruth fell down. We quickly picked him up and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good servant to him.

Captain Smollett put up a flag inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"



(3) سباق

(4) مسكين

(1) صبور (2) مدفع

Chapter 6 Treasure island

"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.

"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit.

"They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should take it down."

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!





Chapter (6) Exercises

		Pi	activ	e South as self to respect the describe	TO CAN THE STATE OF THE STATE O		
		nbering Understanding	Applying	Analysing		Creating	
-	hoo	se the correct an	swer fror	na, b, c c	ord:		
		We need to take				our camping.	
١	'	a) communicatio			b) en	itries	
		a) diaries			d) su	pplies	
ŀ	2	The policeman	his	gun and	shoot the	terrorist befor	e bombing himself
	2	-) chouted	b) defen	ided	c) fire	ed	a) Sunk
l	3	Ais a larg	ge gun wi	th wheels	. It was us	sed during the	wars in the past.
-	5	a) gun	b) rifle		c) sw	ord	a) Carmon
	4	Our armed forces	do their	best to	our	country from	enemies.
	•) shoot	h) fire		c) sin	ıK	a) delend
	5	Ais a stro	ng buildi	ng used l	by soldiers	to defend an	important place.
Ĭ		a) fort	b) canno	on	c) dia	ary	d) dairy
l	6	I have a complain	it. I need t	to	. the mana	ager, please.	1) defend
		-\ communicate	h) conta	ct	c) fire	3	d) defend
Ì	7	to the language that	she	ould be k	ept out of	the reach of C	nliaren.
),		a) cannons	b) suppl	ies	c) me	edicines	a) Contacts
-	8	They stale everyt	hing in m	v purse	my	credit cards.	
		- \ alanima	h) consis	tina	c) sur	opiying	fool relayed
l	9	One of the many	O	f living in	a village i	s that you can	leel relaxed.
l		a) advantages	b) contact	cts	c) sup	opiles	u) weapons
l	10	The kids watched	as the co	in	to the bo	ottom of the p	d) made
		a) drowned	b) sank		c) mo	ived - playing in to	morrow's game.
l	11	A leg injury may		ohamed :	Salah from	n playing in to	d) move
l			b) fire		c) pre		d) Move
,	12	It was an awful ac		ey're luc	ky to be		d) alive
		a) dead	b) cried		c) mo	ivea L chatt	
e T	13	The others went b	ack to the	e hotel, b	ut I stayed	J Criati	d) at
	4 -	a) on	b) with		c) for		
	14	The bridge is falling	ıg	. and will	need a m	illion pounds	to repair it.

c) up

c) from

15 I don't like living far downtown areas. I like living in crowded ones.

b) down

b) to

a) with

Chapter 6 Treasure island

d) at

d) for



Video Scripts



Video Script (Unit 1)

Do tourists usually stop and think about the impact (1) they have on the place they're visiting?

The tourist offices in cities which are popular with (2) tourists think about how tourism affects (3) their cities. They consider the advantages and disadvantages. They try to help local people cope with (4) lots of visitors in the streets of their city.

A good example is Amsterdam in the Netherlands. Twenty years ago, the city's tourism office was spending a lot of money advertising (5) the city, but they don't do this anymore. The city has about 18 million visitors a year and that is more than enough for a community (6) of 1.5 million local people.

In future, people should think more about the environment and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use public transport (7) if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are considerate (8) of each other!

DI ■ 0:00 11

Video Script (Unit 2)

Young people and older people don't always spend a lot of time together. But they can do a lot to help each other.

In some communities (1), children and teenagers (2) volunteer (3) to support older people. They sit and watch television with them. They help them with their shopping or other tasks (4) around the house.

They listen to their stories about life a long time ago. The older people don't feel so alone, they get the help they need and they can share interesting information about life in the past with the next generation (5).

But what about the young people? Well, they can learn a lot about the history of their community. They also see that older people were just like them when they were younger.

ÞI **₫**) 0:00

تاثير (1)

يؤثر (3)

يعلن (5)

مجتمع (6)

المواصلات العامة (7)

محترم لرغبات الآخرين (8)

مجتمعات (1)

مراهقون (2)

يتطوع (3)

مهام (4)

جيل (5)

معروف بـ (2)

يتعامل مع (4)

P

Video Script (Unit 3)

People have always told stories.

Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt⁽¹⁾ so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them. They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose ⁽²⁾ them, so, they painted ⁽³⁾ pictures to tell stories.

If you put your message into a story, people will remember (4) it because they'll feel an emotional connection (5) to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or people like them.

يصطاد (1)

يفقد/يخسر (2)

رسم (3)

يتذكر (4)

رابط عاطفی (5)

تؤثر على (6)

They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch (6) a thousand lives.

0:00 (▶ 1⊲ 11

₩ □ □ □

Video Script (Unit 5)

Sometimes teenagers experience (1) bullying because they look different, have different abilities (2) or different opinions and experiences. If you think someone is being bullied, what should you do? Parents and teachers are there to give advice when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer (3) to help the person tell their parents. You can keep a note (4) of any bullying you see so that you have plenty of information to tell your teacher. The teacher can then talk to the bully about everything they have done. Be kind to the person who is being bullied. Make sure that they know you support them and do not like the bully's behaviour (5). Spend time talking and socialising (6) with there

يتعرض اـ (1)

قدرات (2)

يعرض (3)

يدون ملاحظات (4)

سلوك/تصرف (5)

يختلط اجتماعينا (6)

the bully's behaviour (5). Spend time talking and socialising (6) with them to help them build new friendships. Invite them to join your friends. Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.

II ▶I ♠) 0:00



Advanced and Open General Ex. Answers

Unit 1

1. b) on the quiet

- بمعنى (سرًا).

2. d) sound

- تعبير بمعنى يستطلع رأيـًا sound sb out.

3. c) In isolation

- بمعنى (بمعزل عن - بشكل منفصل).

4. a) lean

- بمعنى نحيف - قليل اللحم.

5. d) pet

- بمعنى شخص مدلل،

6. d) destiny

- بمعنی مصیر،

7. a) busy yourself

- ينشغل.

8. a) swelled

- بمعنى استشاط غضبًا.

9. a) victim

- بمعنى شخص مساير للموضة وحتى لو كانت غير مناسبة له.

10. d) swell-headed

- بمعنى مغرورًا.

11. d) resort

- تعبير بمعنى يلجأ الى resort to.

12. b) keep my distance

- تعبير بمعنى يناي بنفسه.

13. c) impact

- بعني تصادم.

14. d) remote

- بمعنى انطوائي.

15. b) hill

- تعبير بمعنى كبر في السن over the hill.

16. c) was

- لأن v.to be لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة فلا يمكن استخدام الاختيار b.

17-c) I was studying

- لأن الفاعلين في الجملتين مختلفان فلا يمكن استخدام الاختيار a.

18-d) While in

- اصل الجعلة while I was in Alexandria

- وتم حذف while I was لوجود حرف جر،

- _{وفقًا} للملحوظة التي تم شرحها في الوحدة بالتفصيل.

19-d) got used to

- لأنما جاء بعدها noun phrase.

20-b) isn't

- الأمنية هنا في المضارع لذلك استخدم زمن الماضي البسيط بعد

wish والأمنية في المضارع تعبر عن عكس الواقع.

21-a) is used to

- لأنها جاء بعدها noun phrase.

22-b) tasted

- الفعل taste لا يأتي في الأزمنة المستمر.

23-d) being examined

- الفاعل محذوف والفعل مبنى للمجهول لذلك يتبع بـ .being + p.p.

24. d) enjoyed

last night مع used to لأنه لا يمكن استخدام

25. c) On

- استخدام on هنا يعني (عند رؤية الثعبان) أي لا يوجد فاصل زمني بين

رؤية الثعبان والصراخ،

26. b) was having

- تم استخدام الفعل have في المستمر لأنه هنا بمعنى يتلقى دروسنا

في القيادة.

27. c) when they got

- سيرهم على الطريق السـريع (حدث كان مستمرًا) أما (الحدث القاطع)

فهو حدوث ثقب في إطار السيارة.

28. b) get used to driving

- تعبر هنا عن عادة مازالت مستمرة وتم الاعتياد عليها بصعوبة.

29. c) She was busy with her lessons at

10 o'clock.

- ^{معنى ال}جملة يعنى أنه في الساعة العاشرة كانت تذاكر دروسها أي إنها

بدأت قبل العاشرة وانتهت بعدها،

30. b) to study

- هنا لم تتبع بفاعل؛ لذلك جاء بعدها Wish

1.b) roared

- بمعنى يقهقه (يضحك بصوت عالٍ).

2.a) chanced

- يصادف أن .chance to + inf

3.d) community

- تعبير بمعنى روح الجماعة sense of community-

4.b) score

- تعبير بمعنى من هذه الناحية on that score.

5, d) a & b

- كلمة من الممكن أن تكون جمع أو مفرد generation.

6.a) hunted

- بمعنى يبحث عن أو يفتش.

7. a) respects

- تعبير بمعنى الذهاب إلى جنازة شخص pay last respects.

8. a) check

- تعبير يفيد تأكيد الوصول في مطار أو فندق check in.

9. b) charity

~ بمعنى تعاطف،

10.a) monitors

- بمعنى مراقبين.

11.c) party

- بمعنى حزب سياسي.

12.b) support

- بمعنى يتحمل وزن.

13.d) checked

- بمعنى بها شكل مربعات.

14. c) aim

- تعبير بمعنى يصوب السلاح take aim.

15. a) track

- بمعثى مضمار السباق،

16.c) weighs

- الفعل weigh لا يســتخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة هنا لأنه جاء

بمعنى (ذو وزن).

17.d) doesn't exist

- الفعل exist فعل لازم ولا يبنى للمجمول.

18.d) Does this car belong

- الفعل belong لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.

19.a) rains

- هنا معنى الجملة يشير إلى شيء معتاد الحدوث وليس حدثًا

مؤقتنا بحبث الأن فقط،

20.b) am

- لا يستخدم مع الازمنة المستمرة v. to be.

21. c) don't

- كلمة people فعلما جمع.

22.c) meets

- عند سبرد الأحداث في قصة أو روايــة أو فيلم (أي عمل أدبي أو

فني) نستخدم المضارع البسيط.

23.d) passes

- في التعليقات الرياضية نستخدم المضارع البسيط.

24.b) comes

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع بعض التعبيرات مثل here.

25.d) leads

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع المقولات المنطقية والحكم والأمثال.

26.c) does he study

- عند بداية الجملة بـ Never تتبع بـ فاعل + فعل مساعد +

27. c) is always criticising

- هنا تم استخدام always مع المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن

الضيق أو الشكوي،

28.a) don't lose

- الجملة هنا مبنية للمعلوم وليست للمجمول والأشجار هنا فاعل

ولىست مفعولًا.

29. a) We can fish in the new factory.

- الفعل can هنا بمعنى (يُعلب) وليست بمعنى يستطيع.

30. d) get used to driving

- تعبر عن عادة مازالت مستمرة في الوقت الحاضرة.

1. b) dirtied

- بمعنى جعلما متسخة.

2. a) employ

- بمعنى (يوظف).

- 3. d) earned
- بمعنى (يستدق يحقق له).

4. a) gain

~ بمعنى مكسب،

5. c) removed

- بمعنى مختلف عن.

- 6. b) pay
- تعبير بمعنى يعطى ربحنا make it pay.
- 7. d) part
 - تعبير يمعني في أغلب الأحوال for the most part.
- 8. a) main

- بمعنى أنبوب توصيل المياه.
- 9. c) admitted
- يمعنى سمح لهم بالدخول.
- 10. d) characters
- بمعنى حروف او رموز.

- 11. a) plumped
- بمعنى اختار شيئًا بعد تفكير طويل،
- 12. b) broke
 - تعبير بمعنى يحطم معنويات break the spirit.
- 13. b) disabled

- يمعنى أوقف عطل،
- 14. d) experienced
- بمعنى تعرض لــ واجه.

- 15. d) rat
- بمعنى يشوش على يفتن على rat on،
- 16. b) since
- استخدمت كلمة since هنا بمعنى (بسبب).

- 17. d) had been married
 - في حالة وجود كلمة دالة على المضارع التام وإشــارة للماضي نستخدم الماضي التام بدلًا من المضارع التام.
- 18. b) since

ago + مدة زمنية + since

- 19. b) since
 - since منا جاءت مع the last لوجود اسم بعدها وليس مدة زمنية
- 20. b) had ever
 - تستخدم مع الماضي التام lt was the first time.
 - تستخدم مع المضارع التام lt is the first time.
- 21. b) 've made
 - معنى الحملة يعنى أنه تم الانتهاء من عمل الحلوي،
- 22. b) been to
 - هنا تم حنف الضمير them العائد على كلمة places.
- 23. a) played
- هناك دليل على أن وقت اللعب كان في الماضي بدليل انتهاء المباراة بخسارتنا لها.
- 24. b) since
- كلمة fall هنا تعنى (فصل الخريف).
- 25. b) have known
 - الفعل know لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.

- 1. c) connection
- بمعنى وسيلة مواصلات.

2. a) Articles

- بمعنى قطع.

3. c) coldly

- بمعنى بفتور،

4, c) stress

- بمعنى تأكيد.

5. d) mate

- قرين أليف (حيوان أو طائر).
- 6. a) wearing
- يبدو عليه wear an expression.
- 7. b) practices
- بمعنى عيادة أو مكتب محاماة.
- 8. d) nurse

- يحضن شخصًا.

9. b) moved

- بمعنى يحرك المشاعر.

- 10. c) debated
- بَمعنى يتناقش بشكل رسمى للوصول لنتيجة.
- 11.a) grade

- بمعنى مستوى من الجودة.

12. c) wear

بمعنى يتآكل wear out.

13. b) dear

- بمعنى غالى الثمن.

14. c) thousand

- لا تجمع لأن قبلما رقم.
- 15. d) themselves
- صْمير جمع.

- 16. c) a few
- التعبير دائمـُا ما يتبع بـ only a.
 - مع الأسماء المعدودة a few.
- مع الأسماء غير المعدودة a little.

- 17. d) sea
 - at sea تعنى في البحر وهو تعبير لا نستخدم فيه the.
- 18. b) any
- لوجود كلمة hardly بمعنى تقريبًا لا.
- hardly any = almost no
- 19. c) the bed
 - كلمة the bed هنا يقصد بها السرير (كقطعة من الأثاث).
- 20. c) the
- 21. a) no article/no article
- 22. c) papers
- يقصد بها هنا وثائق أو مستندات.
- 23. c) room
- كلمة room هنا ليست بمعنى حجرة.
- there is no room for mistakes
 - معناها لا مجال للأخطاء.
- 24. a) much work
 - هنــا تعنى عمــلاً كثيرًا ولا يمكن اســتخدام أى من الاختيارات الأخرى بســبب وجود الضمير it الــدى لا يمكن أن يعود على جمع أبدا too much work.
- 25. a) a
 - كلمة one بادئة بصوت متحرك وليس ســاكن واســتخدام أداة النكــرة هنــا لأن one-year-old صفــة وجاء بعدها اسم موصوف مفرد.
- 26. b) an
- مع الاختصارات البادئة بصوت متحرك.
- 27. d) no article
- يقصد هنا بالمعنى (نهارًا).

28. c) the

- هنا الاسم الذي تلا الفراغ.
- **European Union**
- وهو اسم منظمة الاتحاد الأوروبي.
- 29. c) the
 - إذا جاءت the قبل اسم شخص جمع فيعني هنا اسم العائلة.
- 30. c) the
- كلمة the whole day تعنى اليوم بأكمله.



1. a) application

- بمعنى مثابرة او جهد.

2. c) hacked

- بمعنى يشق طريقه.

3. a) smarten

- بمعنی یهندم smarten sb up.

4. d) cause

- بمعنى قضية - موضوع.

5. c) electric

- بمعنى مكهرب - مشحون بالانفعالات.

6. a) check

- بمعنى يبطى - يوقف،

7-d) clicked

- بمعنى يتضح الأمر فجأة.

8. b) account

- بمعنى تقرير – وصف،

9- a) frightful

- بمعنى سيئ جدًا - فظيع.

10- c) free

- بمعنى مريح – خالِ من الرسميات.

11. b) skims

- بمعنى بقشد - ينزع «الوش»،

12. a) scan

- بمعنى فحص او مسح طبي.

13. d) device

- بمعنى حيلة - وسيلة.

14. c) machine

- يمعنى ماكينة أهداف.

15-d) network

- هنا بمعنى شبكة من الجواسيس المحترفين،

16. a) will be

- باقى الاختيارات لا تصلح فالاختيار الثاني ينقصه .to + inf.

- والثالث لا يصلح لأننا هنا لا نتحدث عن جدول مواعيد.

- والرابع لا يصلح أيضًا لأن v.to be لا يستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة.

17. d) is about to fall

- الحملة تعنى أن البنت على وشك السقوط.

18. d) is going to write

ـ الجملة تعنى أن الولد يقوم بتجميز القلم لبدء المذاكرة أى أن

الحدث على وشك الحدوث.

19. b) future fact

- الحقيقة في المستقبل تستخدم أحيانا للتعبير عن العمر أو السن.

20. d) would help

- لمحود was predicted وهي في زمن الماضي فيستخدم

Would, Iasa

21. c) am seeing

ـ الجملــة هنا تعبر عن ترتيبات في المســتقبل والفعل See هنا

يستخدم في المستمر لأنه مستخدم بمعنى يقابل وليس يري.

22.c) are going to be

- تعنى هنا على وشك التأخير.

23. a) is going to rain

24. a) will get

- being clever هنــا لا تعتبــر دليــل لانها قائمــة على الرأي

الشخصى وليس شيئنا مرئينا ملموسنا.

25. d) is going to close

- الشركة تحقق خسائر تعتبر دليل على قرب إغلاق الشركة مستقبلًا.

26. b) will be done

- الجملة مبنية للمجهول.

27. d) Shall we go

28. c) is about to leave

- القطار هنا على وشك المغادرة.

29. a) will be watching

- تم تحديد وقت مع كلمة دالة على المستقبل فهنا نستخدم

زمن المستقبل المستمر.

30. b) is watching

- الجملة تعبر عن حدث يحدث الآن،

- 1. b) dug
- dig up بمعنى ينبش عن معلومات.
- 2. a) literature
- بمعنى منشورات مطبوعات.
- 3. d) plotting
- plot against بمعنى يتامر على.
- 4. a) rhyme
- بمعنى كلمة من نفس القافية.

5, c) fair

- بمعنى أشقر - أبيض البشرة.

6, b) verse

- بمعنى شعر - نظم.

- 7. d) Hop in
- بمعنى يركب السيارة بسرعة.

8. b) lay

- lay ... off یدع شخصیًا وشأنه.
- 9. a) toying

- toy with تداعيه فكرة.

10.b) lined

- line شیلًا up پرتب یعد.
- 11.a) adventured

- غامر بــ

12.b) brief

- بمعنى مختصر.

13.d) fair

- بمعنى بشرة فاتحة اللون.

- 14.b) gravel
- بمعنى يضع الترية الزلطية لطريق.
- 15.c) popular

- بمعنى شعبى.
- 16.a) I prefer eating fish than meat.
- عند تفضیل شیء علی شیء تکون قاعدة prefer کالآتی: prefer + v-ing/Noun ... than + v-ing/Noun

- 17.c) not go
- يستخدم .why not + inf للتعبير عن الاقتراح.
- 18.c) buying
 - stop + ... + (from) + v-ing
- 19.c) be repaired
 - الجملة هنا مبنية للمجهول لذلك جاء بعدها .be + P.P.
- 20.d) not make
 - let's تتبع بالمصدر وعند النفي .not + inf.
- 21.c) to lie
 - كلمة make عند استخدامها في المبنى للمجهول تتبع بـ to + inf.
- 22.d) I heard part of what he said.
 - كلمة hear عندما تتبع بـ v+ing تعنى أن الحدث يم يتم
 بأكمله بل تم جزء منه فقط.
- 23.d) to have lost
 - فقدان الوزن تم في الماضي .seem to have + p.p.
- 24. d) I want you to use it and see what will happen.
 - عندما تتبع try بـ (v-ing) فهى تعنى تجربة شيء لمحاولة حل مشكلة.
- 25.b) telling
 - go on إذا جاء بعدها v+ing تعنى الاستمرار في عمل نفس الفعل دون تغيير.
- 26.d) would rather not
 - would rather تتبع بالمصدر وعند النفي .not + inf
- 27.b) talking
 - عندما تتبع keep بــ (v-ing) فهى تعنى الاستمرار في عمل شيء مرات عديدة.
- 28.a) having
 - عندما تتبع mean بــ (v-ing) فهى تعنى (يؤدى إلى شــى، ما للحصول على نتيجة معينة أو ينطوى على شيء ما).
- 29.a) to see
 - الفعــل alarm هنــا يأتــى بمعنى انزعــج أو قلــق ويتبع بـــ to+inf. في صيغة المبنى للمجهول.
- 30.b) screaming
- الفعل screaming هنا بمعنى صارخـُا.



Check Points Answers

				Un	it 1				Unit :	2	
-: "	Checkpoint 1	1. 0	2. d	3. C	4. C	5. b	1. b	2. d	3. a	4. b	5. d
정 :	Checkpoint 2	1. b	2. (3. a	4. d	s. b	1. d	2. a	3. C	4. d	5. b
Lessons	Checkpoint 3	1. d	2. b	3. d	4. 8	5. 0	1. b	2. a	3. C	4. d	5. C
1643	Checkpoint 4	1.0	2. d	3. C	4. d	5. a	1. a	2. a	3.b	4. b	5.b
	Checkpoint 5	1.0	2. b	3. d	4. C	5. d					
	Checkpoint 1	1. b	2. d	3. a	4.d	5. b	1. 0	2. b	3. b	4. a	
Caracata a	Checkpount 2	1. b	2. a	3. a	4. d	5. b	1. b	2. a	3. b	4. d	5.a
1	Checkpount 3	t.b	2. d	3. a	4. d	5. b					
	Checkpoint 4	1.6	2.0	3. 8				_	_		
				Ur	nit 3				Unit	4	
٠ ا	Checkpoint 1	1. b	2 C	3. a	4. d	5. a	1.6	2. a	3. d	4. C	5. b
-	Company 5	1.5	2. d	3. b	4. <	5. h	1. b	2. a	3. C	4. d	5. b
	Checkpoint 3	1. d	2. <	3. a	4. €	5. d	1. c	2. <	3. 0	4. b	5. C
-		1 5	2. d	3 8	4 0	5. (1.0	2. b	3. d	4. C	5. C
	Chesigional t	1.6	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. a	1. 0	2. a	3. d	4. a	5. C
-	Checipnus 2	1.b	2. <	1.8	4. <	5. d	1.6	2. d	3. a	4. d	5. C
EHW:	Checkpoons 3	1. d	2. (3.8	4. 8	5. d	1. C	2. d	3. (4, C	
-	Thomas is not &						1. a	2. b	3. b	4. b	5. b
				U	nit 5				Unit	6	
F8 1	Checkpries 1	1.6	2. 5	3. d	4. 8	5. C	1. d	2. 8	3. C	4. b	5. 0
-	C 2	. 5	2 0	2. <	4.8	5. b	1. c	2. b	3. C	4. 3	5, 0
Lessons	(pe: 1 mar)	3 5	2.5	1. a	4.0	s. b	1. b	2. d	3. a	4. b	
	Checkpount 4						1. c	2. b	3. 8	4. d	5. t
3	Checky 11	1.1	2. 5,	2.0	4.5	5. 1)	1. b	2. d	3. d	4. 0	5. 0
1.0011110	(necessor 2	1. (25	1.5	A	3 A	1. b	2. b	3. C	4, 3	\$. (
70	Checkpoort 3	1.5	25	3 9	46	5.5		2.3	a. d	4.6	5.

Irregular Verbs

	INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
يكون	be	was/were	been
يضرب	beat	beat	beaten
يصبح	become	became	become
يبدأ	begin	began	begun
يثنى	bend	bent	bent
يكسر	break	broke	broken
يحضر	bring	brought	brought
يحرق	burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
يشترى	buy	bought	bought
يمسك	catch	caught	caught
يختار	choose	chose	chosen
يكلف	cost	cost	cost
يتناول	deal	dealt	dealt
يفعل	do	did	done
يرسم	draw	drew	drawn
يشرب	drink	drank	drunk
يقود	drive	drove	driven
بسقسي	fall	fell	fallen
لعهت	feed	fed	fed
يشعر	feel	felt	felt
يقاتل	fight	fought	fought
عخة	find	found	found

Irregular Verbs

ينسى	forget	forgot	forgotten
يسامح	forgive	forgave	forgiven
يتجمد	freeze	froze	frozen
يحصل على	get	got	got/gotten
يعطى	give	gave	given
ينمو	grow	grew	grown
يعلق	hang	hung	hung
يملك	have	had	had
يسمع	hear	heard	heard
يمسك	hold	held	held
يؤذى	hurt	hurt	hurt
يحفظ	keep	kept	kept
يعرف	know	knew	known
يۇدى/يقود	lead	led	led
يتعلم	learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
يرحل/يغادر	leave	left	left
يسلف	lend	lent	lent
يخسر	lose	lost	lost
يعنى	mean	meant	meant
يقابل	meet	met	met
يدغع	pay	paid	paid
يتصل تليفونيئا/يدق	ring	rang	rung
یجری	run	ran	run
يقول	say	said	said
یری	see	saw	seen

	•		
يبيع	sell	sold	sold
يرسل	send	sent	sent
يهز	shake	shook	shaken
يغطس	sink	sank	sunk
يجلس	sit	sat	sat
ينام	sleep	slept	slept
ينشر	spread	spread	spread
يقف	stand	stood	stood
يسرق	steal	stole	stolen
ياخد	take	took	taken
يدرس	teach	taught	taught
يخبر	tell	told	told
يفكر	think	thought	thought
يلقى	throw	threw	thrown
يفهم	understand	understood	understood
يرتدى	wear	wore	worn
یکتب	write	wrote	written

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٢/١٣٢٤٢

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ٤ ، ٢/١٢/١٢/١







New

Skills Booklet

1 st Secondary



Part 1)	Skills
1) Reading Comprehension	4
2) Writing	20
3 Translation	29
Part 2)	Integrated Skills

Part 3)

Important General Grammar

69





- 1) Reading Comprehension
- Writing
- Translation



Reading Comprehension

كيف تتعامل مع قطعة الفهم:

- اقرأ الأسئلة الواردة على القطعة، وهذا يبين لك ما تدور حوله القطعة، ويحدد لك المعلومات التي ستبحث عنها لاحقًا.
- اقرأ القطعة ولا تنزعج ولا تشغل بالك كثيرًا بالمفردات أو الجمل الصعبة وغير الواضحة الواردة في القطعة، فلابد من وجود مفردات لم
 يسبق دراستما ... وما يلزمك هو فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة؛ لأن الكلمة يتغير معناها حسب السياق
 الواردة فيه، مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين. والمهارة هنا معرفة المعنى العام دون التوقف عند لفظ بعينه.

وتنقسم أسئلة قطعة الفهم Comprehension إلى نوعين:

- سؤال الاختيار من متعدد: وهنا عليك أن تكتب الإجابة المختارة فقط، وتتطلب الإجابة هنا مهارة عالية في الفهم والتركيز.
 - سؤال مقالى: يمكنك أن تكتب الإجابة بأسلوب القطعة أو أسلوبك الخاص أو الجمع بينهما.

وهناك انماط للأسئلة عديدة وهي اسئلة لقياس مهارة التفكير المختلفة ويمكن تقسيمها كالأتي:





التذكر

Any question becomes a recall question if the answer has already been explicitly provided to the student in the text.

أي سؤال يصبح سؤالًا للتذكر إذا تم بالفعل توفير إجابة صريحة للطالب في النص.

Who did?	من قام بــ؟
When did take place?	متی حیث؟
List the	سجل/أدرج
What is a?	ما ؟
Name	اذكر



2

Analysis

التحليل

Explain how does work.	اشرح كيف يعمل
Show / Indicate / Explain / Discuss the reason	وضح/اشرح/ناقش السبب
Explain why	اشرح ِلماذا
Mention in detail / In brief	اذكر بالتفصيل / اذكر باختصار
What caused?	ماذا سبب؟
What is another possible cause of?	ما السبب الأخر المحتمل لــ؟
Outline / Summarise the	لخص
Write down = Summarise with words on your own.	اكتب / لخص بكلمات من عندك
In what sequence did happen?	قى أى تسلسل حدث؟
Give an example of	أعط مثالًا لـ
'What does symbolise?	ماذا ترمز إلى؟
Analyze how	حلل كيف
What was the author's point of view about?	ما هي وجهة نظر الكاتب بخصوص؟
From the point of view of the writer, what?	من وجهة نظر الكاتب ماذا؟
What kind of a is?	ما نوع!
What is the function of?	ما وظيفة؟
What is the purpose of?	ما الغرض من؟
What is the relationship between and?	ما العلاقة بين و؟



3

Comparison

المقارنة

How is like?	يف مثل؟
How are and different?	كبف و مختلفان؟
Compare the before and after	ئارن قبل وبعد
Compare at the beginning of the story and at the end.	نارن في بداية القطعة وفي النهاية
Distinguish between and	ميزبين و
Compare with	قارن بــ
On what dimensions might you compare and?	على أى أبعاد يمكن مقارنة و؟
Which one is the biggest / oldest / tallest?	لِما الأكبر/الأقدم/الأطول؟

4

Inference

الاستنباط/الاستنتاج

Predict what will happen if	بأماذا سوف يحدث لو		
Solve the problem	حل مشكلة		
Apply the rule to	طبق القاعدة على		
What is the main idea of?	ما الفكرة الرئيسية؟		
Put a suitable title to	فع عنواننا مناسبًا لـ		
Predict how the story will end.	نبأكيف ستنتص القصة.		
What is the overall theme of?	ماهو العوضوع العام لــ؟ ,		
What can you conclude about?	ملذا تستطيع الاستنتاج بشأن؟		
What if?	منالو؟		
Propose a solution to the problem of	فقن حلا لمشكلة		

From your point of view, what?	من وجمه نظرك ماذا؟
Find in the passage words which mean	استخرج كلمات من القطعة تعنى
What does the pronoun refer to?	ما الذي يشير إليه الضمير؟
What does the underlined/black typed word mean?	ماذا تعنى الكلمة التى تحتما خط/ العكتوبة بأسود داكن؟
Do you agree/oppose/think?	هل توافق / تعارض / تعتقد؟
What do you think of/about?	ما رأيك في؟
What is your opinion of/about?	ما رأيك في؟

وللإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة إليك هذه النصائح:

- ١- تممل في استخلاص الإجابة من القطعة، فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول في الفقرة الثانية، وليس شرطًا أن تكون في الفقرة الأولى.
 - ٢- اكتب الإجابة الصحيحة فقط ولا تزد، لأن الزيادات المبالغ فيها وغير المطلوبة تقلل من الدرجة التي يضعها المصحح.
 - ٣- التزم بالبناء السليم للجملة من حيث الزمن والضمائر وغيره.
 - ٤- تأنُّ في فهم السؤال ولا تتعجل، وتذكر أن فهم السؤال يعادل نصف الإجابة.
 - ٥- راع القواعد العامة في الكتابة من علامات ترقيم وخلافه.

PART

Answered Comprehension Passage

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The following is a checklist to help you decide if it's time for you or a friend to change eating habits. Just one "warning sign" should be enough reason to take action. You shouldn't think of "junk food" the minute you start feeling hungry. There never is an acceptable reason for this.

It is a definite sign of a habit that is on the way to becoming an addiction. Comfort eating is usually associated with junk food and in general high calorie food that is also high in carbohydrates [starch and sugar] and fat. If you run to the nearest fast food chain every time you feel down, you know it is out of control. A healthy meal does not have to be flavorless and boring. When pushed, you can picture appetising dishes that do not contain fries or fatty ingredients but you still prefer to get a hold of a beef burger or a pizza. You know it's not the best food for you. You know that you are going to feel sleepy and tired after you have eaten.

To be honest, healthy is a relative term. It all depends on what your options are. There are "healthier" choices you can make even at a fast food restaurant. You might, for example, order salad as a side dish instead of a second helping of fries. You could avoid ketchup or mayonnaise or eat a chicken burger. You know all this, you have promised yourself to do it next time you are there, but somehow it never happens. You keep on insisting that those dishes take longer to prepare.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Thinking of "junk food" when you're hungry is a
 - a) sign of addiction
 - b) sign of healthy eating
 - c) common eating habit
 - d) sign of change
- 2. If you are determined to change your diet, you can make healthy choices
 - a) in the country
 - b) near the sea
 - c) at fast food restaurants
 - d) in supermarkets



- 3. Although people know what is good for them they
 - a) choose to eat healthy, nutritious food
 - b) choose to eat fatty, high calorie food
 - c) decide to eat fatty, low calorie food
 - d) decide to eat low calorie fries and pizza
- 4. If you want to be healthy, you should
 - a) avoid fatty and fried food
 - b) eat salad and fatty food
 - c) avoid salad and condiments
 - d) order high calorie food and soft drinks
- B) Answer the following questions:
 - 5. Do you eat healthy food or not? Why?

Student's own answer.

6. What does "junk food" mean?

Fast food.

7. Give two reasons why doctors prefer eating healthy food.

Student's own answer.



, ^,

19

Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Charles was a professor with a huge house and a fortune. Today he lives in a small caravan where there is only second-hand furniture. There are no signs that he was a rich man. He gets his clothes and other things from charity shops. This change is not a tragedy. Charles was happy to give up the lifestyle of a rich man. He was it not a tragedy. Charles was happy to give up the lifestyle of a rich man. He was tired of being a person who had everything and many people have nothing. He made the choice to give all his money away. He says it has brought him happiness. "A few years ago," says Charles, "I was a millionaire, but I knew there were a lot of hungry people in the world." So, he gave away all his money to charities. When he had some left, he gave away small banknotes in the streets of local poor areas. Charles believes that many people want to earn a lot of money so that they will not have any worries. However, most people never make much money. He decided to drop out and has discovered that having only a little money makes you free. Are there any things he misses? "No, I'm much happier now. I wouldn't go back to being rich for anything – no way."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	According t	o the	text,	Charles	has	***************************************	

a) a family

b) a huge house

c) everything

- d) only a little money
- 2. Now, Charles is very happy because
 - a) he is a millionaire

b) he has no money

c) he misses nothing

- d) he lives in a small caravan
- 3. Charles knew there were hungry people in the world.
 - a) a few
- b) many
- c) no
- d) some
- 4. Most people want to earn much money to worries.
 - a) have
- b) increase
- c) find
- d) avoid

- 5. Would you like to be a millionaire? Why? Why not?
- Compare Charles' life in the past to his life now.
- 7. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?



Over the past twenty years, computers and the internet have become more and more important to us. In fact, computer technology continues to grow every day. We seem to use computers for almost everything these days, in shopping, driving our car, or communicating with relatives and colleagues. This explosion in computer technology has resulted in a rush to install computers in every classroom and to "wire" every school to the internet. In the USA, between 1984, and 1997 alone, the number of computers in secondary schools increased to more than 8 million sets. Both educators and students alike have been forced to keep up with this new wave of technology. Teachers have found that even though they themselves are still trying to learn the most basics of computer skills, they are expected to teach students about computer know-how.

Few people would question the role that computers could play in education. Some educators claim that students given the opportunity to use them in a classroom setting will get better grades than those who learn without having had any computer experience. These people say that just as computer technology has improved the way cars work, computers will make the classroom a better place to teach concepts and ideas that students need to become brighter, more successful adults.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Teachers are expected to teach students how to use computers although they
 - a) know how to use a computer
 - b) are still learning how to use computers
 - c) know all the basics of computer skills
 - d) are forced to use computers
- 2. "Few people would question the role that computers could play" means
 - a) many people are certain about the importance of computers
 - b) some people ask questions about computers
 - c) not many people doubt the importance of computers
 - d) some people want more computers
- 3. The phrasal verb "resulted in" means
 - a) led to b) objected
- c) supported
- d) denied

- 4. The best title to the passage is "......"
 - a) Teachers

-

- b) Educators
- c) The computer and the internet
- d) Secondary schools

- 5. How could computers help students become more successful?
- 6. Give some examples of everyday uses of computers in our life.
- 7. In your opinion, what are the possible disadvantages of using computers in education?



Your smile depends on simple dental care habits such as, for example, teeth brushing. Oral health begins with clean teeth. Keeping your teeth's surface clean can prevent oral disease.

The American Dental Association recommends a number of brushing rules to <u>promote</u> oral health. The first rule is to brush teeth at least twice a day using suitable equipment. Secondly, one should practise good brushing techniques. These techniques include rinsing the toothbrush with water after using it, keeping it uncovered in an upright position, and not storing it in closed containers which can encourage the growth of bacteria. The third rule is to replace the toothbrush every three months – or sooner if it becomes worn – to prevent painful and uncomfortable brushing. Finally, to reach tight spaces between teeth, it is recommended to use special wooden or plastic picks and brushes designed to clean between them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

					_		
1	Tho	underlined	propoun	"thom"	rafars	to	
	. The	unaeninea	pronoun	then	161613	w	**************

a) brushes

b) teeth

c) spaces

- d) picks
- 2. The word "promote" in the second paragraph means
 - a) discourage

b) prevent

c) improve

- d) collect
- 3. The third rule is to
 - a) brush your teeth at least twice a day
 - b) replace the toothbrush every three months
 - c) keep your teeth's surface clean
 - d) practise good brushing techniques
- 4. It is not recommended to keep the toothbrush in
 - a) wooden picks

b) plastic picks

c) upright position

d) closed containers

- 5. How can we avoid oral disease?
- 6. Why should you replace your toothbrush every three months?
- 7. What can we do to reach tight spaces between teeth?

4 Successful marriage is the most effective form of social support; it relieves the effects of stress, and leads to better mental and physical health. While many studies have shown the great importance of social support, it is still clear exactly what this means. Most likely it consists of being a sympathetic listener or offering helpful advice; providing emotional support and social acceptance; giving actual help or financial help, and simply doing ordinary things together, like eating and drinking. Husbands seem to benefit much more from marriage than wives do. Married women are in better physical and mental health, and are happier than single women, but these effects are nearly twice as great for men. Various explanations have been considered, but the most plausible is that wives provide more social support than husbands. Perhaps men need it more? They are more exposed to stresses at work, have worse health, and die earlier than women.

The second contract and second	om a, b, c or a.						
1. The underlined word "plaus	ible" is closest in meaning to						
a) untrue	b) ambiguous						
c) reasonable	d) vague						
2. Successful marriage is usefu	ul for						
a) social support							
b) mental and physical heal	th						
c) plausible support							
d) social acceptance							
3 are more exposed	3are more exposed to stresses and have worse health.						
a) Women	b) Men						
c) Children	d) Babies						
4. Married women are	than single women.						
a) more stressed	b) living longer						

A) Choose the correct answer from a his or de

B) Answer the following questions:

a) more stressed

c) happier

5. How effective is successful marriage from the social point of view?

d) worse

- 6. Why are men in need of more social support than women?
- 7. In what aspect did married women excel single ones?

As long as we live, we continue to learn, and the education we receive helps us to keep on learning. We are taught reading and writing so that we can

As long as we live, we continue to learn, and the education we receive helps us to keep on learning. We are taught reading and writing so that we can learn further knowledge and learn how to find out things for ourselves. What is learned can vary widely. It may be manners, beliefs or attitudes, or it could be words and figures. It might be the technique of running a machine, or a skill in playing a musical instrument. Those who teach can also vary. Teaching may be done by teachers in school, but it may also be done by parents, older brothers or sisters or friends. Everyone has their own source of education, such as newspapers, television, books, films and museums. Every factory worker or farmer must at least know how to read and write. People like engineers, doctors and teachers need a high degree of training. In some countries, parents have to pay a lot of money to send their children to good schools. Many parents cannot send their children to school because of the expenses.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	We	continue	to	learn	******
	· VVC	continue	w	ICAIII	****************

a) at school only

b) only during childhood

c) from birth to death

d) at work only

2. The underlined pronoun "their" refers to the

a) schools

b) parents

c) friends

d) anyone

3. What helps us to continue learning?

a) More education.

b) Parents.

c) Friends.

d) Doctors.

4. Who needs a high degree of training?

- a) Engineers, doctors and mechanics.
- b) Engineers, doctors and teachers.
- c) Farmers, doctors and teachers.
- d) Engineers, cleaners and teachers.

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. What is the main idea of the passage?
- 6. Why do you think workers and farmers need to know how to read and write?
- 7. Name a source of education not mentioned in the passage.

-

6 Today, I'm a teacher. Many years ago, I used to have summer jobs. Once I worked in a factory for gloves. I liked the people who were working there. They used to treat me as if I were their son. They helped me with my work. I learned a lot of things from them. The summer after that one, I worked as a waiter in a restaurant. It was hard work. However, money enabled me to do many things I was unable to do before. I could join a swimming club without worrying about fees. I began to enjoy my spare time. I had a lot of time to enjoy outdoor sports. Today, I tell myself that I will never forget those days and the experience I gained.

A)	Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a,	b,	C	or	d:	,
----	--------	-----	---------	--------	------	----	----	---	----	----	---

1. Which	job do	you thi	nk was	better	for	the	writer?
----------	--------	---------	--------	--------	-----	-----	---------

- a) In the restaurant.
- b) In the factory for gloves.
- c) In the factory of clothes.
- d) In the hotel.

	2. The writer was not a member in the swimming club before the s	econd job
2.	2. The writer was not a member in the swittining clab before the	,
	because	

- a) he didn't have enough time
- b) he doesn't like swimming
- c) it was far from his house
- d) he didn't have enough money
- 3. The writer will never forget the summer jobs due to the he got.
 - a) experiment

b) experience

c) excursion

- d) exercise
- 4. People at the gloves factory were
 - a) friendly

b) cruel

c) rude

d) impolite

- 5. What was the second job that the writer had?
- 6. Did he benefit from the second job? How?
- 7. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

Most of the passengers were fast asleep in the eight o'clock train. It was already half past nine. I was having tea while my wife was reading a letter. My little daughter was eating her ice cream. Suddenly we were all shocked to hear a very loud cry from a young lady. She screamed, "Help! He's going to kill me". Many people ran towards her. We asked her where the murderer was. She looked around herself for a few moments, then at us, and finally said in a whisper. "What a terrible dream! He killed my mother and sister. That thief! He had a gun, and a big knife!" We comforted her saying that she would feel better; we returned each to his seat. I observed an old man sitting beside her. He brought her a cold drink and kept talking with her all through the last fifty-five minutes of the journey. I wondered what they were discussing. When we got off at the station I approached the man and said to him, "It was kind of you to keep talking with her to help her to be quiet," He said, "Oh, no! I only wanted to prevent her from sleeping again and having another dream!"

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The train journey took	when the	young	lady cried.
---------------------------	----------	-------	-------------

a) two hours

b) one hour and a half

c) fifty-five minutes

d) a hundred and forty-five minutes

2. One of the passengers gave the young lady

a) an ice cream

b) a cold drink

c) a gun

d) a letter

3. Why did the young lady cry?

a) A thief attacked her.

b) The passengers mocked her.

c) She was dreaming.

- d) She was over the moon.
- 4. Why did the old man keep talking with the lady?

a) To pacify her.

- b) To show her that he was kind.
- c) To stop her from sleeping again.
- d) To help her dream more.

- 5. How many dreams did the lady have?
- 6. What does the underlined pronoun "her" refer to?
- 7. What do you think of the old man mentioned in the passage? Justify your answer.

8 Tokyo is one of the biggest cities in the world. Over 20 million people live and work in Tokyo, and important companies have their offices there. But most streets don't have names. So how can you find your way there? People in Tokyo are very good at giving directions. They can usually explain how to go home or to the office from the nearest train station. People in Tokyo often use maps when they give directions. Advertisements in newspapers usually have a small map to help you. If you're going to visit someone's house, it's good to ask him to draw, or fax you a map of the local area. If you get lost, the best idea is to go to a police station. In Japan, each neighbourhood has a small one, and the police officers there have a map of all areas. Giving directions is an important part of their job!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

 According to the reading passage, what should you do if 	you	get lost in	Tokyo?
---	-----	-------------	--------

- a) You should go back home.
- b) You should go to a hospital.
- c) You should get rid of the map.
- d) You should go to the police station.
- 2. What is the problem with most Tokyo streets?
 - a) They have names.
 - b) They have strange names.
 - c) They have no names.
 - d) They have long names.

or the anachined word one releasing	The underlined	word	"one" refers	s to	
-------------------------------------	----------------------------------	------	--------------	------	--

a) a very large building

b) a police station

c) a part of a city

d) a direction

- 4. "Over" means
 - a) exceed

b) below

c) equal

d) the same

- 5. What is the best title to this passage?
- 6. Is a police station important in big cities? Why/Why not?
- 7. List 5 ways to know directions (four from the passage and one of your own).



PART 1

People think that children should play sports. Playing sports is fun. However, it can have negative effects on children. It may promote aggressive behaviour in some children. According to research, 40 million kids play sports in the US. Of these, 18 million say they have been yelled at or <u>called names</u> while playing sports. This leaves many children with a bad impression of sports. They think sports are just aggressive.

Many researchers believe that parents and coaches are the main cause of too much aggression in children's sports. They believe children copy aggressive adult behaviour. Parents and coaches are powerful teachers because children usually look up to them. Often these adults themselves behave aggressively, sending children the message that winning is everything. At children's sporting events, parents may yell insults at other players or cheer when their child behaves aggressively. As well, children may be taught that hurting other players is acceptable. In addition, the media makes violence seem exciting. Children watch adult sports games and see violent behaviour replayed over and over on television.

As a society, we really need to face up to this problem and do something about it. Parents and coaches should act as better examples for children. They also need to teach children better values. They should teach children to enjoy themselves whether they win or not. If we make some basic changes, children might learn to enjoy sports again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. What is the main idea of the passage?
 - a) Children often become like their parents.
 - b) Children need to play sports in school.
 - c) Playing sports may have negative results.
 - d) Some sports can cause health problems.
- 2. Which is described as the main cause of more aggressive playing?
 - a) Adults. b) Naughty children. c) New rules in sports. d) Other players.
- 3. What does the writer suggest?
 - a) Violent sports should not be shown on TV.
 - b) Children should not play sports.
 - c) Coaches study child's psychology.
 - d) Adults should be good examples for children.
- 4. According to the article, the underlined expression "called names" means
 - a) their names are said in a loud voice.
- b) their names are whispered to others.
- c) to be described using bad words.
- d) to be excluded from the team list.

- 5. Who is a famous sports star in your country? Why is he or she a star?
- 6. Is this sports star a good example for young people? Why/ Why not?
- 7. How do you think we should approach a problem and how can we solve it effectively?



More and more people are discovering that sharing and talking about their favourite books with others can be as rewarding as the act of reading itself. For people who feel that they are too busy to sit down with a book, a book club helps them schedule time to read. Others have gained self-confidence by practising in or leading a discussion. And they enjoy the chance to make new friends. A successful book club should have a group that is small enough so even the quiet people can be heard but also big enough for many different opinions. The best arrangement is a mixture of ages, sexes and backgrounds for more reading discussion. To make the meeting so smooth, a leader should be appointed. The leader will usually start the discussion by asking what the author's main idea was. Book club members should never be afraid to offer their opinions even if they don't like a book. They just need to be prepared to explain why they didn't like something.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. What must people do before they meet?
 - a) They must phone each other.
 - b) They must call people of their own age.
 - c) They must prepare their ideas.
 - d) They must buy some flowers and presents.
- 2. What does a leader discuss at first?
 - a) The main idea of a book.
 - b) The conflicts between the members.
 - c) The opinions of the readers.
 - d) The fear and phobia of the members.
- 3. "Smooth" means
 - a) easy

- 9

b) sad

c) dead

d) gloomy

- 4. Leadership and self-confidence are
 - a) skills

b) quantities

c) societies

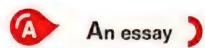
d) bullets

- 5. Where, do you think, can people meet for a book club?
- 6. What kind of books could those people read or discuss?
- 7. Describe the variety in these meetings.



, هناك عدة أشكال من الكتابة سيتم تناولها بشكل موجز في السطور التالية ومنها:

An essay - A blog - A short story - A biography - An email



المقال من الأسئلة التي عادة ما تكون مخيفة للطلاب، حيث يواجه معظم الطلاب صعوبة في كتابتها.

المقال هو عبارة عن طرح فكرة للنقاش من خلال مجموعة من الفقرات المرتبطة ببعضها البعض مع تقديم وجهة نظر محددة، ولابد
 أن ينقسم إلى عدة فقرات مرتبة ومخططة يتم فيها شرح وتوضيح جوانب الموضوع المختلفة.

تحديد نوع المقال (حسب الموضوع المطلوب الكتابة فيه) وأنواع المقال هي:

- Narrative Essay

مقال مُصصى (هنا يكون عن قصة أو موقف تعرضت له)

- Descriptive Essay

مقال وصفى (وصف مكان أو شيء)

- Expository Essay

مقال تفسيري (حقائق ومعلومات عن موضوع محدد)

- Argumentative Essay

مقال جدلي (تناول وجمات نظر مختلفة في موضوع واحد)

- Persuasive Essay

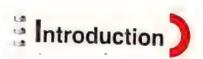
مقال إقناعي (توضيح وجهات نظر مختلفة مع ترجيح وتفضيل وجهة نظر محددة)

• ويتم تقسيم المقال كما يلي:

1. Introduction, المقدمة

2. Body paragraph. حملب الموضوع

3. Conclusion. الخاتمة



- هي أول فقرة في المقال والهدف منها هو طرح الفكرة العامة للموضوع والإشارة إلى الهدف الرئيسي له.
- لابد أن تتضمن المقدمة الفكرة الرئيسية topic sentence و لابد أن يفهم ويعرف منها القارئ بالضبط عن ماذا سيكون بقية المقال.
- من الممكن أن تكون المقدمة عبارة عن جمل عامة تصف الفكرة التي تعبر عن الموضوع أو جملة تتضمن تعريفًا بالموضوع أو حكمة أو أسئلة عامة يتم طرحها لإثارة القارئ.

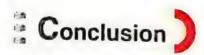
(Writi
•	

وهناك بعض الجمل التي تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات الايجابية مثل:
- It is taken for granted that plays a vital role in our life; this is simply because
the progress of any country depends on it.
من المسلم به أنيلعب دورًا حيويًا في حياتنا، وهذا ببساطة لأن تقدم أي دولة يعتمد عليه.
- Fancy holding my pen to write about I'm sure that everyone will tackle it
from a different angle, but I will focus on the main points.
اتخيل أن أمـسك بقلمي لأكتب عن وأنا متأكد أن كل شخص سوف يتناوله من زاوية مختلفة ولكنني سوف أركز على
النقاط الرئيسية.
وهناك بعض الجمل التي تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات السلبية مثل:
- I reveal no secret when I say that we all agree that stands as an obstacle نعقبة in the way of our progress. Let's shed light on some of the main aspects of this thorny problem.
لا أفشى سرًا عندما أقول إننا جميعنا متفقون أن يقف كعقبة في طريق تقدمنا. هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لهذه المشكلة الشائكة.
- It can't be denied thatis one of the worst and most complicated problems. I don't exaggerate when I say that it has made our life like hell. Let's shed light on some of the main aspects of this thorny problem.
لا يمكن إنكار أن هي واحدة من أسوء وأكثر المشكلات تعقيدًا وأنا لا أبالغ عندما أقول إنها جعلت حياتنا كالجحيم. هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لهذه المشكلة الشائكة.
وهناك بعض الجمل التي تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات التي تتكلم عن المزايا والعيوب مثل:
It is crystal clear thathas a lot of advantages (pros/merits) and disadvantages (demerits/cons). Let's shed light on the main aspects of this subject.
من الواضح تماما أن له مزايا وعيوب ، هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لعذا الموضوع.

Body Paragraph

- ، لابد أن يتكون صلب الموضوع من فقرتين أو ثلاثة على الأقل ... كل فقرة تتحدث عن جانب معين من الموضوع ... فمثلا إذا كان الموضوع مزايا وعيوب يكون الأول عن المزايا والثاني عن العيوب، وهكذا.
 - . بنم مناقشة وشرح ما تم إجماله في المقدمة حيث يتم عرض تفاصيل الفكرة الأساسية.
 - ، الحرص على استخدام جمل بسيطة وسملة ولابد أن تراعى بداية الجمل بالفاعل يليه الفعل على حسب زمن الجملة ثم المفعول.
- . الروابط في المقال هي كلمات تساعد الكاتب في تنظيم كتابته بحيث يستطيع ربط الجمل ببعضها البعض عن طريقها أوالتحول من فكرة إلى فكرة أخرى بطريقة سليمة ومنها:

Giving examples	إعطاء أمثلة	For example/ For instance/ such as		
التناقض		But/ Although/ Even though/ On the other hand/ However		
Giving reasons	إعطاء أسباب	because/ as/ because of/ owing to/ due to		
Showing results	بيان النتائج	So/ therefore/ Consequently/ and as a result		
Adding information	إضافة معلومات	And/ In addition/ Moreover/ Also/ above all		
Arranging incidents	ترتيب أحداث	First/ second/ then/ finally		
إعطاء آراء Giving opinions		I think / I believe / In my opinion / As far as I'm concerned		



- · يتم تلخيص الفكرة الرئيسية فيه بصيغة أخرى بحيث تختلف عما كتبناه في المقدمة من حيث الكلمات، ومن الممكن أن تتشابه معما في المعنى.
 - تكون الخاتمة عبارة عن نصيحة أو اقتراح أو رأى ... مثل:
- To sum up/ In conclusion / In brief
- Finally, it is quite clear thatis reallyis
- To sum up, one can say that is really is
- In conclusion, in my opinion, is reallyis
- To sum up, why don't we/ we should





A blog

 موقع إلكترونى أو صفحة شخصية، وهي بمثابة مُفكرة أو ساحة طرح للآراء الشخصية، والمدخلات فيه تكون مرتبة ترتيبـًا تصاعديـًا حسب الزمن.

• هناك عدة أنواع من المدونات blogs نتعامل معها وأهمها هي المدونات الشخصية personal blogs

 يوميات مستمرة أو تعليقات من قبل أفراد يكتبون عن تجاربهم اليومية وأفكارهم وأشعارهم، ويسمحون للقراء بالمشاركة، ومنها مثلاً موقع Facebook - Twitter

• Article blogs مدونات إخبارية أو مقالية.

وهي التي توفر ملخصاً للأخبار عن موضوع معين ومصحوبة بتلخيص بسيط. قصير، وتتكون من الأتي:

1. Blog title

- عنوان المقالة (كلمة أو كلمتين للتلخيص)

(Wonderful day - A nice journey - Good news)

2. Summary

- ملخص (شرح ميسط للعنوان)

3. Body 4. End of the article - نص المقال (يحتوى على المادة الأساسية للمقال)



A short story



With some brainstorming you can learn how to write a successful short story:

مناك عدة أمور بجب مراعاتها عند كتابة القصة القصيرة:

1. Come up with a plot

التفكير في حبكة القصة.

- Think about what the story is going to be about and what is going to happen in it.

2. Main character

الشخصية الرئيسية.

- الخاتمة

- Focus on one or two main characters at the most. The main character has a clear description, features or qualities. He or she may be good or bad.

3. Setting (place and time)

المكان والزمان.

- Choose a setting that is interesting to you and that can be interesting for your reader.

4. Create a conflict for the main character

خلق صراع للشخصية الرئيسية.

- The main character has to deal with a case or a problem. Your main character may be trapped يقع in a bad or dangerous situation.

5. Provide solutions for the problems or a bad situation

تقديم حلول للمشكلات والمواقف السبثة

- Let your main character find how to solve the problem that he or she faces or how to get out of a bad situation.

6. Ending

النهاية

- Think of an ending with a surprise. An ending that will leave your reader surprised, or shocked.



A biography of a person



To write about a person especially famous people, we should follow the following

 للكتابة عن حياة شخص معين وخاصة المشاهير يجب اتباع الخطوات التالية: 1. An interesting introduction to illustrate that you see this person as a model.

كتابة مقدمة شيقة توضح اختيارك لهذا الشخص كنموذج.

2. Who is this person (the name and the job)

أن تذكر عمل الشخص ووظيفته.

3. Where and when this person was born.

كتابة مكان وتاريخ ميلاده.

4. The person's education and work.

الكتابة عن تعليمه وشهاداته وأين يعمل الأن أو كان يعمل.

5. The person's achievements.

إنجازات هذا الشخص،

- This part is important as it shows why you admire him or her.

6. The effect of this person on society and how we benefited from him.

تأثير هذا الشخص على المجتمع، وكيف استفدنا منه.

7. Say whether this person is still alive or dead.

توضيح هل هذا الشخص ما زال حيًّا أم متوفًّى.

8. End your biography illustrating what we should do to be like this person.

قم في بنهاية السيرة بتوضيح ما يجب علينا فعله لنكون مثل هذا الشخص.



Email writing



الرسالة الإلكترونية لها شكل ثابت، وهو كالتالي:

New message	- 2 X
То :	اسم المئرستل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني
From :	اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني
Subject :	موضوع الرسالة
Regards, Best wishes, Yours, اسم المـُرسـَل	·
SEND A @ 18 5 5	

The best way to live a healthy life is to eat healthy and do more active physical activities. Healthy eating and exercising have a big effect on your future success, maintaining a healthy body and preventing obesity or overweight. It is a rule that everyone should live by and it brings many benefits to your life.

Researches prove that staying healthy, getting enough sleep, and being physically fit help you in school by performing better. Also, developing healthy habits leads to many achievements in school. Children who perform many different physical activities remain in a healthy fit body. Children should have a minimum of 60 minutes of physical activities per day recommended by the centres for disease control and prevention. If you get enough exercise per day, then your body will function properly. In addition, children who exercise gain lifelong benefits like having a healthy body, flexibility, and stronger and healthier bones and muscles.

When we develop healthy habits, we can learn to make healthier decisions or choices like when and what to eat and when to exercise. We can also learn to keep our bodies fit. In life, we have many rules to live by and developing healthy habits should be one of them.

Pollution

Pollution is one of the most serious problems that face not only Egypt but also the whole world. Pollution is the greatest threat to humanity. There are different kinds of pollution like air pollution, water pollution and noise pollution. Air pollution is mainly caused by smoke of mills and factories. The sound and noise of loudspeakers, vehicles' loud horns, etc. cause sound pollution. The dirty chemical waste from factories causes water pollution.

No one can deny that pollution affects all forms of life badly. It can also cause many health problems such as cancer and heart disease. Above all, pollution is the main cause of damaging ozone layer; it causes global warming which in turn results in a lot of natural disasters such as hurricanes, floods and forests' fires.

To solve the problem, the government must impose and enforce laws to prevent pollution. The government also should reward the factories which control their waste and use technology to check pollution. Governments also reward the associations which work for plantation. Cutting down trees must be strictly prohibited if it is done without reason. We should also plant a lot of trees and plants to cut down pollution.

Finally, we should all cooperate to solve this problem which threatens our lives on the planet.



Reading is the first source of information

Reading is probably one of the most important activities and hobbies that anyone can do. Those who read can discover new ideas, concepts, places, and people. Reading is so important in our lives for many reasons; firstly, even if we have a stressful day, a book can easily distract us from our own problems.

Reading has the ability to calm us down. Secondly, reading is also a way for children to reach out to the world. So, reading should be encouraged among children at an early age as it increases children's vocabulary and spelling more than talking or direct teaching. Reading forces us to look at words that we might not have seen or heard in our lives. The third reason why reading is so important is that reading improves our thinking process. Reading books requires readers to think and imagine about different details in the book such as characters and plot; this helps us to improve our thinking process. Since the readers must concentrate in order to read, they will improve their concentration and thinking abilities. Finally, reading can widen our scopes and help us to know all cultures of the world.

Everyone knows that a person who reads will be successful and a person who doesn't will either not do as well as others or eventually fail in life. "No entertainment is so cheap, or introduces everlasting pleasures as much as reading. It will not only refresh our minds and souls but it will give us a great outlook towards life.

A situation that happened to one of your friends

My friend Kamal was looking around for a used car. He saw an advertisement in the paper for a Toyota for twenty thousand pounds.

He rang up and arranged to go round and have a look. The car was brand new and spotless but Khalid told the woman who showed him the car that he liked to think about it. Really, he didn't think very long. An hour later, he was back. He asked the woman some questions and she said all she wanted for it was only twenty thousand pounds. He asked to try it and he was given the keys. The engine started at the first touch. He backed it out and tested everything. He paid the money, filled out the change of ownership and took the car. Khalid couldn't believe it was all legal. He said he was sure there must be something fishy about it and he didn't want to put himself in trouble.

So instead of going home, he drove straight to the police station where he left a note for the police to check his car. The police officer told him that everything is legal but the woman hadn't told him everything. Her husband was taken dead out of the car and soon no one wanted to buy it. Khalid wished he had never known about that. He himself felt uncomfortable.

Although he was able to make a profit of many thousand pounds, he still regrets selling the car.



The bad side of mobile phones

I have believed for a while that mobile phones are harmful to our health, due to the radiation that we're exposed to. Scientists think that mobile phones should be used as little as possible. A lot of scientists believe they are harmful to your health. Mobile phones are particularly bad for children. The phone companies will tell you that they are safe. But remember they are selling a product so they are hardly going to put you off buying their product by telling you it is unsafe.

After all, people said that smoking, pesticides and so on were either safe or wouldn't cause you serious harm. However they were wrong as they caused cancer, disability and terrible illnesses. In fact, research claims mobile phones could kill more people than smoking.

Above all, they can cause headaches, tiredness and memory loss in some people. We have so much technology. Now, there is 24 hour television, computers, phones and so on. Electric gadgets in the bedroom can also cause sleep problems. But if you can't do without them, at least make sure you don't have a computer, wireless phone or mobile in your bedroom or at least make sure that they are turned off. Cordless phones emit a high amount of radiation. So keep your technology use to a limited amount of time each day. Mobile phones can cause brain damage if they are used for a long period of time over the years. Always remember that your health is very important as you might find you are unable to return to good health once you have lost it.

Coronavirus

Nations around the world are battling with a major outbreak of a new deadly virus. The coronavirus, which started in the Chinese city of Wuhan, on 22nd January 2020 has already killed thousands of people from around the world. Countries highly affected include China, America, the UK and Italy. The infected people are currently subject to quarantine at a hospital. Many countries have been on lockdown for many weeks and people have not been to work, school and all public transport has been suspended.

In other countries schools have been closed and people have been told not to travel. The new coronavirus is suspected to have come from illegally traded animals in a Wuhan market. The virus mutated and spread from an animal to a human. There are fears it could mutate and spread further. Scientists say the virus is contagious and can be passed from person to person.

The World Health Organisation, which declared the outbreak as an international health emergency, recently updated the global risk assessment to "very high." It has also advised the public to wash their hands more than the usual besides delaying or avoiding travel to affected areas. Common signs of the infection include fever, cough, shortness of breath and breathing difficulties.

PART 1

Exercises

Write an essay of ONE HUNDRED FIFTY (150) words on:

- 1. The job you would like to do when you leave school.
- 2. Purposes of using the internet.
- 3. Social work is a means through which Egyptian youth can help society.
- 4. How to keep the environment clean.
- 5. Reasons for happiness are different from one person to another.
- 6. How do you think life will be like in the year 2050?
- 7. What can we do to overcome the problem of unemployment?
- 8. Your own ideas to develop the educational system in Egypt.
- 9. Friendship.
- 10. Your favourite holiday place.
- 11. A person you consider as a model.
- 12. Making use of your free time.
- 13. A blog post on the problems children have because of the internet.
- 14. A summary of a novel you read.
- 15. An email to a friend telling him about your future plans including education and work.



- What is "Translation"?

First, we should know that the word "Translation" means changing the written words from one language into another language.

- الترجمة فن وليست مجرد حفظ كلمات فقط، فهي عبارة عن كيفية الاعتماد على توصيل المعنى المراد من الجملة، وليست ترجمة حرفية للكلمات.
 - القدرة على التخمين لمعانى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق ما نعرفه من كلمات هو أساس الترجمة.
 - الترجمة ليست مجرد نقل كلمة، ولفظ، بل هي نقل لمفاهيم الكلام وربطها بالنص.

- Language is meaning-based

When we want to say something or translate a sentence, we should know that the meaning in general is more important as any language depends on general meaning not meaning of every separate word.

عند ترجمة جملة أو التحدث بشيء يجب أن نعرف أن المعنى العام هو الأكثر أهمية حيث إن اللغة تعتمد على المعنى وليس ترجمة
 كل كلمة منفصلة.

So, translation is considered an art which depends on how to transfer the whole meaning of the sentence and also the ability to guess the meaning of new and difficult words from the words that we know.

- من هنا تعتبر الترجمة فن يعتمد على كيفية نقل المعنى العام للجملة و القدرة على تخمين معانى الكلمات الجديدة والصعبة من
 الكلمات التي نعرفها.
 - لاحظ المثال التالي:
 - «يجب أن يتحد الشعب المصرى لمواجهة تحديات العصر».

Egyptians must (should) unite (work together/ help each other) to face (stand against) the challenges (difficulties) of the age (present time).

• لاحظ أننا استخدمنا أكثر من معنى لنفس الكلمة و ليس الشرط هنا أن نترجم ترجمة حرفية، ولكن الأهم توصيل المعنى.



• لاحظ مثالًا آخر.

"I had my lunch and then went out to meet my friends to have a nice time together and we really were over the moon."

- هنا لو تمت الترجمة الحرفية فسوف يضيع المعنى تمامـًا، فمثلًا كلمة have نعرفها بمعنى يمتلك و لكن هنا لا يتناسب المعنى الحرفى مع المعنى العام.
 - أيضًا كلمة Over the moon لو تم ترجمتها حرفيًا (فوق القمر) لضاع المعنى السليم و هو (سعيد جدًا).
 - تناولت الغذاء ثم خرجت لمقابلة أصدقائي لكي نقضي سويـًا وقتـًا جميلًا وبالفعل كنا سعداء جدًا.

What is the difference between "Translation into Arabic and Translation into English"?

الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية تعتمد على المعنى، وتخمين الكلمات الصعبة وليس هناك شرط لتكوين الجملة والزمن.

"The government tries to solve most of our problems in Egypt."

- تحاول الحكومة (الحكومة تحاول) أن تحل (حل) معظم مشاكلنا في مصر.
- أما الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية فتعتبر الأصعب حيث لابد من معرفة تكوين الجملة و الحفاظ على الزمن السليم
 و كذلك كتابة الكلمات بشكل صحيح.
 - «ثلعب الرياضة دورًا هامنا في بناء الجسم و الشخصية»

Play sport role important in building body and character. (x)

هنا ترجمة حرفية ليست صحيحة سواء تكوين الجملة أو المعنى

Sport الصفة قبل الاسم an important role الضعة قبل الاسم in building (forming) body and personality.



Translation from English into Arabic:

- ١ الأبد من البعد عن الترجمة الحرفية و توصيل المعنى هو الأهم كما أوضحنا سابقًا.
 - ٢ من الأفضل أن يتحول المبنى للمجمول إلى المعلوم.
- A lot of new schools were built by the government.
 - لقد قامت الحكومة بيناء الكثير من المدارس الجديدة.
 - ٣- من الممكن استخدام بعض الكلمات و الحروف من عندنا لتحسين المعنى.
- -Tourism is one of the most important sources of our national income and hard currency.
 - تعتبر السياحة (إن السياحة) واحدة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي لدينا و كذلك العملة الصعبة.
 - ٤ الالتزام بزمن الجملة في الترجمة من حيث (مضارع أو ماض أو مستقبل).
 - ه يتم ترجمة .have/has + p.p إلى «لقد».
 - الا يظهر v. to be في المضارع ولكن من الممكن أن يظهر في الماضي.
- Music is the food of soul.

- الموسيقي غذاء الروح.

- Ali was at home when I phoned.

- كان على في البيت عندما اتصلت.
- v. to have v يترجم إلى أكثر من معنى حسب سياق الجملة (لـ عند يملك لدى يقتني يتناول يصاب يناقش)
- We had our meals.

- تناولنا وجباتنا.

- My son had a serious disease.

۔ أصيب ابني بمرض خطير.

- Hala has a nice car.

- تمتلك هالة سيارة جميلة.

- Egypt has a lot of relations with the world countries.
- لمصر علاقات كثيرة بدول العالم.



Translation from Arabic into English:

١ لابد من تحديد أجزاء الجملة حيث إن الجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية لابد أن تبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل ثم المفعول Subject – verb – object

تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا في الشرق الأوسط

- Egypt plays a great role in the Middle East.

٢ الالتزام بقواعد اللغة من حيث الأزمنة الصحيحة للجملة.

- Egypt played a wonderful match yesterday.

لقد لعبت مصر مباراة رائعة بالأمس.

الزمن هنا ماض بسيط حيث حدد وقته و علامته.

لقد اجتاز الاختبار وسيتقدم للجامعة الأسبوع القادم.

- He has passed the test and he will apply to university next week.

هنا مزيج من المضارع التام والمستقبل

٣ الصفة دائمنا قبل الاسم والظرف بعد الفعل

أعتقد أن عليـًا طالب رائع حيث إنه يتحدث الإنجليزية بلباقة.

- I think that Ali is a wonderful student as he speaks English fluently.

٤ أداة النصب «إن» ليس لها مكان عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

- إن تطوير التعليم هو أساس التقدم.

- Developing education is the basis of progress.

لاحظ: أن (is) هنا لم تكن موجودة في الجملة باللغة العربية، ولكن لابد من وجودها في الإنجليزية.

لاحظ: أيضا أن عند بداية الجملة بالفعل يتم إضافة ing ليتحول إلى اسم فاعل gerund.

- من الضروري لنا جميعنا أن نتحد لخدمة بلدنا.

- It is necessary for all of us to unite to serve our country.

١ الضمائر المستترة في العربية pronouns يجب إظهارها عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

- علينا أن نحاول بجد لكي نحقق ما نتمناه.

- We should try hard to achieve what we hope.

هنا ضمير مستتر (نحن) ولاحظ أيضنا أن وجود (على + الضمير) يتم ترجمتها should - must.

v لام التعليل تترجم إلى: المصدر + in order to/ so as to/ to.

- استيقظ مبكرًا للحاق بالقطار المتجه إلى القاهرة.

- He woke up early to catch the train to Cairo.



- ۸ الضمير المضاف إلى فعل يترجم إلى ضمير مفعول (us them him me her) الضمير المضاف إلى اسم يترجم إلى (صفة ملكية) (your – its – our – his – her – their – my):
 - قام الكثير من أصدقائي بزيارتي حيث إنني كنت مريضاً.
- A lot of my friends visited me because I was ill.
 - ٩ الأسماء المعنوية والأسماء التي لا تجمع لا تأخذ the عند ترجمتها إلى الإنجليزية.
 - السعادة كنز لا يقدر بثمن.

- Happiness is a priceless treasure.

honour	الشرف	virtue	الفضيلة	peace	السلام
beauty	الجمال	love	الحب	friendship	الصدقة
freedom	الحرية	advice	نصيحة	hatred	الكراهية
success	النجاح	justice	العدالة	honesty	الصدق

١٠ الأسماء التي لا تجمع Uncountable Nouns لا تأخذ أداة المعرفة the.

paper	الورق	luggage	الأمتعة	baggage	الحقائب
grass	العشب	money	المال	oil	الزيت
electricity	الكهرباء	information	معلومات	news	أخبار

- أريد معلومات عن البحث الجديد.

- I want information about the research.
 - ١١ حرف الـ (س) وكلمة (سوف) المرادف لحما في اللغة الإنجليزية هو زمن المستقبل البسيط.
- I will visit my friends tomorrow.
 - ١٢ لقد + فعل ماضٍ وفي الجملة إشارة تدل على الماضي البسيط تترجم إلى ماضٍ بسيط.
 - لقد نهبنا معا إلى السينما الشهر الماضي.
- We went to the cinema together last month.
 - ١٢ لقد + فعل ماضٍ بدون أي إشارة تدل على الماضي تترجم لمضارع تام.
 - لقد حققت مصر كثيرًا من التقدم ونتمنى المزيد.
- Egypt has achieved a lot of progress and we hope for more.
 - ١٤ قد + فعل مضارع تدل على الاحتمال ونستخدم may.
 - قد نقوم برحلة مدرسية قريبًا.

- We may have a school trip soon.



PART 1

- ه الن + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية مستقبل بسيط منفي future simple.
 - لن يأتي على إلى حفل التخرج بسبب سفره.
- Ali won't come to the graduation party because of his travel.
 - 17 لم + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية ماض بسيط Past simple.
 - لم يتمكن صديقي من الحصول على الوظيفة التي تقدم لها.
- My friend didn't get the job that he applied for.
 - ٧٧ كان + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية ماض مستمر.
 - عندما وصلت المنزل كانت ابنتي تعمل واجباتها المدرسية.
- When I reached home, my daughter was doing her school homework.

لاحظ: أن كلمة home هنا لا تأخذ حرف جر.

- ١٨ كان + قد + فعل ماض يقابله في الإنجليزية الماضي التام.
 - عندما نهبت إلى العمل كان الاجتماع قد انتهى.
- When I went to work, the meeting had finished.
 - ١٩ المفعول المطلق لا يتم ترجمته، ويتم تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف.
 - يؤثر التدخين تأثيرًا سلبيًّا على الصحة.
- Smoking has a negative effect on our health.
- Smoking affects our health negatively.
 - ، الفعل بعد and يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل قبلها من حيث الزمن والإضافات.
- I enjoyed visiting my relatives and talking to them.
 - ٢١ بعض الأفعال في اللغة الإنجليزية لا يأخذ حرف جر (بينما تأخذ في اللغة العربية).

contain	يحتوى على	need	يحتاج إلى	affect	يۇثر على
overcome	يتغلب على	fear	يخاف من	enjoy	يتمتع بـ
admire	ب جعد	feel	يشعر بـ	celebrate	يحتفل ب

Some Important Words for Translation



انجازات chievements	birthplace	comfort
يكتسب cquire	نعمة blessing	مجتمعات communities
eddiction الإيمان	اکسیر blood	ترکیز concentration
admiration الإعجاب	معرض الكتاب book fair	considerate مراع للأخرين
adolescence فترة المراهقة	bossy متغطرس	consideration اعتبار
advance مقتم/يتقدم	عائل الأسرة bread winner	يستشير consult
مغامرة adventure	bringing up	contagious ناقل للعدوي
aggression عنوان	bring prices down يقلل الأسعار	حجر الزاوية corner stone
aging كبر السن	brotherhood الأخوة	craft
alternatives بدائل	campaign حملة	creative عبد
ancient monuments الأثار القديمة	درة/طاقة capacity	creativity الإبداع
artery شریان	capital treason فيانة عظمى	crisis (iai
ashamed خجلان من موقف	car fumes السيارات	دظر التجوال curfew
assassination اعتيال	catastrophe عارثة	
attitude موقف	catch up with واكب/يساير	declare اعلن
authenticity ا	championship विश्व	emotion alde
authority all	وضی chaos	
awareness	characteristics صائص	القضاء والقدر fate
aware of	in in its answers in its answerse in its answe	and the same of th
backbone لعمود الفقرى	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	the same of the sa
	ضارة civilisation	gatherings ح
baggage/luggage متعة السفر	- Laber	
Data reed diet	ستنساخ	
Dattle	عايش ما	
Deal		نم impose نم آع

PART 1

infection	عدوى	postpone	يؤجل	rationalise	رشد
instructions	التعليمات	poverty	الفقر	reasonable	ر عقول
join hands	يتكاتف	praise	يمدح/يشمد ب		عادة تصنيع/تدور
lack of responsib	Dility انعدام المسئولية	pray	صلاة/يصلى		يقلل
layers of society	طبقات المجتمع	preserve	يحافظ/يصون	reflection	انعكاس
mental	عقلی/دهنی	prevention	وقاية	reforms	اصلاحات
model teacher	المدرس القدوة	prime minister	رئيس الوزراء	relationships	علاقات
mutate	يتحور/يتحول	principles	مبادئ	religion	الدين
one tissue	نسيج واحد	privacy	خصوصية	reputation	سمعة
optimism	التفاؤل	private sector	القطاع الخاص	resources	مصادر
outbreak	تفشى	process	عملية	respect	الاحترام/يحترم
outlet	مخرج	producer	منتج	respiratory syste	m الجهاز التنفسي
outstanding	بارز/ظاهر	productive	منتج/غزير الإنتاج	responsibility	مسئولية
overcome = get	over یتغلب علی	promote	يترقى/ينشط	restore/recovery	استرجاع
pandemic	وباء	prosperity	الرخاء	revolution	ثورة
patience	الصبر	protection	حماية	rewarding	مجزية
patriotism	وطنية	provide	يوفر	rights	حقوق
pave	عصمر	public sector	القطاع العام	rise/ leap	طفرة
perfection/mast	ering الإنقان	punctuality	المواظبة	rivals	منافسون
perform	يۇدى/يعمل	punctual	مواظب	rumour	إشاعة
pessimistic	متشائم (صفة)	quarantine	حجر صحی	rush hour	ساعة الدروة
phenomena	ظواهر طبيعية	quarrels	مشاجرات	sacrifice	التضحية
pioneer	رائد/قائد	rapidly	بسرعة	satisfaction	الرضا
policy	سياسة ً	rare	نادر	satisfactory	مئرض
positively	بإيجابية	rationalisation	ترشيد	satisfied	راض

ects	طوائف	springs	ينابيع	trash = rubbish	قمامة
ecurity	الأمن 	stability	استقرار/ثبات	treaty	معاهدة
elf-reliance o	الاعتماد على النفس	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة	undertake	يتعمد
elf-sufficiency	الاكتفاء الذاتي	sterilization	التعقيم	unemployment	البطالة
selfishness	الأنانية	stimulate	يحفز	unite	يتحد
selfish	أنانى	strength	قوة	راب unrest	عدم استقرار/اضط
separate	يفصل/يفرق	strike	إضراب	unselfishness	عدم الأنانية
serious	جاد	strong will	إرادة قوية	up-to-date	حدیث/عصری
severe	شديد/قاس/صادم	struggle	يكافح	update	يحدث بيانات
shade	الظل	subject	يتعرض	uprising	انتفاضة
shortage	نقص	sufficiency	اكتفاء/كبِفَاينة	uproot	يستأصل
shortness	ئقص/عجز	summer resort	المصيف	urge	تحث على
shy	خجول بطبعه	survive	يعيش/يبقى حيثا	vaccine	مصل
ية sightseeing	رؤية المعالم السياح	suspend	يۇجل	values	القيم
sights	معالم سياحية	symptoms	أعراض	votes	أصوات انتخابات
signs	علامات	take to	يلتزم بـ	wasteful	مبذر
slogan	شعار	talented	موهوب	wealth	ثروة
social affairs	الشئون الاجتماعية	terrorism	الإرهاب	weapons	أسلحة
solidarity	تماسك/تضامن	thanks to	بفضل	welfare	رفاهية
source	مصدر	theft	السرقة	while	يقضى وقتنا أو يضيا
species	فصيلة/نوع	the press	الصحافة	wisdom	الحكمة
spirit	روح	threaten	عهد	witness	يشمد
splendid	رائع	tolerance	التسامح	work market	سوق العمل
spoil	ېۋىيىد	tourism	السياحة	worship	قىس/ <i>ع</i> بادة
sports facilitie	نسھىلات رياضية عد	tourist revenue	الدخل من السياحة		



Exercises

A) Translate into Arabic:

- The television and the mobile are responsible for the declining interest in reading among the young.
- Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour like helping the people in need and accepting differences among people.
- Mass production brought down prices and meant that people could afford to buy things that had been too expensive for them in the past.
- 4. We are becoming increasingly dependent on computers. They are used in businesses, hospitals, banks and even crime detection.
- 5. Everyone knows that a person who reads will be successful and a person who doesn't will either not do as well as others or eventually fail in life.
- 6. Cleanliness is extremely important in protecting us from many different kinds of infections. Everyone should follow cleanliness to be healthy and happy all through the life.
- 7. Pollution is one of the most serious problems that face not only Egypt but also the whole world. Pollution is the greatest threat to humanity.
- 8. Getting the right amount of sleep is not only important in terms of being able to function properly during daytime, but it also has an impact on your overall health.
- Our country is in need of every one's efforts. We must work hard to produce and export. Then, we will save hard currency and achieve welfare.
- 10. We can't ignore the fact that education in our country needs an urgent rescue operation.
- 11. Sports have become one of the most effective means of achieving peace and stability throughout the world.
- 12. There is no doubt that smoking is a fatal habit. Figures show that the number of smoking victims is increasing all the time.
- 13. We all must stop throwing rubbish in the streets and in the Nile to solve pollution problems.
- 14. With patience and strong will, man can get over the hardships he faces.

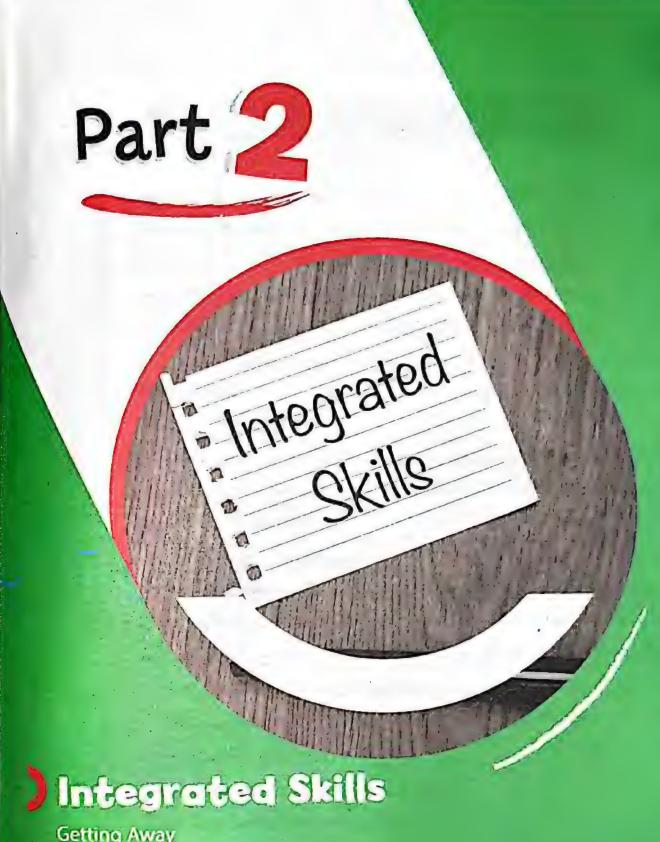


- 15. Reading helps us to increase our information to become knowledgeable about many things in life.
- 16. Many people prefer the peaceful life of the countryside to the noise and congestion of large cities.
- 17. A successful leader should be intelligent, strict, far-sighted and an example worthy to be followed.
- **18.** Earthquakes, volcanoes, storms, hurricanes and tsunamis are all natural phenomena which destroy all the achievements of man.
- 19. The Egyptian woman plays a vital role in all walks (fields) of life and contributes greatly to her country's progress.
- 20. The educational institution seeks to deepen the democratic thought and train the young generations in participation, voicing opinion and constructive criticism.
- 21. The invisible serious problem of water is increasing more and more due to the wrong thought that sea and river water is endless.
- 22. Dumping trash in water pollutes it, so laws must be imposed to prevent that.
- 23. Don't waste your time. Time is your life and you should exploit it carefully and benefit from it as much as possible.
- 24. A bird in hand is better than two in the bush. Hence, be satisfied with what you own.
- 25. Methods of irrigation must be promoted to economise the amount of water used in the traditional way.
- **26.** Tourism is the hope of our country to supply hard currency and work opportunities for our youth.
- 27. Do you think our youth deliberately desire to be naughty or they just imitate with closed eyes and minds?
- 28. Coral reefs must be conserved as they attract a lot of tourists and are the home of scarce species of fish.
- 29. Work is worship. Without it neither we nor our motherland would progress. So, don't be ashamed of any job or craft.
- **30.** We must attract foreign and Arab investors, stimulate tourism and change cultural awareness if we want to recover the Egyptian economy.

PART 1

B) Translate into English:

- ١ إن مشاهد العنف التي تشهدها بعض ملاعب الرياضة خير دليل على غياب الروح الرياضية.
 - ٣ حاليًا يتابع معظم الناس الأخبار على الإنترنت بدلًا من مطالعة الصحف المطبوعة.
- النظافة الشخصية مهمة إذا كنت تريد الحفاظ على صحتك، فهي تحمينا من الأمراض المعدية التي تنتقل بسرعة من شخص لآخر.
 - ٤ إن الاستقرار الاجتماعي والسياسي سيجلب مزيدًا من الاستثمارات وينعش الاقتصاد.
 - ه إن قضية إصلاح التعليم من أخطر القضايا التي تواجه المجتمع المصري؛ حيث إن البحث العلمي أحد ركائز الأمن القومي.
 - أن مصر تحتاج إلى جهود المخلصين من أبنائها حتى تتغلب على كل المشاكل التي تعوق تقدمها.
 - ٧ إن زيادة الإنتاج أصبحت واجبًا وطنيًا لأنها تمكننا من مواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان والبطالة في مصر.
 - ٨ يجب على الحكومة الاستثمار في البنية التحتية وتشجيع الاستثمارات الداخلية والخارجية.
 - ٩ السياحة مصدر هام لجلب العملة الصعبة لمصر، لذا علينا أن نقدم كل التسهيلات الممكنة لجذب السياح إلى مصر،
- ١٠ يجب أن نشجع الاستثمار ونزيد الإنتاج ونقلل الاستهلاك، فهذا سوف يخفض الأسعار ويحل المشكلة الاقتصادية، ولا يمكن أن يتحقق ذلك بدون تعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.
 - ١١ هل استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم سيساعد الطالب في تخطى الكثير من التحديات المعاصرة؟
 - ١٢ يعتمد تقدم أي أمة على تطوير التعليم، وكذلك الاهتمام بالزراعة والصناعة.
 - ١٣ الرياضة ليست فقط من أجل تنمية اللياقة البدنية، ولكن لتطوير الناحية الذهنية كذلك.
 - ١٤ لابد من تطوير القطاعين الخاص والعام لتوفير فرص عمل للخريجين والقضاء على البطالة.
 - ٥١ لابد من ربط التعليم بسوق العمل، وفتح كليات جديدة تؤهل الطالب للعمل بكفاءة.
 - ١٦ الأب هو عائل الأسرة ليوفر لها الحماية والرعاية، والأم هي حجر الأساس لتوفير العاطفة والحب.
 - ١٧ يجب علينا الاحتمام بالموحوبين لأنهم أمل الأمة ومستقبلها، لذلك يجب توفير رعاية خاصة لهم.
 - ١٨ ندرة الماء أزمة العالم القادمة، ومن ثم اقتصد في استهلاكك للمياه، فقطرة الماء تساوي حياة.
 - ١٩ إن الإصرار هو أول خطوة للنجاح، فلابد أن تتميز بالإصرار والعزيمة وقوة الإرادة.
 - ٢٠ لابد أن يسود مبدأ الشوري داخل العائلة لينمو الطفل محبًّا للحوار واحترام الرأي الآخر.
 - ٢١ كلما كانت لديك القدرة على التخيل كنت أكثر إبداعًا، لذلك أكثر من القراءة.
 - ٣٢ الماء إكسير الحياة وشريانها، فحافظ عليه من التلوث ولا تلق القمامة فيه.
 - ٣ علينا أن نلتزم بعاداتنا وتقاليدنا، ولا نقلد لمجرد التقليد، فنحن شعب متدين بطبيعته.
 - ٢٤ لابد من صيانة وتطوير وسائل المواصلات العامة لكي يتم استخدامها بواسطة فئات المجتمع المختلفة.
 - ٢٥ الشعب المصري نسيج واحد، فلا تؤثر فيه الإشاعات ومحاولات التفرقة بين طوائفه المختلفة.
 - ٣ المدرس القدوة هو العمود الرئيسي في العملية التعليمية، لذلك تهتم وزارة التربية والتعليم بتدريبه.
 - ٣ ارض بما قدره الله لك لأن راحة النفس تقلل الضغوط وتمنع الكثير من الأمراض.
 - ٢٨ لقد ثبت علميًّا أن الموسيقي تقلل التوتر ويتم استخدامها في علاج بعض الأمراض.
 - ٢٩ المدرسة هي اللبنة الأولى لتعليم الطفل النظام والمواظبة، لذلك يجب الاهتمام بالمدرسة.
 - ٣٠ وسائل الإعلام مصدر لمعرفة الكثير من طبقات الشعب، لذلك يجب أن تقدم محتوري جيدًا.



Getting Away
Supporting Community
Improving Lives
Friendship
Communications
Learning from literature



Skills Integration Methodology

-) نهدف من خلال تدريس هذا الجزء (Skills Integration) إلى الارتقاء بمستوى تعلم مهارات اللغة الإنجليزية لدى الطلاب فى بداية المرحلة الثانوية. حاولنا من خلال ذلك الربط بين المهارات الأساسية للغة مثل مهارات القراءة و الاستماع و الكتابة (Reading & Listening & Writing) الأساسية للغة مثل مهارات القراءة و الاستماع و الكتابة والكتابة وذلك لتوسيع مدارك الطلاب بصورة مترابطة عن طريق تدريس نفس الموضوع من جوانب عده وذلك لتوسيع مدارك الطلاب بالإضافة إلى إكسابهم رؤى مختلفة يستطيعون من خلالها تكوين منظورهم الخاص. تم تقديم المهارات بشكل يتواكب مع طريقة تلقى الطالب فتم البدء بمهارة القراءة ثم مهاره الاستماع وانتهاء بمهارة الكتابة بعد أن ينتهى الطالب من اكتساب مفردات لغوية جديدة في جزئيتي القراءة والاستماع.
-) بدأنا بتقديم مهارة القراءة Reading Skill في صورة قطعة فهم Reading Skill بدأنا بتقديم مهارة القراءة Reading Skill في صورة قطعة فهم على دلك تقديم يليها أسئلة مشابهة لما قد يتعرض له الطالب أثناء أدائه الامتحان النهائي. تلى ذلك تقديم ومراجعة بعض الإرشادات الخاصة بقواعد اللغة الإنجليزية Grammar Hints.
-) يأتى بعد ذلك الجزء الخاص بتقديم مهارة الاستماع Listening Skill ويعتبر كتاب GEM رائدًا في تقديم تلك المهارة في قالب غير تقليدى لمساعدة الطلاب في تنميتها من خلال تقديم نص مسموع حول نفس موضوع قطعة الفهم. ثم تقديم ترجمة الكلمات الجديدة التي قد تساعد في فهم الطالب للموضوع وتكوين حصيلة لغوية لديه. ثم تقديم أسئلة حول هذه الكلمات للتأكد من فهم الطالب لها وقدرته على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة.
-) في الجزء الأخير يطلب من الطالب تطبيق نتائج ما تم فهمه في الأجزاء السابقة من خلال ممارسة مهارة الكتابة Writing Skill عن طريق:
 - ١- ترجمة لبعض الجمل المتعلقة بالموضوع.
 - ٢- كتابة مقال مطابق للمعايير متعلق بالموضوع أيضنا.

وبذلك يكون الطالب قد تحصل على معلومات إضافية في قالب غير تقليدي تساعده في الإجابة عن أية أسئلة محررة مسايرة لاتجاهات التقييم الحديثة.





Comprehension passage)

Reading

Travel is something which people do every day. It is very difficult to avoid the need to travel. It may be a trip to school, university or to work. Travelling can often take a long time, especially when great distances need to be covered. People often enjoy travelling abroad for holidays. But for some people travelling is not fun at all. Some people suffer from travel sickness. This means that they will become very unwell each time they travel.

Cars and motorcycles are faster modes of transport, but are more expensive to use as gasoline is needed for them to work. It can usually be assumed that the longer you wish to travel, the more expensive and time consuming it will be. The use of a plane is necessary for people wanting to travel very long distances. Although traffic is rarely a problem for airplanes, it can take a lot of preparation to travel by plane.

A train is another mode of transport which is ideal for travelling long distances within the same country, or between countries which are connected by land. A train driver will stop at train stations on route to allow passengers wishing to proceed to the scheduled destination to board the train.

A number of destinations can be travelled to by using the sea. Some people choose to go on a cruise for their holiday, which would involve stopping at many different city ports for a short amount of time. People who need to travel short distances may choose not to use any transport at all. People often rely on their legs to take them to places nearby. This is often encouraged as certain modes of transport have been said to produce harmful emissions and damage the environment.

A) Choose the correct answer:t

- 1. Which mode of transport does not cost money?
 - a) Train.

b) Car.

c) Walking.

d) Bus.

- 2. Why do some people not enjoy travelling?
 - a) They find it a waste of time.
 - b) It is not comfortable.
 - c) It is expensive.
 - d) They become unwell.



PART

3. Name the mode of transport which is controlled by a pilot and stops at an airport.

b) Airplane.

c) Car.

d) Bus.

4. Which mode of transport is ideal for travelling between countries connected by land?

b) Train.

c) Airplane.

d) Car.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. In your opinion, how would life be without planes?

6. Which mode of transport do you prefer? Why?

7. Why are using cars and motorcycles very expensive?



Grammar hints



When you talk about travelling and means of transporting you mainly use the present simple tense because you are talking about facts. Also you can use the future simple to express your prediction about the future and use the past simple to talk about past actions and experiences.

How to form the present simple tense in English:

	Structure of present simple	
positive	negative	question
I work in a bank.	I don't work in a bank.	Do I work in a bank?
You work in a bank.	You don't work in a bank.	Do you work in a bank?
He works in a bank.	He doesn't (does not) work in a bank.	Does he work in a bank?
She works in a bank.	She doesn't (does not) work in a bank.	Does she work in a bank?
It rains a lot.	It doesn't (does not) rain.	Does it rain a lot?
We work in a bank.	We don't work in a bank.	Do we work in a bank?
They work in a bank.	They don't work in a bank.	Do they work in a bank?

How to form the past simple tense in English:

	Structure of Past simple	
Positive	Negative	Question
I / you / he / she / it / we / they arrived.	I / you / he / she / it / we / they didn't arrive.	Did I / you / he / she / it we / they arrive?

How to form the future simple tense in English:

Structure of future simple			
Positive	Negative	Question	
I will (I'll) be there tomorrow.	I won't (will not) be there.	Will I be there tomorrow?	
you will, he will, she will, it will, we will, they will	you will not, he will not, she will not, it will not, we will not, they will not	will you?, will he?, will she?, will it?, will we?, will they?	





Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

advantages	مزایا	encourage	يشجع
assume	يؤكد	environment	البيلة
avoid	يتجنب	especially	وبخاصة
connected	متصل	gasoline	بنزين
consuming	استملاك	passengers	مسافرون
cruise	رحلات نهرية	payment	مقابل مادی
travel agency	شركة سياحة	enjoyment	متعه
expenses	نفقات	gain	يكتسب
companion	رفیق/صحبه	purpose	**
journey	رحلة	pa. pose	غرمٰن

EXEIC	ses	
1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
1 took the ring road to the traffi	ic iams in the downto	wn
a) get b) find	c) stay	d) avoid
2 The underground stopped suddenly b	pecause of a breakdow	un so all the
had to get out of it.	ecause of a breakdov	vii 30 air tile
a) passengers b) crafts	c) workers	d) trokkers
(3) The big amount of pollution is very har	mful to the an	d all living creatures
a) lobby b) environment	c) market	d) closers
My little brother got low marks in the r	midvear exam but my	narents him
to get better.	mayear exam bacmy	parerres minimum river
a) discouraged b) rejected	c) encouraged	d) discussed
6 One of electric cars is that it do	esn't go for long dista	inces.
a) demerity b) activities	c) advantage	d) con
She rationalized the by buying	cheaper products for	her house.
	c) prices	
7 I get a lot ofout of working wit	-	
a) sorrow b) worry	· ·	•
The of this meeting is to elect a	a new chairman.	
a) reason b) purpose	c) situation	d) conclusion
She hasa good reputation as a	great teacher.	
a) earned b) won		
6 A/An is a company that arran	ges hotel rooms, plar	ne tickets for people
who want to travel.		
a) news agency b) advertising agence	cy c) travel agency	d) travel channel
2 Translation:		Writing
A) Translate into English:		ne and a resolution and happy
د السفر لا حدود لها ولكن يتوقف ذلك على الغرض من السفر.	فوائد، ولكن يرى البعض أن فوائ	قالو في الماضي إن للسفر سبع
B) Translate into Arabic:		
People who are interested in travelling	g don't give due care t	to how much money
they will spend, they only think about	how much enjoymen	t they will have.
3 Writing:		
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED	AND FIFTY (150) wor	ds on the following:
Expectations about t	ravelling in the futur	e.
(The previous ideas (comprehension- vo	cabulary- exercises- tr	anslation - Grammar
hints) may help you to write an appropria	ate essay)	
minus/ may neip you to minus		





Supporting community





Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A community is a group of people who live and work together. People who help each other and provide service to them are called community helpers. Whether you live in a small town, on a farm, or in a big city there are many community helpers.

Community helpers are people who work to help the community and the people who live in a community. There are many kinds of community helpers. There are community helpers who keep you safe and healthy, keep neighbourhoods clean, volunteer their time, and make sure everything works and gets built in the community.

The people who keep a community safe include firefighters, paramedics, and police officers. A police officer keeps people in the community safe from those who might try to hurt others. Firefighters also keep people safe. They help people who are in an accident or who have a fire at their house. A paramedic cares for people and takes them to a hospital when they are hurt or sick.

Two community helpers increase the knowledge of the people. A librarian takes care of and provides books and other materials to those in the community who need them. A librarian must be smart and care about books. A teacher helps others learn many different things in a school. A teacher must know a lot about different subjects and how to tell this information to others.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	How many	community	helpers	are mentione	d in the	passage
	,,0,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,					

a) 3

b) 4

c) 5

d) 6

- 2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
 - a) firefighters

b) paramedics

c) police officers

d) all mentioned

- 3. The suitable title of the passage is
 - a) community helpers

b) community workers

c) community services

d) community savers



d) Librarians.

- 4. Which of the following must know a lot about climbing ladders?
 - a) Police officers.

b) Pilots. c) Firefighters.

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. Why do you think we should be community helpers?
- 6. Who can increase the knowledge of the people? How?
- 7. What is a community?



Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about charity work and how to help our society, you mainly use present simple tense whether active or passive forms as you are talking about persons' habits and also facts.
- Also, you can use the past simple tense when you talk about someone's achievements in the field of supporting and helping the society.

How to form the past simple tense:

Positive	Negative	
- I/He/She/It/We/You/They went out fast.- I/He/She/It/We/You/They played football well.	 I/He/She/It/We/You/They didn't go out. I/He/She/It/We/You/They didn't play football well. 	
Question	Passive form	
Did (subject) inf? What did (subject) inf?	Obj. (was -were) + p.p. A football match was played yesterday.	

How to form the passive form of the present simple:

Active form	Passive form
 Some people donate money for charities. We always help the poor in our community. 	 Money is donated for charities. The poor are always helped in our community.







Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز
characteristics	تمات
charities	الجمعيات الخيرية
climb	يتسلق
clothing	ملبس
collect	يجمع
desire	رغبة
distribute	يوزع
donate	يتبرع
effort	خعه
firefighter	رجل المطافى

good citizen	مواطن صالح
knowledge	معرفة
ladder	سلم
neighbourhood	حی سکنی
paramedic	وسعق
possessions	ممتلكات
provide	يمدايزود
safe	آمن
smart	ذكى
through	من خلال/عن طريق
volunteer	يتطوع امتطوع

Exercises

Choose the corre	- AGICIS	es	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	d:	•
- Cicolate II	10		
a) characteristic	b) achievement	al team to be qualifi	ed to the world cup.
2 The stude	ents get good grades an b) financial	c) desire	d) clothing
a) safe	b) financial	d go to the Faculty	of Medicine.
3 The university sho	ould man com	c) homeless	d) smart
a) provide	ould more facilit b) collect	ties for disabled stud	dents.
You'll need water	proofif you go	c) climb	d) create
a) charities	b) characteristic	out in the rain.	,
5 Ali was treated at	b) characteristics the scene by a team of	c) clothing	d) possessions
ambulance to the	the scene by a team of	before bein	g taken by an
6 The company	b) paramedics	c) volunteers	d) neighbourhoods
a) donates	Thogas Honation about	consumer favourite	products.
-)	D) CITTIDS	c) attende	d) collects
a) effort	ne box easily, without us	sing much	
•	b) clothing	c) possessions	d) knowledge
a sorry, rear t. The	wall is too high to		
a) go	b) run	c) climb	d) walk
9 IVIY SON to	or the army even though	h he did not have to) .
	b) volunteered		d) provided
	the first step on the	of success.	
a) characteristic	b) clothing	c) knowledge	d) ladder
Translation:			Malata
A) Translate into Er	nglish:		Writing
ن المصرى الصالح.	يم والجهد واحدة من <mark>سمات المواط</mark>	مع عن طريق التبرع بالمال وال	- إن الرغبة في مساعدة المجته
B) Translate into Ar			
	a great way to help and		nunities. As many
people like to wo	rk as volunteers during	their free time.	
Writing:		•	•
Write an essay of ab	out ONE HUNDRED AN	ND FIFTY (150) word	ds on the following:
Ways of supporting our society to be a better one.			
The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocab	ulary - Exercises - Tr	anslation - Grammar

hints) may help you to write a comprehensive essay.





Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If you wish to change life and to get success, you need to work hard. Yes, it is very difficult to do, but you will get a lot of benefits later. Only those people, who work hard and spend a lot of their time can reach their goals and be successful.

If you do something, that you like, it is known, that you will get success quickly and you will get positive results. You should not think about what other people are speaking, it is needed just to do and reach the goals. You should understand that life consists of different events, without them, it is impossible to get success. Do you know that all dreams will come true if you work hard on them? All thoughts' are connected with the reactions and because of them, if you change the way of thinking, you can change life.

A lot of the doctors say that smiling is very useful for life. It will give a lot of power and positive emotions. You will see that it is impossible to be in a bad mood, if you are smiling. Also, it is better to communicate with people, who are smiling, because it creates better start of the conversation. If you are eating healthy food, the brain will get all needed vitamins and minerals. Because of this fact, you will have a lot of power to do something new and to work hard to reach goals. Because of this fact, it is recommended to check the way of life and start doing sport.

- 1. To be successful, you should
 - a) think about what other people are speaking
 - b) eat junk food
 - c) be serious
 - d) neglect people's speech



2.11.	Integrated Sk
2. It is impossible to be in a bad mood, if	ou are
c) smiling	b) changing your life
3. The synonym of "understand" is	u) doing sport
a) grasp	b) recognise
c) mistake	d) attach
4. The underlined word "them" refers to	*********************
a) results	b) reactions
c) goals	d) events
Answer the following questions:	

- 5. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.
- 6. How do you think we can achieve our dreams?
- 7. How can healthy food help us to improve our life?

Grammar hints



- When you talk about an important or a famous character, you mainly use the past simple tense to describe his life, place of birth, date of birth and how he became famous. Also, you can use the past simple tense to talk about his works or achievements that he made.
- When you write about a situation that happened to you or a story, you mainly use the past simple tense.
- But, when you talk about an invention or a discovery that has made some improvements to our lives, you can use the present perfect tense to show its effects that are still with us.

How to form the present perfect tense:

Positive	Negative
- I/we/you/they have cleaned the house.- He/She/it has left the house.	 I/you/they haven't cleaned the house. He/she/it hasn't left the house.
Question	Passive form
 Have you/they cleaned the house? Has he/she/it left the house? 	 The house has been cleaned. Some books have been published recently.



Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

penefits	فوائد	mental •	ربائد
oringing up	التربية	minerals	الدح معدنية
create	يخلق	mood	دالة مزاجية
dreams	أحلام	physical	بىنى
emotions	عواطف	positive	إيجابى
encourage	يشجع	reaction	رد فعل
event	حدث هام	resült	يتنغ
financial	مادی	shelter	مأوى
goal	ميف	smiling	الابتسام
healthy food	طعام صحى	success	نجاح
homeless	مشرد	successful	لجع
ideal	مثالی .	understand	فعم
impossible	مستحيل	vitamins	تامينات
_			

Exercises

	LACI	cises)
Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c	or d:	
The discovery of	of oil brought many	to the future of	our country
a) benefits	b) vitamins	c) socults	our country.
	ts are expected to	2000 jobs	d) minerals
a) encourage	b) discourage		d) bring up
The centre prov	vides help for people s	uffering from	illness
a) beneficial	b) mental	c) homeless	d) successful
The concert of	Amr Diab was a great .	c) Homeless	d/ successiui
a) succeed	b) successful	c) successor	d) success
	is considered as one		
	b) mood		
	mplete the report by Fr		
Saturday.		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	,
•	b) improper	c) ideal	d) ideally
	ve've had from the pub		The state of the s
make more suc			
a) negative	b) positive	c) disappointing	d) impossibly
Can you tell us	about your wh	nen you knew that you	won the prize?
a) smiling	b) result	c) goal	d) reaction
The governme	nt achieved their	of providing free edu	cation for every child.
a) goal	b) emotion	c) mood	d) disadvantage
We should help	people with severe	disabilities.	
a) successful	b) impossible	c) physical	d) curable
Translation:			Writing
A) Tunnalata into	English:		
ن لهم وأيضا الاهتمام	مشردین عن طریق توفیر ماوی آمر	لنون الاهتمام بأطفال الشوارع وال	- يجب على الدولة و كذلك المواه
		لية والمادية.	بهم من النواحى البدنية والعة
B) Translate into	Arabic:		to the live of their
	- share are the main s	supporters for improv	ing the lives of their
children and st	udents through provice	ing the ideal uppring	ing and education.
Writing:			ab a fallowings

Writing:
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:
The efforts of the Egyptian government to improve the lives of the Egyptians.
The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Comprehension - Vocabulary - Comprehen



Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Friendship is one of the greatest bonds anyone can ever wish for. Lucky are those who have friends they can trust. Friendship is a devoted relationship between two individuals. They both feel immense care and love for each other. Usually, a friendship is shared by two people who have similar interests and feelings.

You meet many along the way of life, but only some stay with you forever. Those are your real friends who stay by your side through thick and thin. Friendship is the most beautiful gift you can present to anyone. It is one which stays with a person forever. A person is acquainted with many persons in their life. However, the closest ones become our friends. You may have a large friend circle in school or college, but you know you can only count on one or two people with whom you share true friendship.

There are essentially two types of friends, one is good friends the other are true friends or best friends. They're the ones with whom we have a special bond of love and affection. In other words, having a true friend makes our lives easier and full of happiness. Most importantly, true friendship stands for a relationship free of any judgments. In a true friendship, a person can be himself/herself completely without the fear of being judged. It makes you feel loved and accepted. This kind of freedom is what every human strives to have in their lives.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. If you have trusted friends, you are
 - a) unlucky

b) unfortunate

c) devoted

- d) lucky
- 2. How many types of friends are in our life?
 - a) One.

b) Two.

c) Three.

d) Four.



3.	The	underlined	word	"It"	refers	to	
	-16		0	_			 •

a) freedom

b) ordinary friendship

c) true friendship

d) fear

4. The word "immense" is similar in meaning to

a) many

b) small

c) minor

d) great

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. Do you have a true friend? Why? Why not?
- 6. Why do you think we need true friends?
- 7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

2

Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about how to make a new friend, friendship, or the qualities of a good friend, you can use present simple tense. But if you want to talk about an experience with a friend, you can use the past simple tense.
- When you talk about your experience of moving to a new place, you can use both the
 present simple tense and the past simple tense to compare between the two places
 and to describe your feelings. Also you can here use the present continuous and the
 past perfect.
- Take care of the articles (a an the) when you talk or write about something. You have to know whether the noun is singular, plural, specified or unique.

How to form the past perfect tense:

Positive '	Negative
- I/He/She/It/We/You/They had played with the ball.	- I/He/She/It/We/You/They hadn't played with the ball.
Question	Passive form
- Had you/she/he/it/they played with the ball?	- Obj. + had been + p.p.





Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

affection	عاطفة	interests	اهتمامات
attribute to	يعزز/ينسب إلى	internal	داخلی
bonds	روابط	judge	يحكم
college	كلية	judgments	أحكام
companion	صحبة	loyalty	الإخلاص
confidence	الثقة	lucky	محظوظ
deceive	يخدع	maintain	يحافظ على
factors	عوامل	mutual respect	الاحترام المتبادل
feelings	مشاعر	relationship	علاقة
forever	الأبد	self-esteem	تقدير الذات
freedom	حرية	share	يشارك
friendship	الصداقة	sorrow	حزن
gift	هدية	tie	رابطة
immense	ضنم	tolerance	تسامح
individuals	أفراد	trust	بثق



Exercises

Chancatha			
Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
or really have a go	od with my I	ittle sister. I adore her.	
a, relative	relationship	c) citizanchin	d) championship
To cooperate we	ll with each other, all	of us should show	u) championship
a) violetice	D) intolerance	c) tolerance	d) difference
Parents must have	erespect as	they are role models f	or their children
a) Illatiual	b) annual	c) monster	d) mutual
The thief	the woman and too	k all her money.	.,
a) deceived	b) received	c) ticked	d) tracked
My friend expres	sed his at the	e death of my father. H	le was very sad.
a) joy	b) happiness	c) sorrow	
The prisoner was	given hisaf	ter 25 years in prison.	
a) free	b) freedom		d) relationship
His unhappiness	in his workplace was	the main in his dec	ision to travel abroad.
a) element	b) result	•	
During the last fe	ew days, I had	difficulties because o	
a) simple	b) immediate		
		ause of the wonderful	
a) companion	b) campaign	c) continent	
No country has t		n other country's	affairs.
a) internal	b) ordinary	c) abnormal	d) extraordinary
Translation:			Writing
A) Translate into E	nglish:		
لاص والاحترام المتبادل	للثقة و التعاون والمحبة والإذ	د بین شخصین وتکون قائمة علر 	- الصداقة هي رابطة قوية تريم
	1	وبها.	ولايمكن للإنسان أن يعيش بد
B) Translate into A	rabic:	and factors such as low	v self-esteem People
Loneliness can b	e attributed to inter	nal factors such as lov	nworthy of attention.
who lack confide	ence in themselves of	ten believe they are u	involuty of accordions
Writing:			rds on the following:
Write an essay of al	bout ONE HUNDRED	AND FIFTY (150) wo	ids off the following.
The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vo	cabulary - Exercises - T	ransiación Grannia
hints) may help you	to write an appropri	ate essay.	
			(59)





(1)

Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is rare to find someone with good technical and communication skills. People will judge, evaluate, promote or block you based on your communication skills.

Learning what not to say is probably more important than learning what to say. As your career develops, you will realise that the wise speak less. Speak when you have value to add. Avoid any communication in an emotional state when you might say things you will regret later. One unnecessary word <a href="https://doi.org/10.108/journal

Another problem to overcome is speaking too fast. Since our minds are working faster than our speech, we are inclined to speak fast. This does not necessarily mean that the person hearing it will get it any faster. On the contrary, it is always the reverse. So slow down, and think before you speak. "When I get ready to speak to people," Abraham Lincoln said, "I spend two-thirds of the time thinking what they want to hear and one-third thinking what I want to say." Adding humour is also <u>essential</u>. But realise that not all jokes are funny and observe certain boundaries. Never say anything that could offend. Remember you are not a comedian who must offend as many people as you can to be witty.

 To find someone w 	ith good technical and c	communication skills i	s something
a) easy	b) ordinary	c) reachable	d) seldom
2. To be wise, you sh	ould speak		a) scidoiii
a) a lot	b) a little	c) more	d) fast
3. The word "uttered	"is similar in meaning		u) last
a) cut	b) found	c) said	d) realised
4. The antonym of th	e word "essential" is	-, Juliu	u) realised
a) trivial	b) major	c) main	d) important
		·	

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. Why do you think it is necessary to have good communication skills?
- 6. How can communication skills be developed?
- 7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.



Grammar hints

- . When you talk about means of communications or any modern technology in the future, you mainly use the future tense with its different forms.
- When you talk about any invention and its advantages and disadvantages, you mainly
- When you talk about something that happened at a particular time in the past, you can use the past simple and past continuous.

How to form the future tenses:

Positive	Negative	Question	Passive form
Subj. + will + inf.	Subj. + won't + inf.	Will + subj. + inf. ?	Obj. + will be + p.p.
Subj. + (be) going	Subj. + (be not)	(Be) + sub+ going	Obj. + (be) going to be + p.p.
to + inf.	going to + inf.	to + inf.?	
Subj. + (am – is –	Subj. + (am –is –	(Am – Is – Are) +	Obj. + (am – is –
are) + v-ing.	are) not + v-ing.	subj. + v-ing?	are) + being + p.p.
Subj. + will have + p.p.	Subj. + won't have	(Will) + Subj. + have	Obj. + will have
	+ p.p.	+ p.p?	been + p.p.

How to form past continuous tense:

Positive	Negative
- I/we/you/they were playing football He/She/ It was eating.	- I/We/You/They weren't playing He/She/It wasn't eating.
Question	Passive form
- Were you/they playing football? - Was he/she/it eating?	- Obj. + (was – were) being + p.p.





Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

comedian	pave	يمهد
develop	portable يطور	قابل للنقل
devices	rare	نادر
entertain	realise	يدرك
especially	role خاصة	red
essential اجوهری	ruin	يدمر
evaluate .	schoolmates	زملاء في المدرسة
	slow down	هدئ (سرعة)
	speech	الكلام/الحديث
jokes	value	قيمة
multi-functional ِهُ الاستخداماتِ	Wise	ىكيم
	witness	

EXercises

U	Choose the co	rrect answer	
	The televisi	rrect answer fro	ma, b, c or d:

ine television a	nd the same	Lord:	
a) profitable	b) hearable	now	easy to move or carry
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		d) fictional
a) unimportant	b) asset you e	rivironment clean to a	void most diseases
There were two	to the murdo	c) inadvisable r and they were asked	d) unnecessary
a) witnesses	b) criminals	r and they were asked	to say what they saw.
Hams has a goo	od sense of	c) killers he is cheerful and funn	d) prisoners
a) human	b) boredom	c) humour	
The city was in a	a state of after	r the earthquake	d) sorrow
			d)
we should	the situation caref	5.11 1 6	r decision
The govern	b) valuate	c) evaporate	d) evaluate
a) paving	it is working on devel	oping our roads by	them well
a) value	e goods with a total	of 10 million po	unds
-) Talac	valve	c) ovaluation	13
a) overload	h) overcome	of the problems in a ve	ery short time.
10 We should have	freedom of	c) overcast	d) overcharge
what we say.		but we must be polite	e and responsible for
a) speak	b) sponge	c) speech	-1\
Translation:	,	c/ speech	d) sped

2 Translation:

A) Translate into English:

- شحد العالم مؤخرًا توسعنا كبيرًا في الكثير من المجالات و خاصة وسائل الاتصال حيث أصبح التواصل بين الناس في كافة أنحاء العالم عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي أكثر سهولة.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Modern technology has paved the way for multi-functional devices like the smartwatch and the smartphone.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following: Adverts on the internet and if they are good or bad.

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.



Writing





1

Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Reading literature is a good habit, but it is of no use if one cannot understand or remember what he or she has read. A lot of people even forget the name of the book they have just finished reading because of their inability to make the most out of their reading.

Careful reading is the key tool for understanding the main idea of the content and making the most out of your reading activity. It is advisable to read a single line more than once if it has complex meanings. This makes its understanding better and clearer.

After reading the book, write a summary of the content on your own. In that abstract, emphasise the main idea and informative points of the content. Having an understanding the text is more important than reading or memorising it.

There are several ways for a reader to <u>enhance</u> his comprehension ability. The first one is to read the text in a loud voice. This way the reader will be able to listen to his voice and it will be easier for him to understand what he is reading.

The person who is reading the text doesn't have to know all the expressions and words written in the text. While reading, the reader should jot down those difficult words in a notebook so that later he can search for them. Once the reader has gathered all the incomprehensible words, he should look up those words in a dictionary. Exploring those words in the dictionary will help them to establish the lucid meaning of the text.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The underlined word "it" refers to
 - a) the main idea

b) the content

c) reading activity

- d) a single line
- 2. How many ways are mentioned in the passage to enhance comprehension ability?
 - a) One.

b) Two.

c) Three.

d) Four.



- 3. The person who is reading the text should
 - a) read in a loud voice
 - b) understand the meaning of all words
 - c) look up new words in a dictionary
 - d) all mentioned
- 4. The underlined word "enhance" means
 - a) improvise

b) decrease

c) discourage

d) improve

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. How do you think reading helps our life?
- 6. What kind of books do you like to read? Why?
- 7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you want to talk about your opinion of something such as a poet or a novel, you can use the present tenses; simple, perfect or continuous. But when you talk about the biography of the author or the writer, you mainly use the past simple tense.
- Take care when you talk or write about something that some verbs are followed by (to + inf.) or (V-ing) and also some verbs are followed by both according to the meaning.

How to form the present continuous tense:

Positive	Negative
- I am watching TV.	- I am not watching TV.
- You/We/They are watching TV.	- You/We/They aren't watching TV.
- He/She/It is watching TV.	- He/She/It isn't watching TV.
Question	Passive form
- Are you watching TV?	- Obj. + (am – is – are) being + p.p.
- Are They/you watching TV?	-TV is being watched.
- Is he/she/it watching TV?	





Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

activity	نشاط
Book Fair	معرض الكتاب
complex	معقد
content	محتوى
emphasise	يۇكد .
establish .	يۇسس
exhibitions	معارض
explore	يستكشف
expressions	فعييرات الكرابي (دائر مادد

gather	يجمع
habit	عادة
hold	يقام
inability	عدم القدرة
literature	الأدب
poetry	الشعر
publishing	نشر
recognise	يتعرف على
reduce	يقلل

Charge the same	es				
Choose the correct answers					
In the afternoon, there will be	d:				
In the afternoon, there will be plenty of a) expressions b) exhibitions Most of the money will be used to	c) activities	ed by the kids. d) views			
a) ruin	an madatries an	a mobilise the			
The chemical processes involved in the e					
b) complex	Aperiment are extre	mely			
wy teacher always	portable	d) rare			
My teacher always the important a) established b) explored	ce of studying hard.				
6 Medical supplies have been	c) gathered	d) emphasised			
Medical supplies have beenamo a) explored b) established A collection of paintings by the great art a) literature b) Book Fair	ong families affected c) distributed	by Corona virus. d) published			
a) literature b) Book Fair	ist is on at th	e Museum of Art.			
7 He plans to the area before he ro	c) expression	d) exhibition			
		d) reduce			
What annoyed me is the of my te	eam to win the match	h.			
a) Inability b) content is the business of producing boo	-1-11	d) cleverness			
- Literature Di Princishina					
We thought it was COVID-19, but the doc a) establish b) explore	c) Emphasising	d) Exploring			
a) establish b) explore	th	ie symptoms الأعراض			
2 Translation:	c) recognise	d) hold			

2 Translation:

A) Translate into English:

- الشعر، الرواية، القصص القصيرة، المسرحيات والكتب بمختلف موضوعاتها هي فنون الأدب الذي من خلاله نتعرف على ثقافة الدولة وشعيها.

B) Translate into Arabic:

The Cairo International Book Fair is the largest and oldest Book Fair in the Arab World. It is held every year at the Egypt International Exhibitions Centre.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

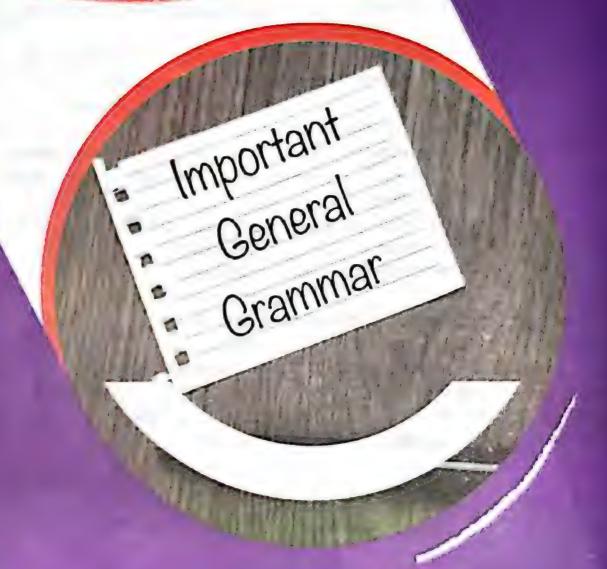
A biography of a famous Egyptian writer and his achievements.

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.



Writing





Important General Grammar

Important General Grammar

Causative

وهى ليست مثل المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول فهى تأتى مع الأشياء التى لا يقوم الإنسان بفعلها بنفسه ولكن شخصنا آخر يقوم بهذا العمل له وتتكون من:

الشخص صاحب الشيء باقى الجملة

وعلى سبيل المثال، لو قلنا: إن الميكانيكي قام بتصليح سيارة أحمد، فلو بدأنا بالميكانيكي لأصبحت الجملة مبنية للمعلوم، ولو بدأنا بالسيارة لأصبحت الجملة مبنية للمجهول، ولو بدأنا بصاحب الشيء وهو أحمد لكانت الجملة سببية وهو ما نتحدث عنه الآن:

- -The mechanic repaired Ahmed's car.
- Ahmed's car was repaired.
- Ahmed had his car repaired.

(passive)

(Active)

(causative)

ولاحظ جيدًا تصريفات have في مختلف الأزمنة وهي كالأتي:

	1	'- 1	e				•
have/has	is having	had	was having	have/has had	had had	will have	ای فعل ناقص + have

Active	Causative
She cleans her house.	She has her house cleaned.
She is cleaning her house.	She is having her house cleaned.
She cleaned her house.	She had her house cleaned.
She was cleaning her house.	She was having her house cleaned.
She will clean her house.	She will have her house cleaned.
She will be cleaning her house.	She will be having her house cleaned.
She has cleaned her house.	She has had her house cleaned.
She has been cleaning her house.	She has been having her house cleaned.

PART 3

She had cleaned her house.	She had had her house cleaned.
She had been cleaning her house.	She had been having her house cleaned.
She must clean her house.	She must have her house cleaned.
She likes cleaning her house.	She likes having her house cleaned.
She has to clean her house.	She has to have her house cleaned.
She used to clean her house.	She used to have her house cleaned.

- Mother was preparing our food when we returned home.
- = We were having our food prepared when we returned home.
- The barber is going to trim my hair.
- I'm going to have my hair trimmed.
- I have bought a computer for Mr Osama recently.
- = Mr Osama has had a computer bought recently.

Ex.

A: I hardly recognised you! You have had your hair dyed, Ahmed.

B: You should have your eyes tested. My name's Ramy not Ahmed.

A: Oh! You have had your name changed too, haven't you?

ويمكن استخدام الفعل get بدلًا من

- You should get/have your car washed and polished.
- Did you have your hair cut?

Exercises

Hehis teeth checked twice a	year,
a) had	b) is having
c) will have	d) has
Sheher skirt cleaned at the	moment.
a) is being had	b) has
c) is having	d) will have
😰 my hair trimmed once a mo	
a) am having	b) have
c) will have	d) am going to have
Wea central heating installe	d in our house next month.
a) are going to have	b) had had
c) had	d) have had
🖲 Omar burglar alarm fitted las	st week.
a) is having	b) has
c) has had	d) had
	red tomorrow.
a) are had	b) have
c) are going to have	d) have had
They are having their new house	at the moment.
a) decorating	b) decorated
c) decorate	d) decorates
Mrs. Othman had the shopping	to the house by her son.
a) carried	b) carries
c) carrier	d) carrying
9 We have to the lock fixed.	
a) had	b) having
c) be having	d) have
He is going to have a new pair of glass	ses
a) making	b) make
c) made	d) will make

2

Wishes & Regrets

الأماني والتدم

اليت wish & If only

Wish/ f Only + Past Simple → refers to the present

+ Past perfect → refers to the Past

+ Would/could → refers to the Future

1. wish/ if only + past simple

١ - للتعبير عن أمنية عن موقف في الحاضر نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

- My father only speaks Spanish. He wishes he spoke English or French.
- If only I didn't have so much homework. (I have a lot of homework).
- If only I lived in a big city. It's boring in the country.
- I wish I was/were a millionaire.

- يجوز استخدام (were) بدلًا من (was) في هذه الحالة وخاصة في المواقف الخيالية غير الواقعية.

2. wish/ if only + past perfect

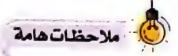
٢- للتعبير عن أمنية (ندم) عن موقف في الماضي نستخدم زمن الماضي التام.

- ▶ I wish I'd studied harder when I was at school. (I didn't study harder when I was at school).
- I wish I hadn't eaten all that chocolate. I feel sick.

3. wish/ if only + would/ could

٢- للتعبير عن أمنية عن موقف في المستقبل نستخدم (مصدر + would/could).

- I wish it would rain.
 - The garden really needs some water.
- ▶ I wish you'd give up smoking.
 - It's really bad for you.



١ – يمكن استخدام (COUld) بدلًا من الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن أمنية في الحاضر:

If only I could sing. (but I can't)

I wish I could find my keys to be able to enter the flat.

۲- غالبنا ما نستخدم (c<mark>ould</mark>) مع (l/we) ويمكن استخدام (would/could) مع باقى الضمائر في معان, خاصة مثل:

- wish they could speak French. (They can't.)
- I wish they would speak French. (They don't want.)
 - الجملة الأولى أنهم لا يستطيعون تحدث الفرنسية وأتمنى لو يستطيعون.
 - الجملة الثانية أنهم يستطيعون تحدث الفرنسية ولكنهم لا يريدون وهذا يضايقني.
 - ٣- نستخدم (could have + P.P) بدلًا من الماضي التام للتعبير عن أمنية (ندم) عن موقف في الماضي.
- I wish I could have attended your party, but I was abroad.
 - ٤- نستخدم (If only) مثل حالات (if) كالآتي:
- If only Ahmed had come earlier, he'd have met his classmates.
 - ه- لا تؤثر (wishes/ wished) في معنى الجملة أو زمنها.
- Maher wishes that he had a lot of money to buy a new house.
- Sameer wished he had mended the window before winter.
 - ٦- يمكن أن نستخيم الماضي المستمر بعد (wish/ if only)).
- I wish it wasn't raining. (It is raining.)
- I wish you weren't leaving tomorrow. (You are leaving tomorrow.)
 - ٧- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد Wish يأتي (المصدر + to
- Please do not hesitate to contact me if you wish to discuss the matter.

Exercises

1 wish my flat big enough to have	a party.
a) is	b) would be
c) will be	d) were
2 Omnia wishes sheall that money	on new clothes.
a) will spend	b) could spend
c) hadn't spent	d) spends
3 Ali wishes hea basketball player, b	
a) is	b) were
c) had been	d) are
4 I wish I to Ahmed's wedding last w	eek as he is angry with me.
a) had gone	b) went
c) would go	d) will go
5 My hope is to be a doctor. I wish I	a doctor.
a) had been	b) am
c) would be	d) could be
6 I can't concentrate. I wish theythis	music down.
a) had turned	b) have turned
c) would turn	d) turn
7 He is an engineer, but he wishes he	medicine at university.
a) studied	b) had studied
c) would study	d) will study
8 I missed the train to Assuit. I wish I	it.
a) had caught	b) caught
c) catch	d) would catch
9 I usually visit China, but I wish Ithe	eir local food.
a) had liked	b) like
c) would like	d) liked
10 I regret going to the final match. I wish I	there.
a) didn't go	b) wouldn't go
c) hadn't gone	d) won't go



had better/ would rather/ prefer

- had better + inf. = should/ought to/ had better not + inf.
 - نستخدم had better بمعنى يجب أن، وبعدها المصدر وفي النفي not + inf.
- He'd better book his flight early.
- I'd better not take out a loan; I won't be able to pay it back.
- Would rather = prefer +v-ing
- نستخدم would rather بمعنى يجب أن وبعدها العصدر وفي النفي not + inf وهي تفيد تفضيل شيء على شيء، لذلك يمكن
- استخدام than ثم المصدر معها. I'd rather do my shopping tomorrow.
- I'd rather not have gone to the dinner party last night.
- I'd rather stay at home than go out. ('d rather + inf. than + inf.)
- إذا جاء اسم أو ضمير بعد rather نستخدم الماضي البسيط أو الماضي التام بنفس معني <mark>wish</mark> نستخدم الماضي للتعبير عن المضارع والماضي التام للتعبير عن الماضي،
- I'd rather you stayed with us tonight. 'd rather + subject + past
- I'd rather Ramy hadn't taken his father's car yesterday.
- (Prefer + ing) form/ noun + (to + ing) form/ noun (general preference)
- I prefer playing tennis to playing football. I prefer tennis to football.
- Prefer + (to + inf.)/ noun + rather than + inf./ noun (general preference)
- I prefer to eat fish rather than (eat) meat.
- Would prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf. (specific preference)
- I'd prefer to walk home rather than take the bus.

PART 3

Exercises

We went to the theatre yesterday; today I	would rather to the single
a) going	b) to go
c) go .	d) went
2 It's such nice weather – I'd prefer	in the garden rather than watch TV
a) to sitting	b) sitting
c) sit	d) to sit
3 It's such nice weather - I 'd prefer to sit in	
a) instead of	b) to
c) than	d) rather than
4 I'd rather youa taxi. It's not safe o	
a) to take	h) take
c) took	d) not take
5 The film is quite violent. I'd rather our child	drenit.
a) watch	b) didn't watch
c) to watch	d) watched
6 I prefer using a keyboard with a p	en.
a) to writing the product with a support	b) to write
c) rather write	d) than write
7 I'd rather speak to him in person	things over the phone.
a) to discussing	b) to discuss
c) than discussing	d) than discuss
8 If I had a choice, I think I'd rather	London.
a) living in Paris to	b) live in Paris than in
c) live in Paris to	d) to live in Paris than
They'd rather have lunch inside, but I'd pre	efer outside in the garden.
a) eat	b) eating
c) to eat	d) to eating
Although I love relaxing on beaches, I thin	ik I preferin the mountains.
a) walk	b) not to walking
c) to walking	d) walking
-, to Hulling	,



Unreal Past

الماضي غير الحقيقي

- يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط للإشارة إلى الحاضر (الحاضر غير الواقعي) عندما نتحدث عن مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق في الوقت الحاضر،

- يمكن استخدام الماضي التام للإشارة إلى مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق في الماضي (الماضي غير الحقيقي).

Past Simple is used with:

- Conditionals Type 2
- If I were you, I would pay.
- wish (present)
- I wish he were here now.
- Suppose/ Supposing
- Suppose you were asked to move out, what would you do?
- I'd rather + sbuj. ... (present)
- I'd rather you went now.
- as if/ as though كما لو
- He isn't French but he speaks French as if he were from France.
- It's (about/high) time
- It's time you retired.

Past Perfect is used with:

- Conditionals Type 3
- If I had seen him, I would have told you.
- wish (past)
- I wish you had taken his advice when he gave it.
- Suppose/ Supposing
- Suppose you had seen the crime being committed, what would you have done?
- I'd rather + subj. ... (past)
- I'd rather you hadn't told all those lies.
- as if/ as though
- ▶ He hadn't been awarded the first prize but he behaved as if he had been awarded it.

PART 3

Exercises

Mr Khalid acted as if he	the company.
a) would own	b) will own
c) owns	d) owned
2 Supposing you taking	g the money, what would you have done?
a) were seen	b) had been seen
c) had seen	d) saw
3 I wish I to the concert	last night.
a) didn't go	b) went
c) had gone	d) have gone
4 It's high time youhow	v to cook.
a) learnt	b) had learnt
c) hadn't learnt	d) learn
5 Suppose yousomeor	ne getting mugged يسرة, what would you do
a) were seen	b) saw
c) had seen	d) can see
6 It's about time we the	e old printer.
a) replace	b) had replaced
c) replaced	d) have replaced
7 I'd rather you everyor	ne my secret at the party last night.
a) hadn't told	b) told
c) didn't tell	d) had told
8 I would have prepared some s	andwiches if Iyou were visiting.
a) know	b) could know
c) knew	d) had known
9 I'd rather youon the T	V when I'm reading.
a) turn	b) didn't turn
c) hadn't turned	d) turned
o If only Imy dad's cam	
a) broke	b) didn't break
c) hadn't broken	d) had broken



Pronouns

الضمائر

الضمائر هي كلمات تشير إلى أسماء تنقسم إلى: ضمائر فاعل – ضمائر مفعول – صفات ملكية – ضمائر ملكية – ضمائر منعكسة

Subject pronouns	Object pronouns	Possessive pronouns	Possessive adjectives	Reflexive pronouns
1	me	mine	my	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	hers	her	herself
It	ît		its	itself
We	us	ours	our	ourselves
They	them	theirs	their	themselves
You	you	yours	your	yourself – yourselves
يأتى بعدها الفعل تأتى في بداية الجملة	تأتى بعد الفعل تأتى بعد حرف الجر	لا تتبع باسم	يأتى بعدها الاسم	تعود على فاعل الجملة الغرض منها التأكيد

- I play football with my friends.
- He will visit me tomorrow.
- Don't speak with them again.
- This is my pen. = This pen is mine.
- I took his book but I couldn't take hers.
- I did my homework (by) myself.
- She, herself, phoned me to tell the truth.

Exercises

① Our house is as big as Th	ney are the same area.	
a) your	b) you	
c) yourself	d) yours	
Trees protect from many p		
a) us	b) we	
c) our	d) ours	
Ali is going to travel tomorrow	has booked the tickets.	
a) His	b) Him	
c) He	d) Himself	
Make at home and enjoy y	our time.	
a) yourself	b) yours	
c) you	d) ourselves	
(5) I couldn't clean the house by	so I asked my sister's help.	
a) my	b) myself	
c) mine	d) me	
6 Amal is sitting next toin th	ne exam room.	
a) me	b) mine	
c) my	d) myself	
🗷 I love English very muchn	ny favourite subject.	
a) its	b) It's	
c) There's	d) He's	
When she came home, she made	husband a cup of coffee.	
a) her	b) hers	
c) herself	d) hers	
This is Mona's car, it isn't		
a) my	b) her	
c) mine	d) myself	
You can take this present. I got it for	-	
a) your	b) you	
c) yourself	d) yourselves	

6

Question Tag

السؤال المذيل

يأتى السؤال المذيل فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية بعد comma ويكون الغرض منه التأكيد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟) يتكون السؤال المذيل من كلمتين (auxiliary verb + Subject pronoun). السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (يكون مثبتا إذا كانت الجملة منفية والعكس صحيح). النفى فى السؤال المذيل يكون مختصرًا بمعنى (n't) و ليس (not).

- ▶ Ali is playing football, isn't he?
- ▶ They don't sleep late, do they?
- ▶ Mona always gets up early, doesn't she?
- I am happy, aren't !?
- I am not astonished, am !?
- You'd rather come early, wouldn't you?
- You'd better study hard, hadn't you?
- ▶ He'd studied his lessons, hadn't he?
- ▶ They'd study their lessons, wouldn't they?
- Open the door, will/won't you?
- Don't open the door, will you?
- Let's go out tonight, shall we?
- Let us go out tonight, will you?
- I think you will pass the exam, won't you?
- I don't think you will pass the exam, will you?
- I never watch plays on TV, do I?
- ▶ Someone is recording a video, aren't they?
- No one can come here today, can they?
- ▶This is a nice story, isn't it?
- ▶ Amazing, isn't it?



Exercises

I think that nobody lives in this house,	?		
a) don't they	b) do they		
c) don't l	d) does he		
We are very happy to be with you,	?		
a) are we	b) are you		
c) aren't we d) are we			
Hams can hardly walk as she has injure	ed her leg,?		
a) can she	b) can't she		
c) does she	d) has she		
He's visited his grandfather and stayed	a long time with him,	****	
a) isn't he	b) doesn't he		
c) hasn't he	d) wasn't he		
5 He slept after he had finished his home	ework,?		
a) hadn't he	b) didn't he		
c) wouldn't he	d) had he		
He's the best grade in English,	.?		
a) has he	b) isn't he		
c) doesn't he	d) hasn't he		
I am going to travel to Cairo tomorrow	,?		
a) am not l	b) amn't l		
c) am I	d) aren't I		
8 Hana runs fast to school,?			
a) doesn't Hana	b) does not she		
c) doesn't she	d) does Hana		
9 Give me another chance,?			
a) will you	b) would you		
c) wouldn't you	c) will not you		
to I don't think they saw us,?			
a) did they	b) do they		
c) didn't they	c) do I		

Conjunctions

- 1. Although = though/even though (S + V +) كاملة أكاملة (إبالرغم من (ياتي بعدما جملة كاملة (روابط التناقض Although he's only 14, he's an expert at computers.
- فعل + فاعل + صفة + However
 - ▶ However fast he was, he couldn't catch the bus.
- فعل + فاعل + as + صفة . 3
 - Fast as he was, he couldn't catch the bus.
- 4. Despite/in spite of (noun/ gerund = V + ing) بالرغم من (ياتي بعدما عبارة)
- Despite his illness, he passed his exams.
- 5. but =, however =, yet
 - ▶ She drove fast, however she missed the plane.
 - I studied so hard, but I didn't get the full mark.

- 🕜 روابط الإضافة
- 6. As well as = besides + in addition to (noun/ gerund) بالإضافة إلى
 - ▶ Besides cooking for 20 people, I did all the washing up.
- 7. in addition + عملة
 - ▶ He played very well in addition he scored a goal.
- 8. لناعل الأول، فاعل as well as أعلى أعلى إلا الأول، فاعل
 - I, as well as my friend, play football well.
- as well + جملة كاملة + but + صيغة استفهامية + as well
 - Not only have you got top marks but you've got a prize as well.
- 🞧 روابط السبب

- لأن (ياتي بعدهم جملة كاملة) Because = since = as (S + V) (الله بعدهم جملة كاملة)
 - ▶ Because /since we are early, I think we should wait outside.
 - My daughter got up early because she slept early.
- 11. Because of = owing to = due to (noun/ gerund) بسبب
 - Due to the bad weather, the match was cancelled.
 - ▶ He can answer any question because of being clever.

🔞 روابط الفرض

- 12. So as to = in order to = to + inf. 12
 - ▶ He opened the door in order to see who was there.
- 13. So that = in order that (S فاعل + can/may/could/might + verb)
 - ▶ He left early so that he could/ (might) catch the train.

وابط النتبحة

- 14. So = therefore =that's why = Consequently
 - My bike's broken, so I'll have to walk.
 - I missed the train. Consequently I was late for school.

PART 3

Exercises

He dian't expect to	win he was	delighted when he wor	n the gold medal.
a) so	b) for	c) if	. d) as
They risked their live	vessave their	r country.	
• •	b) so that	c) because	d) so as to
🔞 writing a f	famous book, he trans	slated French literature	into Arabic.
a) Because of	b) Beside		d) As well as
I want to buy a nice		s my mother's birthday.	
a) so	b) as		d) despite
I felt really tired thin	is morningls	slept early last night.	
a) because	b) but	c) although	d) so that
6 He tries to save mu	uch moneyh	e can buy a car.	
a) so that	b) to	c) in order to	d) because
7 old he is,	he can play tennis ver	y well.	
a) However	b) Although	c) Despite	d) So
B He didn't do his be	est,he came t	first in the final exam.	
a) so	b) because	c) However	d) however
9 I was very late for	my work, I ha	ad to take a taxi.	
a) Consequently	b) Occasionally	c) However	d) As well
10 My brother, as wel	l as his friends,	late for school.	
a) were	b) are	c) have been	d) was
11 running a	s fast as he could, he	missed the bus.	٠
a) However	b) As well as	c) Despite	d) Although
12 Hams had to chan	ge her opinion	the problems she ha	d.
a) owing to	b) because	c) so	d) besides
13 Poor this	man is, he feels very h	nappy and satisfied.	
a) however	b) as	c) although	d) so
14 She didn't attend t	the wedding	she had promised me	to come.
a) so	b) though	c) because	d) but
15 Not only 1	to the party, but he b	rought a present as we	•
a) he came	b) he had come	c) did he come	d) will he com
			•

8

so ... that/ such ... that/ enough/ too ... to

جملة + that + صفة – ظرف + so + فعل + فاعل .1

جدًا لعرجة أن

- Hams is so clever that she can answer any questions.
- جملة + that + صفة + اسم + such + a/an فعل + فاعل .2

جدًا لدرجة أن

- ▶ Hams is such a clever student that she can answer any question.
- جملة + that + صفة + اسم جمع اسم لا يعد + such + فعل + فاعل . 3
 - ▶ They are such clever students that they can answer any questions.
 - ▶ He gave me such useful information that we were so happy.
- 4. فعل + فاعل + adjective / adverb + enough + to + inf.

كاف

- ▶ Hana is clever enough to answer any question.
- ▶ She isn't tall enough to join the basketball team.
- . to + inf بسم + to + inf فعل + فاعل + فاعل
 - ▶ He has enough money to buy the car that he likes.
- . to +inf مفة ظرف + too + فعل + فاعل .6 + to

جدًا لدرجة أن لا (تعطى معنى النفي)

- Ali is too lazy to do the homework.
- ▶ The question was too difficult to answer.

Exercises

1 He is clever student that he alv	ways gets the full mark in his exams.
a) such	b) such a
c) so	d) too
Couldn't answer the question. It was	-
a) so difficult	b) difficult enough
c) too difficult	d) such difficult
(3) Ali is ill to go to school on his	•
a) enough	
c) so	d) such an
The food was hot to eat.	
a) too	b) to
c) so	d) very
(5) I have work to do. it's hard to f	inish it.
a) so much	b) such much
c) too much	d) enough much
The water in the pool was to s	wim in.
a) cold enough	b) so cold
c) enough cold	d) too cold
7 So fast that he could catch the	bus before leaving.
a) Ali ran	b) did Ali run
c) Ali was run	d) Ali was
8 I don't have money to buy this	wonderful car.
a) too much	b) such much
c) enough	d) many
He isstupid that he couldn't p	ass the simple test.
a) so	b) such
c) too	d) enough
10 I think they are students that t	hey managed to pass all their exams.
a) so clever	b) such a clever
c) such clever	d) so a clever



Distributives

PART (3)

Exercises

1 Hams wants t	to study English	or Geology at school.	
a) either	b) both	c) neither	d) half
There was a f		toys were dama	ged.
a) both	b) all	c) every	d) each
3 of m	y parents are at home to	oday because they are a	t work.
a) Neither	b) Both	c) Either	d) All
My teacher g	avestudent in t	the class a small present	
a) all	b) each	c) either	d) both
5 the r	rice that you need is in the	he cupboard.	
a) All	b) Both	c) Either	d) Each
6 I need to be o	good atspeakin	g and writing English to	get a good job.
a) each	b) both	c) every	d) half
I called both I	Hana and Mona, but	replied.	•
a) neither	b) either	c) both	d) every
He had an acc	cident and he was injure	ed inleg.	
a) both	b) every	c) all	d) each
He had an acc	cident and he was injure	ed inlegs.	
a) both	b) every	c) all	d) each
10 He comes to	visit his parents	three days.	
a) each	b) all	c) half	d) every
11 citize	en has the right to vote i	n the elections.	•
a) Both	b) Every	c) Neither	d) All
12 Neither Dina i	nor her sisters t	o the club.	
a) go	b) is going	- 3	d) has gone
13 stude	ent in the class knows th	ne right answer to this q	uestion. I am really
shocked.			
a) Every	b) Neither	b) All	d) Either
14 of the	e two brothers were at t	he party yesterday.	
a) All	b) Every	b) Half	d) Each
15 The teacher w	ill ask student	in turn.	a, Lucii
a) all	b) each	b) neither	d) both
(00)			4 , 50(1)

10 Adjectives

الصفة هي الكلمة التي تصف الاسم وتأتي:

١- قبل الاسم المفرد أو الجمع

٧- بعد v-to be

٣- بعد الظرف

- Ali is a clever boy.
- I saw some wonderful animals yesterday.
- ▶ Hind is lazy.
- ▶ He was well-organized.

Ordinary and Extreme adjectives:

بعض الصفات عادية في حين أن بعض الصفات قوية: الصفات العادية نستخدم معها الظروف التالية:

▶ Very - quite - fairly - rather

الصفات القوية نستخدم معما الظروف التالية

▶ Absolutely – extremely – totally – completely – really – incredibly

Examples of ordinary and strong adjectives:

Ordinary	Strong	Ordinary	Strong
happy	excited	bad	awful
clever	brilliant	good	amazing
cold	freezing	angry	furious
interesting	fascinating	large	huge
hot	boiling	clean	spotless

- Mona is very angry.
- ▶ Mona is absolutely furious.

Verbs followed by adjectives

الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها صفة:

(go - get - turn - fall - grow - come - become - feel)

- The weather turned cold.
- ▶ He fell asleep while watching the film.



PART (3)

EXercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 can't stand dealing or even speaking with him.
 - a) bore

b) bored

c) boring

- d) boredom
- 2 The soup tasted, so I asked for some more.
 - a) wonderfully

b) wonder

c) wonderful

- d) wonders
- 3 School kids are veryduring breaks.
 - a) noisy

b) nosily

c) noise

- d) nosiness
- 4 Mona is absolutely with her children who broke the vase.
 - a) angry

b) annoyed

c) angrily

- d) furious
- - a) wrong

b) wrongly

c) wronged

- d) wrongness
- 6 My son Mohammed isclever.
 - a) absolutely

b) terribly

c) very

- d) enough
- 7 I looked at the present that my dad bought.
 - a) happy

b) happily

c) happening

- d) happiness
- 8 The plane that I saw flew in the sky.
 - a) high

b) highness

c) highly

- d) higher
- 9 He was brought upso, he has good manners.
 - a) badly

b) bad.

c) good

- d) well
- 10 My brother is tall, so I advised him to join a basketball team.
 - a) extreme

b) extremely

c) extremism

d) an extreme

Th-

The Gerund and The Past Participle as Adjectives

i. The gerund is	used as	an adject	ive for the	doer of	he action
------------------	---------	-----------	-------------	---------	-----------

(اسم الفاعل)

- تصف المسبب للحدث (اسم الفاعل)

- ▶ The film is amazing. (not amazed)
- ▶ He was very boring and I had no desire to talk to him.

2. The past participle adjective is used for the receiver of the action.

(اسم مفعول)

- ﴾ I was amazed when I saw the film
- ▶ I am really bored when I talk to this person.
- ومن هنا تلاحظ أنه من الخطأ الشائع أن نقول إن الصفات المنتهية بـ ing تصف الأشياء وإن الصفات المنتهية بـ ed تصف
- I was very frightened when I met that frightening man.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 was so and for that reason I went to bed early.
 - a) tiring

b) tire

c) tired

- d) tiredness
- The dog got with the same food that it usually got.
 - a) boring

b) bored

c) boredom

- d) bore
- 3 I became on seeing the mountains in Sinai.
 - a) impressed

b) impressing

c) impressive

- d) impress
- Mido is so that I always enjoy being with him.
 - a) interested

b) interest

c) interests

- d) interesting
- 6 The match wasso we were so happy to attend it in the stadium.
 - a) fascinated

b) fascinating

c) fascinate

d) fascination

الظرف هو الكلمة التي تصف الفعل وتأتي:

بعد الفعل

قبل الصفة

في بداية الجملة أحيانا

- ▶ He runs quickly.
- ▶ Ali is badly injured.
- Interestingly, they won the match.

هناك عدة أشكال مختلفة للظرف و هي:

إضافة y اللصفة مثل:

slowly – quickly – interestingly – terribly – happily high – late – early – hard – fast

ظروف و صفات بنفس الشكل

الصفات المنتهية بـ ly نستخدم الترتيب التالي:

in a/a + adj. + way in a friendly way – in an ugly way

ظروف التكرار مثل:

often – generally – sometimes – hardly – rarely – frequently

ظروف التأكيد والاحتمال:

certainly – definitely – probably – exactly – possibly – maybe

ظروف الدرجة:

almost - much - nearly - quite - really - very - too - fairly - extremely

ظروف شاذة مثل:

well - indoors - outdoors

My mother was, so she	e was taken to hospital
a) bad injury	b) bad injured
c) badly injured	d) injured bad
2 I shouted at my son w	hen he broke his toys
a) angry	b) angrily
c) anger	
3 I haven't seen her	d) angrier
a) late	b) later
c) lately	d) late time
Teachers at schools treat stude	
a) in a friendly way	b) friendly
c) in friendly	d) in a friend way
5 I own a very wonderfu	•
a) Current	b) In a current way
c) Current less	d) Currently
	errible accident because of my broken leg
a) hardly	b) hard
c) harder	d) hardness
7 I always speak about o	•
a) proud	b) pride
c) proudness	d) proudly

Comparative and Superlative

Comparative	Superlative
صفات الدرجة الثانية و هي المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين	التفضيل بين شخص أو شيء و بين مجموعته
adj. + er + than more + adj. + than less + adj. + than better + than worse + than	the + adj. + est the most + adj. the least + adj. the best the worst

- Mona is taller than Leila.
 - Mona is the tallest in the class
- ▶ Basma is more beautiful than Hams.
 - Basma is the most beautiful in the family.
- Ahmed is better than Ali.
 - Ahmed is the best student in the class.

as + adj. + as نستخدم equality عند المساواة as + adj. + as نستخدم as + adj. + as عند نفى التساوى نستخدم as + adj. + as

- Rasha is as clever as Noha.
- Rami isn't as (so) fast as Ali.

لاحظ الآتي:

The + comparative of two

▶ He is the taller of two friends.

> The more you study, the higher marks you will get.

1 This is interesting b	ook I have ever read.
a) more	b) most
c) as	d) the most
Maha is of the two	sisters.
a) fast	b) faster
c) the faster	d) the fastest
3 This question is not	the other one
a) more difficult	b) most difficult
c) as difficult	d) so difficult as
The you run, the ea	rlier vou arrive
a) most	b) more
c) fastest	d) must
5 Who is, Mona or Em	
a) young	b) the youngest
c) as younger	d) younger
6 No river in the world is	
a) as long as	b) longer than
c) the longest	d) longest
7 Of all the boys in my street, h	•
a) clever	b) cleverest
c) cleverer	d) the most cleverest
8 I am good at cooking, but my	
a) better	b) best
c) goodies	d) the better
9 I think running isuse	
a) much	b) much more
c) many	d) more much
This is one of places	
a) hotter than	b) the hottest
c) as hot	d) the most hot
-, as not	a) the most not



New

Teacher's Guide

1 st Secondary



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

	جنة
	تاثير
	معدد بالخطر
	الحفاظ على البيئة
M	مدية تذكارية
	معزول
	مستدام
	الحياة البرية
	نظام بيلي
	مزيحم
	بشكل أساسي
	شجع.
	ــکان
	دماية
	مواد خام

مميز
يتجنب
السياحة البيئية
اماكن جذب
يترجل
متطوع
مواد خام
ديث
حديث
غريب
يستريح
منتج

Expressions, Phrases @ Prepositions

N.		
على الأقل	ينهب في إجازة	
يۇكد	 يتمكن من	
يعود إلى	يقوم بعمل شيء مختلف	
يميل إلى الخارج من	 يدون ملاحظات	,
يستغل	 مزایا ك	
يلتقط صورًا	 سعيد جدًا	
مثنزه -	.ālle lii	



a)isolated	on, he wasin sp		d) damaged
	b)limited	c)existed	u/dullinges
a)location	mainfor mos	c)cooperation	d) foundation
•		nd we should ban hunting th	
a)in dangerous	b)dangerous	c) traditional	d) endangered
	good for you. You should h		
a) press	b)relax	c)depress	d) confess
•		ngin the world	
a)resorts	b)stores	c)reports	d) regards
	y mother the fl	•	-
a)had cleaned	b)was cleaning	c) is cleaning	d) has cleaned
	school the beg		
a)celebrated	b)celebrates	c) has celebrated	d) was celebrated
•	a lot of TV when she wa		
a)watches	b) is watching	c) has watched	d) watched
•		aced many problems on the	way.
a)After	b)Before	c) As soon as	d) While
		to him about their future.	
a)is talking	b)talked	c) was talking	d) has talked
Fill in the space:			
When I reached t	he station, my friend was	s waiting for me. He was .	a smal
bag and looked so hi	appy (b) he	e saw me, he hurried to sh	hake hands with me. He
told me that he had	booked the tickets. We	going to /	Alexandria to spend ou
		ted to do so. We waited	the trail
arrived, and set off ha	appily.		
arrived, and set on the			
	alish:		
A) Translate into En	glish: على كل سائح أن يحافظ على ممت .	السياح لزيارة مصر فإنه من الواجب	إذا كان من الواجب علينا تشجيع
A) Translate into En	glish: على كل سائح أن يحافظ على ممتا	السياح لزيارة مصر فإنه من الواجب	إذا كان من الواجب علينا تشجيع
A) Translate into En	glish: على كل سائح أن يحافظ على ممتا.	السياح لزيارة مصر فإنه من الواجب	إذا كان من الواجب علينا تشجيع
A) Translate into En	glish: على كل سائح أن يحافظ على ممتا.	السياح لزيارة مصر فإنه من الواجب	إذا كان من الواجب علينا تشجيع
A) Translate into Eng لكات هذا البلد العريق. B) Translate into Ara	، علی کل سائح أن يحافظ على ممتا		
A) Translate into Eng لكات هذا البلد العريق. B) Translate into Ara	، علی کل سائح أن يحافظ على ممتا	السياح لزيارة مصر فإنه من الواجب n to be able to live a happ	



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

have the section of t	· <u></u>		احترام/بريستيج
**************************************	مجتمع	4044-10414-10	زراعة الأعضاء
	تبرع		ضغط الدم .
\$ * **********************************	باجدا	***************************************	يقنع
4 - 1	تقليدى		مظهر خارجي
\$1 0 March 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	منظمة	***************************************	فيلم وثائقى
5000 1-100000 -111-0000-0000000 -11000 1041 000 M-111 1481 1	ذكاء	•	مسئول عن
#880m 1028880 170000500 10-000500 105 10000 101 1 1 800 10 10000 10	يوظف	\$11.5 years \$1.5 1 to back out seeings the despite this base \$1.5 has \$1.6 1.5 feet	شخصية
Charles and Charle	مسئولية	***************************************	فوائد
041100000001110000000000000000000000000	بيراقب	#3000 00 X 5 1 0000 10 1 10 1000 1 1 1 1 000 00 1 1 1 1 100 000 1 1 1 1 100 000 1 1 1 1 100 000 1 1 1 1 100 000 1	جمعية خبرية
	طويل المدى		سرطان
+000+011+0000 Art 110000000 10+000000 1++000+011 0+000+010 0+000+011 0+000+011 0+000+011 0+000+011 0+000+011 0+000+011 0+000+011 0+000+010 0+000+010 0+000+010 0+000+0100+000+0	موطن		معرفة
Opdo 100	مۇسس		بحث علمي
an	بدلًا من	***************************************	ىخل

Expressions, Phrases @ Prepositions

			ii.
	يبحث عن		يغضب من شخص
•	يشارك في	***************************************	يتبرع بالدم
	مهم لـ	***************************************	على سطح
	يعطى فرصة		يمدح من أجل
**************************************	الشعور بالمسئولية	***************************************	کمیا <i>ت</i> من
	يعطى إحساسنا ب		يتوه/يضل الطريق

 My wife was ill and the ir a) standards The synonym of the work 	b) admire fonwere so le b) tests d decrease is b) deduce	c) illustrate ow. c) levels	d) hate d) stairs
 My wife was ill and the ir a) standards The synonym of the word a) increase 	onwere so long tests decrease isb) deduce	ow. c) levels	d) stairs
a) standardsThe synonym of the worda) increase	b) tests d decrease is b) deduce	c) levels	
The synonym of the work a) increase	d decrease isb) deduce	•	
a) increase	b) deduce		
		a introduce	
My father was a very			d) reduce
	man. He was re	ady to give money to any	yone who needed it.
	b) greedy	c) brilliant	d) careless
G Every one of us should h		-,	
**	b) role	c) rule	d) ruler
Olt is a fact that water			
	b) boiled	c) boils	d) is boiling
Noha no longer goes ou			
_	b) was using to do		d) used to do
O People from	•		
•	b) retired	c) retire	d) have retired
As soon as she		ean the house.	
a) comes	b) came) had come	d) is coming
This shop sells good clos		fine wool.	
a) make	b) made	c) are made	d) are making
a) ········			
Fill in the space:			finishing my work
My car was stolen ye	sterday. I parked it in th	ne side street(a	finishing my work
the bossets base	o my lunch and rest for	a while. When I return	led to get it, I discovered in
Aboro I	want to the police stati	on and(c)	the thert. The policeman
asked me(d)	questions and prom	nised to get it back as s	soon as possible.
asked file(u)	•		
A) Translate into Englis	h:		يعتبر محمد صلاح مثالًا وقدوة حسنا
	نمتع به من أخلاق كريمة.	ه تنخبیر هن سبابنا الیوم لما یا	المناز بصد حمد المسال المسال المسال



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

THE SEQUENT AND SECULAR AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND	اكتشاف .	# E	مجرمون
Belling to Barrier or modern and Education occopies drawn allow as an ending give drawn	يُحسن/يطور	ACCEANT & DICTOR \$2000 CONTRACTOR OF A STATE OF THE STATE	تاجر
# 0.00 x 1 x 1 x 1 x 1 x 1 x 1 x 1 x 1 x 1 x	ممتلئ الجسم		مرحلة الطفولة
Component - displans no specio non i equipación distancións englis fino e a displand o o englis fino e displand o componente de la componente	بائس	**************************************	يعترف
\$100 mm = 1 000000 - 1-10000 10 - 100000 0 00000 0 000000 0 1000000 0	مجتمع		تسلية
	يكافئ		مماثل
	بالضبط		ألات
W-1.100	مسرح		ثقافة
	اعتراف		عمل تطوعى
	خبرة/تجربة		زوج الأم
	يثق		معاق
	يدين لـ		غير معتاد
			يستحق

Expressions, Phrases @ Prepositions

 يخالف القانون		سيدة تبدو متعبة
 يدين بالمال لـ		یرد دینًا
مشكلة مع		يصنع اختلافًا
يوقف من		يقوم بعمل عظيم
 يعود إلى	N. 1000 M. 100	يخدع

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:			
All those who trave	abroad to study and work	much useful exp	erience.
a)earn	b)gain	c)win	d)succeed
1 really feel tired. To	o much work makes me loo	ok	
ajdeadly	bjempty	c)happy	d)miserable
10 The school should b	e a place for education an	d also for to be at	
a) performance	bjexplanation	c)entertainment	d)payment
My little daughter b	egan to look	and so she wanted to follow a	diet.
a)ugly	b)plump	c)tired	d)dirty
• We should all try to	keep ourher	itage safe.	4
a)cultural	b)cultured	c)culture	d)cultures
OI think it is a long tir	neI had such	a wonderful time.	
a)for	b) since	c)when	d)as
Nadia isn't at home	now. She to !	Mansura to apply to university.	
a) has gone	b) visited	c)has been	d)had been
OThe last time he pla	yed football with us was	we were in Aswan.	
a)when	b)since	c) while	d)during
O They f	or this company for 20 year	rs before starting their own bu	siness.
a) work	b) have worked	c) are working	d)worked
@ Adel i	n this flat since 2015 and h	e has no intention to leave it.	
a)lives	b)lived	c) is going to live	d) has lived
this needs to have no the money I need. I agreed and I hope m	I haven't found a job nuch money. My father h one of i ny business will be a succ	eful. I gradua (b)	ng my own business but ut now he can't give me
A) Translate into E	nglish: موح والثقة بالنفس والصبر.	بغى عليك أن يكون لديك الشجاعة والط	• لكى تكون ناجحاً فى حياتك، ين
B) Translate into Arabic: Loyalty and belonging are the two most important qualities that all of us should have it dream of a developed country.		of us should have if we	
#0 10 Ht 100000 21 NUMBER 11 N NOROCO NO 11 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	******* * *****************************	2998 1798 286 886 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

سلة/علاقة	 لوحة إعلائات	***************************************
کره	 محادثة	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
عداقة	شخصی	
مرتبة/تقذير	 مفضل	
شغي	 تنمر/بلطجة	···· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
مضيفة	 يتصرف	**************************************
حقيبة الظهر	 اِثَارة	
التمريض	 كراهية	Manager 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
سلبى	 يستمر	
إضافى	 وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	
يواجه	 تدريب	
حفظ الأمن والنظام	 يسترځى	·

Expressions, Phrases @ Prepositions

يكون صداقات		وقت الراحة	
يشعر بتحسن		عضو في فريق	
مرتبط ب		يمارس رياضة جماعية	ACCRECATE TO A 1880 ACCRECATE TO A 1880 ACCRECATE TO A 1880 ACCRECATE A 18
بمفردي	*	بدلًا من	of Mark and the Second Column
على قدر اهتمامي		يشير إلى	
يتبادل الأدوار		غاضب من	

	nswer from a, b, c or o		
	, I usually go out in the		' All Sebted
a)happy	b)stressed	c)pleased	d)delighted
Many people branch.	the company's cust	tomer service to ask about	the date of opening the nev
a)communicate	b)connect	c)link	d)contact
O As he is sociable, he p	refers doing	. sports.	
a)team	b)individual	c)solo	d)lonely
My son is still a/an	He is only 13	years old.	
a) adult	b)grown up	c)teenager	d)youth
1'm sure education an	d health development w	ill help the country to be ad	lvanced, I take it for
a) granted	b)greeted	c)geared	d)regarded.
O I hope I will have	computer conn	ected to the internet.	
a) the	b)a	c)an	d)no article
When I went to schoo	, there were only	students in the class.	
a) a few	b)a little	c)many	d)much
	s most imp	ortant language is.	
a)an	b)the	c)a	d)no article
	in the house of	garden two days ago.	
a) was lost	b)were lost	c)is lost	d)have lost
		iday to watch the new film	there.
we usually go to a) a	b)an	c)the	d)no article
a) a	J/dii		
is one of the	a) important become the harbour is other countries.	ousiness centres in the w	s Washington. But New Yor rorld. The Statue of Libert of freedom and welcome huge buildings ar
	lish:		
A) Translate into Eng مـُا ما يقدم لك النصيحة.	والمشكلات الخطيرة والذى دائا	عتمد عليه عندما تواجه التحديات	صديق الحقيقي هو الشخص الذي ن



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

متصل
يخلق/ينتج
الماتف الذكي
يخترق
خيال
نظام
بشكل غير قانوني
رئيسى
التنمر الإلكتروني
تفاصيل
تصرف/سلوك
غظيع
وثيقة
التصيد/الاحتيال
عالمي

عمل تجاري	000000 mill 00000 s 200 200 mill mill 2000 200 s 200 200 s 200 200 s 200 200
خقة	
مرڻ	000000111001001011+++00000111+++000001++10000
<u>ئىير</u>	
منظمة	***************************************
يراسة/استطلاع	
āaaa	
إضاءة	,
احتيال .	10000000000000000000000000000000000000
غلضب جدًا	79 x x x +dmgr 2++++ +0000000 4 d + 200000 2+ 2+20000000 ++++++++++++++
صلحب العمل	101.01 = 200.00 + 0 000.00 + 0 + 700.00 + 1 + 500.00 + 1
غير مرغوب فيه	onesculptur and exceptions of exceptions
مخيف	
قدرات	
القرصنة	

Expressions, Phrases (2) Prepositions

بقدر ما أستطيع	
يخسر مالا	
قلق بشان	
يملأ استمارة	
يحتفظ بملحوظة	
يملأ استمارة	

يتخذ قرارًا يجمع معلومات تعليق على مكان أمن لـ يسرق من يختلط اجتماعينًا مع

a) convention	hquake, there is nob) communication	c) contract	d) conduction
	argest computeri		
a) framework	b) network	c) workstation	d) teamwork
I always advise my o	children not to watch		em fearful.
a) comic	b) funny	c) exciting	d) scary
My friend's smartph	none was lost and he looks	*****************	
a) pleased	b) frightened	c) terrific	d) furious
It was difficult to	my friend after this	long period of absence.	
a) recognise	b) clarify	c) know	d) rationalise
3 They	They have already decided that	at.	
a) will leave	b) are leaving	c) are going to leave	d) would leave
The sky is very gloo	omy, I think it		
a) will rain	b) is raining	c) would rain	d) is going to rain
• All students in this	class their exams	. That is my expectation.	
a) will pass	b) are passing	c) are going to pass	d) pass
The farmer is carry	ing some grass. He	the sheep.	
a) will feed	b) is feeding	c) might have fed	d) is going to feed
The bus, which my	friend is in, at Cai	iro at 7 p.m.	. t to and
a) arrives	b) arrived	c) will arrive	d) has arrived
Fill in the space:			
	o in a situation like this? Yo	u are eating dinner with s	ome friends at
What do you do	o in a situation like this? Yourant. You are(b)	a great and quiet time	When a prione imgs
What do you do	nurant. You are(b)	his phone and starts	speaking loudly abou
What do you do (a)nice resta the table next to yo	ou. A man takes(c)(c)	a great and quiet time his phone and starts (d)about twen	speaking loudly abou
the table next to yo	ou. A man takes(c)(c)	a great and quiet time his phone and starts (d)about twen	speaking loudly abou
What do you do (a)nice resta the table next to you what he is having to situation happens a	nurant. You are(b)(c).		speaking loudly about ty minutes! I think th
What do you do (a)nice resta the table next to yo what he is having to situation happens a	nurant. You are(b)(c).		speaking loudly about ty minutes! I think th
What do you do (a)	nurant. You are(b)(c)(speaking loudly about ty minutes! I think th
What do you do (a)nice resta the table next to you what he is having to situation happens a	nurant. You are(b)(c).		speaking loudly about ty minutes! I think th
What do you do (a)nice resta the table next to you what he is having to situation happens a	nurant. You are(b)(c).		speaking loudly about ty minutes! I think th
What do you do (a)nice resta the table next to yo what he is having a situation happens a A) Translate into E	nurant. You are(b) ou. A man takes(c) with his friend. He talks all the time on buses, in rest nglish: ن الفقر هو سبب من أسباب الفشل والبؤس	a great and quiet time his phone and starts his phone and starts about twen aurants and everywhere. والاحتاة هو الحصول على المال فقط وأز	speaking loudly abo ty minutes! I think th يتقد بعض الناس أن النجاح في
What do you do (a)	nurant. You are(b) ou. A man takes(c) with his friend. He talks all the time on buses, in rest nglish: ن الفقر هو سبب من أسباب الفشل والبؤس	a great and quiet time his phone and starts his phone and starts about twen aurants and everywhere. والاحتاة هو الحصول على المال فقط وأز	speaking loudly abo ty minutes! I think th يتقد بعض الناس أن النجاح في



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

Art n= BB+, we restable + naz dono + b + r+ddadrz -, m Shou + r c + r seno +no equov	الأدب	40************************************	عادل
	يحسن	2+++197000000100000+190000100+10000010+10000111+11111100+19	مختطف
*	<u>ق</u> ش ،	41	حصی _
	روائی		محام
0.0000.000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000	يفترض	4154-7-44-7-45-7-45-7-45-7-45-7-45-7-45-	محبوب
M-0000 000 11 p. 000 0.00 11 b., 600 600 1 a. 2 p.00 - nhusbour and a 60 a 4 600 4 pp a	قافية الشعر		كنز
t man a ni the state of the sta	قضية	***************************************	مناقشة
One-out-fine-time gas votes a + 1 + 1 + 1 time-ray + 6 + 6 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	السيرة الذاتية		الوزن الشعرى
\$\$\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	راشد/بالغ	C14444	بیت فی قصیدة
	ضوء الشمعة		تكرار
Quid 100.0 × 5000000 × 4 40000000 × 1 × 400000 × 1 × 4000000 × 1 × 700.0 00 × 1 × 6 0 00 × 1 + 5	يروى		مختصر
######################################	قطعة أرض زراعية	•	وصتدو
\$1.000.000000.11.0000000000000000000000	يقفز على قدم واحدة		<u> دافئ</u>
	أدوات بسيطة		ملخص
	صف من العنب		جزيرة

على وجه الخصوص		يقوم بعمل معروف	
مختلف عن		يتبع القواعد	
يلــزم الطريق المفــروش بالحصى لكى لا تطأ قدماه النباتات	*****	يقارن بـ	
نهازا		يبتعد عن	
يبقى في		يبحث عن	
يمر أمام	***************************************	ىىقى ش	

il translate like k	noke do not start," is a	very valuable piece of ac	lvice that we often recei
3) Translate into A	rabic:		
	ت و تعدر م العنبادل.		
l) Translate into Er	nglish: صدق والاحترام المتريي	فرد وهي قائمة على قواعد الثقة وال	لعب الصداقة دورًا هامًّا في حياة ال
eturns to(d)			
o live near the sea.	. They can swim in it fo	or hours. When summer h	nolidays are over, everyor
	the state of the s	to niav	Jeducines and
	(3)	of the year for most stude games. If they live in a	Did tollin, tile)
ill in the space:	al I at most	of the year for most stude	ents. The weather is usual
We don't allow anyoneto make	b) making	c) to making	d) make
a) building	b) to building	c) to build	d) to have built
a) coming They decided to bu	ild a new factory, but we	all object this fa	ectory.
	ut I couldn't persuade him	c) to come	d) come
a) knocking	b) to knock	c) knock	d) to knocking
	on the door like tha	3 3	
1 can't remembera) to giving	b) give	y when we met the other da c) giving	d) to give
a) enhance	b) spend	c) desire	d) decline
The antonym of the	word "improve" is	***********	
a) literary	b) literature	c) literal	d) liberal
a) novels	b) stories enchand usu	c) poems	DOORS
		s children. He likes poetry as	a whole. d) books
a) made	b) played	c) had	d) done
Thank you for the g	reat favour that you have	You are thoug	htful.
a) hope	b) hop	c) hip	d) drill

1st SEC.

Answers to Main Book Exercises



Getting away

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- b) protect
- b) endangered
- c) provide
- b) wildlife
- d) limited
- 6. a) sustainable
- 7. c) fussy
- d) isolated 8.
- b) unique
- 10. d) attractions

- 11. d) destination
- 12. a) leaning
- 13. a) flight
- 14. b) conservationists
- 15. c) volunteered
- **16. b)** Ecosystem
- 17. a) impact
- 18. a) swelled
- 19. b) trekking
- 20. d) Ecotourism

- **21.** c) get to
- 22. b) environmentally friendly
- 23. c) off
- **24. b)** takes
- 25. d) make
- 26. a) sound
- 27. a) endangered/d) in danger
- 28. b) how to draw/ e) to draw
- 29. c) exceptional/d) special
- 30. d) close/e) near

anguage Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) in
- c) received
- d) was being cooked
- d) rang 4.
- 5. a) were watching
- d) was being repaired
- **7. b)** were
- b) didn't use to
- a) carry
- **10. b)** use

- **11. d)** While
- 12. c) was studying
- 13. c) no longer
- 14. d) was having
- 15. b) were you driving
- 16. b) Did you have
- 17. c) used to sleep
- 18. a) used to be a heavy smoker28. b) doesn't like it now
- 19. c) to getting
- **20. c)** had

- 21. d) was planning
- 22. b) was being chased
- 23. b) was watching
- 24. b) didn't use to
- 25. a) he sleeps early now
- **26.** d) he was a player in the match
- 27. b) during my lunch
- - 29. d) We didn't go out last night.
 - **30.** c) Did you liked my present?

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

- 1. c) population
- 2. b) victims
- 3. a) rebuilt
- **4. c)** along
- 5. c) internal
- 6. d) included

- 7. b) biology
- **8. c)** catch
- b) dropped
- 10. c) was being prepared
- 11. a) was thinking
- **12. b)** learnt

- **13. c)** when
- 14. b) was helping
- 15. a) am used to finishing
- **16. d)** used to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) have beneficial effect
- 2. b) brings about primitive and isolated communities
- 3. c) to exceed speed limits
- 4. b) people very much like to have cars
- 5. c) the number of people who are killed or injured
- 6. a) provide job opportunities
- 7. d) a & c
- 8. b) Solving the problems of cars and roads

A) Translate into Arabic:

- ١. ينبغي أن يكون لجميع الآياء دور فعال في دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم على المشاركة في تقدم بلادهم.
 - ٢. مما لا شك فيه أن إصلاح التعليم ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا عليه المليارات من الأموال.
- ٣. يجب أن نعتبر المال وسيلة وليس غاية لذلك لا ينبغي علينا أن نجمع المال فقط ولكن ينبغي علينا استثماره في مشروعات مفيدة.
 - ٤. بقدم الآباء نموذجًا للأطفال لكيفية حل الخلافات في العلاقات الوثيقة.
- قد يعتقد بعض البالغين والمدرسين أن الشباب يرغبون في قضاء كل وقتهم في استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، ولكن دراسة حديثة تظهر أن هذا قد لا يكون صحيحًا.

B) Translate into English:

- 1. All that we dream about and hope to get is a real opportunity for education, work and health care to live a happy life.
- 2. We all consider the Internet a miracle in this era, as it has become an indispensable necessity in all areas of life whether personal or public.
- 3. Education is really the basis of progress and development for the peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing ones, because it helps us to prepare generations of citizens who are able to make changes.
- 4. The future of any nation that wants to progress, advance and keep pace with developed countries will not be achieved without their children and youth, as children are the hope and youth are the backbone of any country.
- 5. There is no doubt that we all as Egyptians reject all forms of terrorism, violence and the killing of innocents, as well as the destruction of the infrastructure of the state, so we all stand with the government in its war against terrorists.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lassons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) crowded
- 2. d) expect
- 3. d) gardener
- 4. d) boring
- **5. c)** actually
- 6. d) amazing
- 7. a) balcony
- 8. d) ancient
- **9. b)** stole
- 10. a) robbed

- 11. a) noisy
- 12. c) stressed
- 13. b) brilliant
- 14. a) weather
- 15. b) climate
- 16. d) support
- **17. c)** scanned
- **18. d**) both b and c
- **19. b)** awful
- **20. c)** grow

- **21.** b) tiny
- 22. c) peaceful
- 23. a) with
- 24. d) taking
- **25. d)** along
- **26.** b) of
- 27. b) on board/e) aboard
- 28. b) ugly/d) awful
- 29. c) kids/d) children
- 30. b) dull/d) boring

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) was walking
- 2. c) was sleeping
- 3. d) On
- 4. c) being examined
- 5. c) was concentrating
- **6. d)** was
- 7. a) During
- 8. a) didn't hear
- **9. c)** my stay
- 10. c) meeting

- 11. d) b & c
- 12. d) was working
- **13. d)** when
- **14. b)** worked
- 15. c) was revising
- **16. b)** doesn't
- **17. b)** At
- **18. b)** were
- 19. a) found
- **20.** a) sleep

- 21. b) had studied
- 22. d) seemed
- 23. c) worked
- 24. b) was a past habit
- 25. a) My family
- 26. a) I no longer work for it
- 27. C) Mona and her friends were drinking juice while watching TV.
- **28.** b) It was me.
- **29.** () not fat
- **30.** b) didn't get

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

- 1. c) strange
- 2. b) resorts
- 3. a) peaceful
- 4. c) over
- 5. a) distant
- 6. d) quiet

- 7. a) underwater
- 8. d) make
- 9. c) was taking
- **10. d)** stole
- 11. a) was studying
- 12. c) didn't belong

- 13. d) was being fixed
- **14. b)** During
- **15. d**) doesn't
- **16. c)** had

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) six footballs and other things
- 2. d) an Englishman living in Brazil
- 3. b) Charles Miller was educated in England in the 19th century.
- 4. c) How football came to Brazil
- 5. a) To concoct their own balls.
- 6. d) Both "b" & "c".
- 7. d) the people of Great Britain
- 8. c) the journalists

(3) A) Translate into Arabic:

- ١. الشباب هم العمود الفقري لأي أمة وقاعدة تقدمها، لذلك ينبغي على الحكومات مساعدتهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
 - ٢. يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل. بوضع هذا في الاعتبار، ينبغي أن تكون مليئة بالعمل الجاد.
 - ٣. تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للنساء وتوفر لهم التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.

B) Translate into English:

- 1. It is likely that space tourism will be realised in the near future, which will attract many people and bring fantastic earnings.
- 2. The housing problem has forced many young people to refuse marriage because of the difficulty in obtaining an apartment.
- **3.** The government should pay attention to productive projects in order to increase production and raise the standard of living for all citizens.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter I)

- 1. b) scar
- 2. c) grabbed
- 3. a) swords
- 4. c) inn
- **5. d**) pale
- 6. b) cliff
- **7. d**) dare
- 8. a) quard

- 9. c) blind
- **10. c)** owes
- 11. b) adventures
- 12. a) realised
- 13. d) admiral
- 14. c) fell over
- **15. c)** gun

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) believable/ e) ordinary
- 2. a) reached/d) arrived at
- 3. a) exotic
- 4. c) stuck
- 5. a) teenagers
- 6. c) robbed
- 7. a) weather
- 8. b) active

- 9. c) During
- 10. b) was going
- **11.** a) began
- 12. d) were you doing
- 13. b) was coming
- **14. b)** were
- 15. b) built
- **16.** d) lives in another city now

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. a) he was getting a tattoo
- 18. d) they think it is fashionable
- **19. c)** brave
- 20. a) the influence of friends
- 21. d) Why people get tattoos
- 22. a) wealth
- **23. b)** Jack
- 24. d) b & c

25. Translate into English:

- The acquisition of the English language can be through conversations, watching English films, listening to some English songs, as well as reading stories and books in English.
- 26. Translate into Arabic:

- من المتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا إلى المياه فى مصر فى المســتقبل القريب، لذلك يجب أن نرشــد اســتخدامنا للمياه وإلا ســنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.

UNIT 2



Supporting the community

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) generous
------	------------

2. d) charities

3. d) pressure

4. d) support

5. a) transplants

6. a) desire

7. d) recognised

8. c) prestige

9. a) documentary

10. c) task

11. d) foundations

12. c) pressure

13. c) short-term

14. d) roaring

15. c) why

16. a) for

17. b) gets

18. a) donate

19. b) donation

20. a) persuade

21. c) persuasive

22. c) beneficial

23. d) part

24. a) to

25. a) generous

26. a) study/ c) to study

27. d) reach/e) achieve

28. a) esteem/b) influence

29. a) occurred/b) took place

30. c) sorrow/ e) sadness

anguage Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) closes
- 2. d) writes
- 3. c) visited
- 4. c) snows
- 5. a) didn't rain
- **6. c)** comes
- 7. a) don't read
- 8. d) saw
- 9. c) never
- 10. b) don't open

- **11. d)** spent
- **12.** b) usually goes
- 13. c) |s
- **14. d**) is used to
- **15.** a) took
- 16. b) was punished
- **17. d**) never
- **18.** b) is
- **19. b)** is always
- **20. c)** had

- 21. a) leaves
- 22. d) was done
- 23. d) remember
- 24. d) understand
- 25. a) Do
- **26.** c) timetable
- 27. d) this is his permanent place of living
- 28. d) the final match time is set to start at 10 o'clock by a timetable
- 29. a) everyone in our family loves Liverpool
- 30. b) used to work hard

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

- 1. d) research
- **2. b)** view
- 3. b) founded
- 4. a) relationship
- 5. c) benefit
- **6. d**) best

- 7. b) realised
- 8. c) amongst
- **9.** a) wash
- 10. a) is always
- **11. b)** need
- **12. c)** runs

- **13. b)** always
- 14. d) are encouraged
- 15. a) watches
- 16. a) don't belong

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) no one can have his own way all the time
- 2. a) men usually want to have their own way
- 3. d) right and thoughtful
- 4. c) behave in a responsible way
- 5. c) community
- 6. c) bad behaviors
- 7. b) special rights
- 8. d) all mentioned

A) Translate into Arabic:

- ١. يبذل آباؤنا جهودًا عظيمة لإسعادنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقا مدينون لهم بالكثير.
- ٢. على الصعيد الدولي، مثَّل صلاح مصر على مستوى الشباب، وفاز بالميدالية البرونزية في بطولة كأس الأمم الإفريقية تحت ٢٠ سنة.
 - ٣. الكوارث الطبيعية مثل الزلازل والأعاصير والبراكين يمكن أن تسبب دمارا هائلا.

B) Translate into English:

- 1. To be able to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way and that is to be given the real opportunity to get a good education to be able to get a good job in the future.
- **2.** Egypt is waiting for the efforts of its sons, scientists and people of thought and creativity and looks forward to its loyal sons to take effective steps to advance the nation.
- **3.** The blood donor must be in a decent health condition to accept his donation without affecting his health. It must remain for 5 minutes under medical observation.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1.	c) attacked	11. d) cattle	21. d) on
2.	d) change	12. b) amazing	22. b) in
3.	a) guardian	13. c) protection	23. a) on
4.	a) together	14. b) killings	24. d) doing
5.	b) headquarters	15. a) monitor	25. d) all mentioned
6.	d) movement	16. d) to	26. a) amazing
7.	a) nearby	17. b) employees	27. b) hire/e) appoint
8.	a) appearance	18. a) employer	28. b) defence/ c) resistance
9.	b) located	19. a) went	29. a) in/ e) for
10.	a) paw prints	20. b) got	30. c) went missing/ d) got lost

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	b) is included	11. d) were painted	21. a) meet
2.	b) isn't used	12. d) wasn't allowed	22. b) takes
3.	c) are protected	13. b) are given	23. d) sign
4.	b) is brought	14. c) aren't discussed	24. c) grow
5.	b) are asked	15. b) is he	25. b) are grown
6.	c) was paved	16. a) are usually watered	26. a) is always pu

s punished 7. c) is prepared 17. a) are watched **27.** () fact

8. b) is affected 18. d) are born 28. a) never comes 9. a) Was **19. d)** are taught 29. c) all the students were told

about the surprise **10. d**) is serviced 20. a) are made **30.** d) her husband didn't give her

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & ii)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	c) tribe	7.	d) as	13. d) are needed
2.	b) biologist	8.	c) Hunting	14. b) feel
3.	c) guardian	9.	c) was arrested	15. a) got hurt
4.	d) sense	10.	b) had	16. d) an oculist examined my eyes
5.	b) empathy	11.	a) use	
6.	c) print	12.	a) is shown	

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	b) getting on and off the bus is difficult	5.	b) cars have to be left in the streets
2.	a) taxi drivers	6.	d) Transportation
3.	c) indispensable	7.	a) greedy
4.	a) complex	8.	d) streets are very crowded

A) Translate into Arabic:

١. يحظى العديد من مشاهير المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية. ٢. يمكن أن يساعد التبرع بالدم العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم في أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات حرجة. ٣. البشر هم أكبر تهديد لبقاء الفصائل المهددة بالانقراض من خلال تدمير أماكن معيشتهم وآثار تغير المناخ.

B) Translate into English:

1. Mohamed Salah, the world-famous Egyptian footballer, is an example of a talented player who has good morals.

any money

- 2. Education is the basis of progress and development for the peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing; Because it helps us prepare generations of citizens who are able to make change.
- **3.** Despite the great scientific progress, many types of animals are still in danger of extinction; This is because people hunted and killed them for various reasons.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) head

6. d) stolen

11. b) includes

2. b) escape

- **7.** a) servants
- 12. c) describe

3. a) clue

8. b) inside

13. a) hidden

- 4. c) magistrate
- 9. c) prepare
- **14. d)** into

5. d) crew

- 10. d) directions
- **15. c)** dead

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) continuing/c) lasting
- 7. c) decorated
- 2. c) from/e) against
- 8. b) injured

3. d) monitor

- 9. b) travelling
- d) responsibility
- 10. a) had

5. b) donors

11. a) scored

6. b) transfusion

12. d) visits

- 13. a) is always14. c) wasn't allowed
- **15.** a) used to stay up late
- **16. c)** is burnt

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. b) predator
- 18. b) in danger
- **19. a)** smart
- 20. d) can change their skin colour
- 21. c) renew its arms
- 22. b) helps it hide from the attackers
- 23. b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
- 24. a) The Magician Octopuses

25. Translate into English:

- We all dream of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be famous; because fame is a result of hard work, patience and also suffering.
- 26. Translate into Arabic:

- في الوقت الحاضر، تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم الجيد والوظائف والرعاية الصحية.

UNIT 3

Improving lives

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. **b)** debt
- 2. d) miserable
- 3. a) prison
- 4. d) empty
- 5. a) broke
- **6. b)** owe
- **7. d)** criminal
- 8. d) opportunity
- 9. c) tickets
- 10. a) earn

- **11. c)** gained
- **12. b)** award
- 13. a) discovered
- 14. c) twins
- **15.** b) deserves
- **16. d)** miss
- 17. c) rewarding
- 18. b) similar
- 19. c) machines

11. d) have found

13. d) have won

14. b) has gone

16. b) Since

15. a) haven't seen

12. c) have just had

20. b) instruments

- d) childhood
- **22.** c) miser
- **23. d)** rat race
- **24. d)** of
- **25.** b) merchandise
- **26.** a) after
- **27.** a) earn/ c) make
- 28. b) lend/ e) return
- 29. b) The disabled c) Disabled people
- 30. c) weary/ e) exhausted

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) for
- 2. a) since
- 3. **b)** for
- 4. a) since
- 5. c) ever
- 6. b) haven't finished
- **7. b)** have developed
- 8. b) already
- 9. c) have been lost
- 10. a) have been to
- 17. d) started
 - 18. d) have ever read
- 19. c) three times this week
 - **20. d**) saw

- **21.** b) for
- 22. d) has been
- 23. d) has already been repaired
- **24.** b) haven't eaten
- 25. c) has painted
- **26.** d) she spent all the summer in Marina
- 27. b) is back now
- a) Ashraf finished his work quicker than I expected
- 29. c) I expect that I will marry in the future
- 30. c) the holiday is over

Test yourself EXercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

- 1. d) theatre
- 2. b) temples
- **3.** a) owe
- 4. a) skills
- 5. d) room
- a) support

- 7. c) career
- 8. a) misery
- 9. a) has been
- 10. a) for
- 11. d) has been hacked
- 12. a) travelled

- **13. b)** was sent
- 14. b) already
- **15. d)** since
- **16. d**) Has the email already been printed?

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 2. c) come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere

1. c) allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering

- 3. b) chest ailments and other diseases
- 4. b) Toxic air-pollution
- 5. b) One third
- 6. b) it prevents the harmful rays from reaching the earth
- 7. b) factories discharge dangerous substances
- 8. b) the pollution will disappear

(3) A) Translate into Arabic:

- ١. ينبغي علينا بذل جهود كبيرة لتطوير الرياضة بكل الوسائل وهذه مسئولية الحكومة والأفراد أيضًا.
- ٣. الإرهاب واحد من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيدًا، وله الكثير من الآثار السلبية على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
- ٣. يعتقد أن المال هو أصل كل شر. ويعتبر السبب الرئيسي للانحراف والإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم وحتى الحروب بين الدول.

B) Translate into English:

- Parents, teachers, as well as the media play an important role in shaping children's personality and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
- 2. Undoubtedly, we live in the age of science and technology. The computer and the Internet are among the inventions that made everything easy to happen.
- **3.** The establishment of many school and public libraries (has) contributed to improving the educational process in general and helped many children and young people to read freely.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1.	b) main	11. a) stepmother	21. c) disability
2.	c) touch	12. d) Why don't you	22. a) associated
3.	d) break	13. c) association	23. d) play/on
4.	a) adults	14. d) solutions	24. a) for
5.	d) later	15. c) paint	25. c) made
6.	a) latter	16. a) dreamer	26. b) free/d) willing
7.	b) voluntary	17. d) community	27. b) major/ e) main
8.	c) characters	18. c) experiment	28. c) married/ d) is married to
9.	d) described	19. c) teaching	29. d) discovered/ e) found out
10.	a) trust	20. d) down	30. b) unfamiliar/ e) unusual

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) in 11. c) have ever visited 21. b) has your father been 2. a) since 22. b) cooked 12. c) already
- 3. c) since 13. a) has been studying **23. b)** has gone
- **4. b)** when 14. b) has written **24. b)** Since **5. d)** never 15. c) has rained 25. b) for how long
- 6. c) has been playing **16.** a) never 26. a) have been to
- 27. d) she cooked the food for them 7. b) has been 17. d) has just died a moment ago.
- b) I haven't played football since 8. c) since 18. c) has been warned Monday.
- **29.** d) It is the first time to see a student who is clever like Marwan. 9. b) just now **19. d)** since
- 10. a) travelled **30.** c) he still works as a waiter. **20. b)** has been

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 7. d) the disabled **13. d)** when 1. a) main 14. a) for 2. c) association 8. b) of
- 9. a) has fallen **15.** a) is still **3. d)** opportunity
- 4. c) plan 10. c) were taken 16. a) has worked 5. b) surprise 11. d) has been made

12. b) have arrested

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) can treat a lot of diseases 5. a) demerit 2. a) natural remedies 6. a) The Herbal Medicine Benefits
- 7.
- 3. a) herbalist c) They can be fried on fire to be served.
- 4. c) it cures and protects from side effects d) willow tree 8.

A) Translate into Arabic:

6. a) culture

- ١. هناك الكثير من الأشخاص البؤساء لأنهم لا يملكون ما يكفى من المال للعيش به أو ليس لديهم مكان للعيش فيه.
 - ٢. تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لننعش أنفسنا، ولتخفيف الآثار السبئة لضغوط العمل.
 - ٣. بدون الثقة أو الإيمان يقوتك، لا يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو السعادة.

B) Translate into English:

1. It is said that human beings are always in danger as a result of their greed and stupidity. This interference may cause the emergence of new types of diseases that have no cure.

- 2. The Egyptian government, represented by the Ministry of Health, must pay attention to developing medical institutions in order to be able to face any danger in the future.
- 3. We now live in a society in which men and women work side by side with equal rights.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	c) harbour	6.	d) destination	11.	a) pirates
2.	b) gang	7.	b) mutiny	12.	b) blind
_	D	_	IN I I		IN I

d) parrots
 d) barrel
 d) bank
 b) of
 a) crutches
 c) crew

5. a) empty **10.** c) secret **15.** d) explain

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	a) become/ d) get	7.	d) community	13	b) had been cleaning
----	-------------------	----	--------------	----	------------------------------

2. a) soft/b) delicate 8. a) cultures 14. d) saw

3. c) lucky **9. d**) lately **15. d**) since

4. b) nowhere
5. a) opportunity
10. c) have learnt
16. a) haven't done
11. b) haven't met

6. d) pay **12. c**) for

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. b) liked his appearance
- 18. c) modern
- **19. b)** vast
- **20. b)** The writer is not going to work.
- **21. c)** careless
- **22. c)** 75 pounds.
- 23. c) his photos
- **24. c)** His mother paid for him when he reached home.

25. Translate into English:

- Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- إن ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمر مهم للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة فيها.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 1, 2 & 3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) depressed/b) sad
- 2. a) disorder/e) disarrange
- 3. c) role model
- 4. b) injured
- 5. a) spicy
- 6. a) donated
- 7. b) swells
- 8. c) impact

- 9. b) is speaking
- 10. c) was sleeping
- 11. a) have had
- **12. d)** asked
- **13. d**) since
- **14.** b) was concentrating
- 15. d) is accused
- **16.** b) have arrived

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. c) should avoid overeating
- **18.** d) doctors recommend it
- 19. d) it has a bad effect on health
- **20.** d) health is a precious thing
- 21. b) overweight
- **22.** b) too much
- 23. c) this indicates bad health
- **24.** c) being fat is very harmful for your health

25. Translate into English:

- Every student should work hard and not waste his time in order to achieve everything he dreams about in the future.
- 26. Translate into Arabic:

- ينبغى على رجال الأعمال المصريين استثمار أموالهم في الوطن بمشروعات تخدم المجتمع وتوفر فرص عمل للشباب.

UNIT 4



Making new friends

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) stressful
- 2. c) useful
- 3. b) stressed
- 4. b) granted
- 5. b) allowed to
- 6. d) friendships
- **7. c)** join
- 8. d) what to do
- 9. a) contact
- **10. c)** cool

- 11. b) favourite
- 12. d) conversation
- **13. c)** follow
- **14.** a) grade
- 15. d) teenagers
- 16. a) teenage
- **17.** a) extra
- 18. d) practice
- 19. c) individual
- **20.** c) Put on

- **21.** b) do
- 22. d) on their own
- 23. a) studying
- 24. b) enjoyed themselves
- 25. a) practise
- **26. d)** make
- 27. a) passed/d) succeeded in
- 28. c) on his own/e) alone
- 29. a) confront/b) encounter
- 30. c) neglected/e) ignored

Language Exercises (Lassons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. **b**) an
- 2. d) no article
- **3. c)** the
- **4. b)** an
- **5. c)** the
- **6. c)** the
- 7. a) a
- **8. b**) an
- 9. d) no article
- 10. d) Physics

- **11. c)** the
- **12. c)** the
- **13. c)** the
- 14. d) no article
- **15. c)** the
- 16. d) no article
- 17. b) The plane has
- **18.** a) an
- 19. d) no article
- **20. c)** the

- 21. a) A
- **22.** a) a
- 23. b) an
- 24. d) Computers
- 25. d) no article/no article
- 26. a) The/no article
- 27. d) no article/an
- 28. b) the Italian language
- 29. c) the giraffe has a long neck
- 30. d) we should do our best to help the deaf

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

- 1. b) the life
- 2. a) favourite
- 3. d) friendships
- **4. c)** a paper
- ii c) a papci
- **5. d)** contact
- 6. d) connect

- 7. d) noticeboard
- 8. c) joined
- **9. c)** the
- 10. d) no article
- 11. a) a
- **12. c)** the

- 13. d) no article
- 14. d) no article
- **15.** a) a
- 16. b) a/no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) A challenging climb.
- 2. b) collect
- 3. a) Since there was lack of oxygen.
- 4. d) a, b & c.
- 5. d) exhausted
- 6. b) negative
- 7. d) all of these
- 8. a) determination is the key to success

🛂 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. يستخدم العديد من الشباب الإنترنت لتكوين صداقات جديدة وقضاء ساعات في الدردشة معهم.

٢. تساهم المكتبات المدرسية بشكل كبير في تنمية عقول أطفالنا ووعيهم.

٣. لا شك أن الأصدقاء إما طيبون أو سيئون، بعضهم يستحق الاحترام بينما البعض الآخر بغيض.

B) Translate into English:

- 1. Individuals should cooperate with the Ministry of Environment to get rid of the huge amounts of rubbish and wastes in our streets.
- 2. Electricity has become an essential part of our lives, as humans cannot live without it, as it is heat and energy.
- 3. It is clear that crimes have increased at a large rate nowadays. Hardly a day passes without hearing about a crime on TV or the Internet.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 &

1.	a) bullied	11. c) moves	21. b) concerned
2.	c) cheat	12. a) to have	22. b) on
3.	b) nursing	13. c) terrible	23. d) along
4.	d) hates	14. a) phone-in	24. a) at
5.	b) behaved	15. b) too	25. c) Cheating
6.	a) copy	16. c) take	26. a) awful/d) nasty
7.	c) debate	17. a) experiences	27. c) disgusting/ e) offensive
8.	b) debates	18. a) list	28. a) resumed/d) proceeded
9.	d) effect	19. d) about	29. b) impact/d) influence
10.	a) affected	20. a) laughter	30. a) watching/ e) to watch

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- a) wasn't 1.
- **11.** a) many
- 2. d) little
- **12. d)** some

3. c) are

- **13.** a) was
- 4. a) some
- 14. c) much
- a) want 5.
- 15. d) some
- 6. d) much

7.

- **16. c)** keeps **17. c)** was
- b) Much a) was stolen 8.
- **18. b**) have
- b) is made 9.
- **19. b)** a
- 10. d) isn't
- 20. c) is

- **21. c)** any
- 22. c) quantity
- **23. b)** How much
- 24. a) is
- **25.** () a hair
- **26.** () a means
- 27. d) the papers
- 28. c) I don't have any information about the accident
- 29. b) He told me an important information about the crime.
- 30. a) My trousers are very expensive and of a good material.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) three-year-business plan
- 2. d) rucksack
- **3. c)** nasty
- 4. c) discussion
- 5. d) debate
- 6. a) scared

- **7. b)** line
- 8. c) nursing
- **9. d)** tube
- **10. c)** much
- **11. b)** many
- **12.** a) much

- 13. a) Do
- 14. a) is
- 15. d) some bread
- 16. a) isn't

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) people, their community and their society
- 2. d) improve people's income and bring peace
- 3. a) enable their abilities and characters to live properly
- 4. c) must be agreed on
- 5. d) strengthen their flexibility in life
- 6. a) get paid competitive salaries
- 7. d) enough classrooms and separate toilets
- 8. a) How Can Education Be Good?

(3) A) Translate into Arabic:

- ١. يجب علينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.
- ٢. تسعى المؤسسة التربوبة إلى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطي وتدريب الأجيال الشابة على المشاركة الإيجابية.
- ٣. ينبغي على الحكومة والأفراد العمل سويًا لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعاقين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

B) Translate into English:

- **1.** Parents shape their children's personality from the very beginning of their childhood. They teach them values and customs and also share interests and games with them.
- **2.** Globalisation has a serious impact on developing countries. These countries must begin in earnest to benefit from the fruits of technology.
- **3.** Poverty and unemployment are a time bomb. If we do not make extraordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer greatly, and the government cannot do this alone.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 4)

- 1. b) trust
- 2. a) whistled
- 3. c) branch
- 4. a) relax
- 5. d) shore
- 6. b) diseases
- 7. c) surprised
- 8. a) on

- 9. d) expression
- **10. c)** along
- 11. b) pretty
- 12. b) surprised
- **13. b)** hills
- 14. d) correct
- 15. a) qun

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) putting on/d) wearing
- 2. a) finish/c) end
- 3. a) police
- 4. a) cheating
- 5. b) behaved
- 6. d) fight
- 7. c) negative
- 8. d) nursed

- **9. c)** the
- **10. c)** The
- 11. a) a
- **12. c)** some
- 13. d) no article
- **14. d)** a glass
- **15. c)** The more
- **16. d**) a

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. a) clearing
- 18. b) global warming
- 19. c) reducing
- **20. c)** leads to
- 21. a) environmental
- 22. a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
- 23. c) are already facing
- 24. b) Global Disasters

25. Translate into English:

- We must work a lot and talk less. Hard work is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must exploit all available economic resources without draining.
- 26. Translate into Arabic:

- وجب على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولي يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

UNIT 6



Communication

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

 c) recent 	ι
-------------------------------	---

2. b) major

3. d) network

4. c) latest

5. a) power stations

6. c) devices

7. b) particular

8. c) task

9. a) Applications

10. d) communication

11. c) hacked

12. c) atmosphere

13. a) smart

14. d) accident

15. c) businesses

16. d) both a & b

17. c) check

18. c) enough

19. d) flexible

20. d) apps

21. b) electric

22. b) with

23. d) development

24. c) by accident

25. d) were capable of

26. b) imaginative

27. a) applicable

28. a) to/c) for

29. b) contact/d) communicate with

30. b) cooling/e) freezing

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) will turn
- d) am going to watch
- 3. b) is going to crash
- **4. b)** will probably work
- **5. a)** will
- 6. a) will get
- 7. a) am going to
- d) will be
- 9. b) is going to fall
- **10.** b) am going to meet

- 11. b) will rain
 - 12. b) will be sent
 - **13. b)** will get
- **14.** b) is going to fall
- **15.** c) am going to have
- **16. a)** will cut
- **17. c)** will be
- 18. d) is going to buy
- **19.** a) will be
- 20. a) are going to score

- 21. d) would win
- 22. d) am going to watch
- 23. b) will pass
- 24. b) am going to be
- 25. a) would participate
- **26.** d) timetable
- 27. b) request
- 28. c) will
- **29.** c) Be careful or you are falling.
- **30.** d) Mona will probably attend the party tomorrow.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) communications 7. a) hack
- 2. d) connected
- 8. a) electric
- - **9.** () to take
- - **10.** b) will enjoy
- 5. b) create

3. a) Security

- **11. c)** will get
- d) technology

4. a) navigation

12. d) will be

- **13. d)** will
- **14.** b) are going to fall
- **15. d**) is going to wash
- **16. b)** will get

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) food
- 2. c) only healthy and cheap food
- **3. c)** tempt
- 4. b) vegetarians
- 5. b) hungry
- 6. c) important
- **7. c)** less
- 8. b) more expensive than

(3) A) Translate into Arabic:

- ١. يقوم العلماء باكتشافات وإنجازات تساعدنا على مسايرة التغيرات في عالمنا.
- ٢. في السلام، يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والمواصلات.
 - ٣. تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًّا في تقدم الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.

B) Translate into English:

- 1. Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become basically dependent on them.
- **2.** Television has become a means of spreading knowledge. Adults and children enjoy watching it alike.
- 3. Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in their rights and duties.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1.	b) lock	11. d) horrible	21. a) sociable
2.	a) link	12. c) data	22. d) accountant
3.	d) ugly	13. d) Phishing	23. d) a & c
4.	d) details	14. d) Click	24. c) trick
5.	b) changes	15. b) antivirus	25. b) for
6.	a) download	16. c) upgrade	26. a) on
7.	c) scam	17. a) skim	27. a) bullying/ e) anyone to bully
8.	a) recognise	18. a) Posting photos	28. b) complete/d) fill in
9.	c) Malware	19. a) make	29. b) serious/ e) unfunny
10.	c) Cyberbullying	20. c) society	30. a) careless/b) incautious

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	c) are camping	11. d) leaves	21. b) is travelling
----	----------------	-----------------------	-----------------------------

- 2. b) finishes 22. c) will win **12. b)** is flying
- 3. b) am meeting 13. c) am travelling 23. c) will go 4. a) leaves 14. d) will have 24. a) going to play 5. b) opens **15.** d) have arrived 25. d) will climb

20. c) are going to

- **6.** a) are having **16. d**) to achieve **26. d)** will stay 7. b) leaves **17.** a) won't tell 27. c) my sister is getting married next week
- 8. a) is helping 18. a) am meeting 28. b) she is going to sleep soon **9. b)** am meeting 19. c) will go 29. b) intention

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

30. c) prediction

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10. c) is giving

- 1. b) change **7. c)** allow 13. d) is going 2. a) support 8. d) download
- 14. b) am going to go 3. c) hacking 15. d) is about to 9. b) starts

12. a) are going

- 4. b) antivirus 16. c) or **10.** a) are you meeting
- 5. c) employees 11. a) will run

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. b) three b) Youth 5.
 - 2. d) old people c) enjoy good and bad things 6.
 - 3. a) desires d) not many 7.
- c) Periods of life 4. c) hardworking 8.

A) Translate into Arabic:

6. d) password

- ١. لقد أدى التطور الكبير في الصناعة إلى زيادة كمية ثاني أكسيد الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.
 - ٢. آثارنا التاريخية كنوز لا تقدر بثمن، وينبغى علينا أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.
- ٣. سيؤدي التعاون بين دول العالم إلى نشر السلام والأمن، وينبغي عليهم أن يساعدوا بعضهم بعضًا لتحسين الظروف المعيشية لشعوبهم.

B) Translate into English:

1. Country (Rural) life is considered more pure than city (urban) life because of its fantastic landscapes and clean air.

- **2.** Man ,by nature, is a lover of nature and beauty. He searches for beauty in everything, even among strange things.
- **3.** In any way, Man cannot dispense with water and air, and without them, all living creatures would perish.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	b) spade	6.	b) leader	11.	a) for
2.	a) crazy	7.	c) direction	12.	d) voice
3.	d) fight	8.	c) allow	13.	c) dead
4.	c) realise	9.	b) fresh	14.	b) flags
5.	a) kneeled	10.	d) dangerous	15.	c) sails

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	a) minor/d) secondary	9.	a) leaves
2.	c) every day/ e) daily	10.	a) are watching
3.	b) phishing	11.	c) are going to make
4.	a) scam	12.	a) will fall
5.	b) personal	13.	c) is going to perform
6.	c) flexible	14.	d) will be
7.	d) communications	15.	c) are meeting
8.	b) illegally	16.	b) is going to be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) Man's enemies	21.	c) the countryside
18. d) all the mentioned	22.	d) bad friends or companions
19. a) children	23.	c) hunger is the cause of misery and anger
20. b) reduce	24.	d) the circle of friends shows a man's character

25. Translate into English:

- Reading is considered one of the main and basic means for the renaissance of various peoples and civilisations. This is because it is closely related to the transmission of knowledge and sciences among different individuals.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- الفقر والبطالة قنابل موقوتة. لو لم نبذل جهودًا لاقتلاعهم، فإننا سنعاني كثيرا.

UNIT 6



Learning from literature

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) a & c
- **2.** a) poet
- 3. c) capture
- 4. d) autobiography
- 5. c) In
- 6. b) literature
- 7. c) fields
- **8. b)** case
- 9. d) island
- 10. a) popular

- 11. d) strange
- 12. c) Suppose
- **13. b)** gravel
- 14. a) rhyme
- **15. b**) rhythm
- 16. c) discuss
- 17. d) Pirates
- **18.** a) issue
- 19. d) treasure
- 20. a) adventure

- 21. b) favour
- 22. b) keep the gravel walk
- **23.** a) a while
- 24. c) variety
- 25. b) a success
- **26. d)** with
- 27. b) came out/c) was published
- 28. a) turned/b) made
- 29. a) remote/ e) distant
- **30.** a) familiar/b) conventional

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) to meet
- **2. c**) doing
- 3. a) to join
- 4. a) sharing
- 5. b) to treat
- **6. c)** to send
- o. C) to seria
- **7. c)** objected
- **8.** d) coming
- **9. b)** to buy

10. d) being

- **11. c)** going
- **12. b**) to fly
- **13. c)** to help
- **14. c)** to play
- 15. b) to apologise
- 16. b) sitting
- **17.** a) to get
- 18. a) cleaning
- **19. c)** doing
- 20. a) writing

- 21. c) denied
- 22. c) to studying
- 23. a) visiting
- 24. a) sailing
- **25. c)** to phone
- 26. a) phoning
- **27.** a) trying
- 28. b) to seeing
- **29. d)** He objected to visit that frightening place again.
- **30.** c) I recommend taking the train to Aswan.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

- 1. d) locked
- 2. b) came out
- 3. c) kidnapped
- S. C) Klariapped
- 4. d) all mentioned
- **5. b)** dig
- 6. a) Currant

- **7. d**) Hay
- 8. a) romantic
- 9. d) to joining
- 10. b) to building
- 11. d) to accept
- **12. b)** going

- **13. d**) enjoy
- **14. a)** being
- **15.** a) to go
- 16. c) reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) Its gravity.
- 2. c) We can't see it from earth.
- 3. a) The temperature.
- **4. c)** A diary extracts.
- 5. b) The moon's gravity is weaker than the earth's.
- **6.** a) Special clothes for astronauts.
- **7. c)** 107-153
- 8. d) revolve

(3) A) Translate into Arabic:

١. يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن في كل الأحوال يجب ملؤها بالإنجازات.

٢. زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هي السبيل الوحيد لزيادة دخلنا القومي الذي يساعد على رفع المستوى المعيشي.

٣. لكل طفل الحق في أن يعيش حياة سعيدة، وعلى الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما هو ممكن للتأكد من بقاء الأطفال على قيد الحياة وتطورهم.

B) Translate into English:

- 1. Sports clubs play an important role in society, and provide great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a useful way.
- **2.** The government does its best to solve most of the society's problems and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
- **3.** It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and writing English in order to get a chance for a good job, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1. d) fair	10. d) rhymes	19. c) for
2. b) verses	11. d) Rhythm	20. a) went
3. d) narrator	12. c) laid	21. a) differently
4. a) narrated	13. a) toys	22. c) specifically/ d) particularly
5. b) grown-ups	14. d) all mentioned	23. a) dull/b) boring
6. c) hop	15. c) broken	24. b) short/ c) compressed
7. a) situation	16. a) activities	25. d) describes/ e) details
8. c) summary	17. c) in brief	26. b) successful/ d) a success
9. d) candlelight	18. d) playing	27. c) aged/ d) at the age of

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	a) swimming	11. d) to sign	21. a) to get
2.	a) to leave	12. d) delivering	22. b) to get
3.	d) to understand	13. b) wasting	23. b) studying
4.	c) to buying	14. c) go	24. d) to tell
5.	d) to go	15. b) to eat	25. d) visiting
6.	b) to answer	16. a) staying	26. c) meeting
7.	a) to have	17. a) trying	27. a) stopped eating a lot
			d) I remember meeting Ahmed Mekky

8. c) making 18. d) not helping 9. a) breaking 29. c) first I remembered, then I did my homework 19. a) talking

10. a) parking **30.** b) my mobile isn't with me now **20. d)** going

Test yourself EXercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	d) hop	7.	b) especially	13.	d) writing
2.	a) activities	8.	d) brief	14.	c) not to waste
3.	c) candlelight	9.	a) meeting	15.	c) singing
4.	a) toy	10.	c) going	16.	b) fancy
5.	b) laid	11.	d) being taken		
6.	a) dress	12.	b) to fly		

Read the following passage, then answer the guestions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	d) Defeats.	5.	b) have achievements in the game
2.	d) One of the greatest football players.	6.	a) crazy about
3.	a) more popular than	7.	c) Asia
4.	a) his bad behavior	8.	b) Maradona

A) Translate into Arabic:

١. قناة السويس هي أكبر ممر مائي بين الشرق والغرب. لقد أصبحت مصدرًا هامًا للدخل القومي.

٢. تقدم لنا قراءة الأدب تجارب وثقافات الآخرين التي تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافاتنا.

٣. ينبغي علينا جميعا أن نعمل بجد في جميع المجالات حتى تصبح مصر من أكثر الدول نموًا وازدهارًا.

B) Translate into English:

1. The press plays a major role in developing public awareness towards economic and social issues. It presents problems and provides solutions.

- **2.** Egypt has many ancient archaeological sites and modern tourist resorts, and all of this makes it one of the most attractive countries for tourists.
- **3.** The crises that Egypt faces at times show us that the Egyptians are one family and have a spirit of cooperation and friendship among them.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

			and the second second		
1.	c) pirates	6.	b) including	11.	d) reached
2.	d) defend	7.	d) advantage	12.	c) weapons
3.	d) contact	8.	c) prevent	13.	a) fort
4.	a) fired	9.	b) cannon	14.	b) take down
5.	c) well defended	10.	a) attacked	15.	d) impossible

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	c) enhance/ e) develop	9.	a) to take
2.	d) to/e) from	10.	a) playing
3.	d) hop	11.	d) knowing
4.	b) biography	12.	a) talking
5.	b) other	13.	c) seeing
6.	a) alive	14.	b) to tell
7.	b) wishes	15.	a) to visit
8.	a) helpful	16.	b) to revise

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) scared	21. a) couldn't stop
18. a) enjoyed	22. a) had been outside
19. c) Sally's brother.	23. a) were asleep
20. b) turned on the lights	24. d) Sally's Brother's Trick

25. Translate into English:

- The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution. Pollution of all kinds leads to severe destruction of the environment and thus threatens our survival on Earth.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- لقد أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

Al-Adwan Test Based on (Units 4, 5 & 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

i. D) dalliaged/ C) clusile	1.	b)	damaged/	c)	crushe
-----------------------------	----	------------	----------	----	--------

2. b) prejudiced/e) partial

3. a) kidnapped

4. c) adventure

5. b) character

6. c) mysterious

a) judge

8. b) for

9. b) is

10. c) used to sleep

11. c) hearing

12. b) During

13. d) has been to

14. b) have broken

15. d) watching

16. a) breaking

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) Miss Farida's departure

18. c) the class teacher

19. d) a picture

20. b) exchanging emails

21. d) the gift for Miss Farida

22. d) help

23. d) One of the students.

24. c) her good qualities

25. Translate into English:

- Travelling abroad has many benefits, including that it helps us learn a lot of the customs, traditions and cultures of peoples.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- في الوقت الحاضر، نواجه الكثير من الأوبئة التي تهدد حياتنا. فيروس كورونا هو أحد هذه الأمراض التي يجب على العلماء إيجاد علاج لها.

Story



Treasure Island

Chapter (1) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) swords
- **2. d**) dare
- 3. b) grabbed
- **4. c)** guard
- **5. a)** scar
- **6. b)** owes
- **7. b)** inn
- **8. d)** pale

- 9. c) island
- **10. b)** cliff
- **11. d)** blind
- 12. a) treasure
- 13. c) to go
- 14. d) towards
- **15. b**) for

Chapter (2) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) crew
- 2. a) clue
- 3. b) magistrate
- 4. c) servant
- 5. d) directions
- **6. b)** head
- **7. d)** rob
- 8. c) escape

- 9. b) sailors
- 10. a) buried
- **11. d)** shout
- **12. c)** cross
- 13. b) out
- 14. d) for
- **15.** a) for

Chapter (3) Exercises

- 1. d) secret
- 2. d) frightened
- 3. c) pirates
- 4. d) mutiny
- 5. c) parrot
- 6. a) helpers
- 7. b) attacked
- 8. c) barrels

- **9. d**) gang
- 10. a) destination
- 11. b) crutches
- **12. c)** reach
- 13. d) for
- **14.** a) after
- **15. b)** after

Chapter (4) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) whistle
- 2. c) trust
- 3. d) branch
- a) relax 4.
- d) disease 5.
- 6. b) marked
- 7. a) expression
- 8. b) coast

- **9. c)** shore
- **10. d)** as
- 11. d) mistake
- **12. d)** onto
- **13. c)** off
- **14.** () to
- **15.** a) along

Chapter (5) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) leader
- **2. a)** sails
- 3. b) spades
- 4. d) fresh
- 5. d) bottom
- 6. b) voice
- **7.** () knelt
- b) interested

- 9. d) allowed
- **10. a)** dead
- 11. c) believe
- **12. b)** burned
- **13. d)** To
- **14. c)** of
- 15. a) for

Chapter (6) Exercises

- 1. d) supplies
- **2. c)** fired
- 3. d) cannon
- 4. d) defend
- **5.** a) fort
- 6. b) contact
- 7. c) medicines
- d) including

- 9. a) advantages
- **10. b)** sank
- 11. c) prevent
- **12. d)** alive
- 13. a) on
- **14. b)** down
- **15. c)** from





English

الصف (1) الثانوى نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسي الأول طبقًا للتعديلات الوزارية

2021 - 2022

Final Tests

Final Test 1



					40
	Choose Two of the				
		when she lost her mo	•		
	a) furious	b) satisfied	c) stingy	d) cruel	e) pleased
	2 Modern means	of transport make it e	asy to reach remote	areas. The synonyn	ns of the word
	"remote" are	•••••••			
	a) faraway	b) nearby	c) close	d) distant	e) near
	Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, o	c or d:		1
	Second Second	na lot of mor	ney because football	has become the m	ost famous sport
	a) beat	b) earn	c) win		d) gain
	Each person sho	ould blood on	ce a year at least.		
	a) lend	b) transplant	c) donate	e	d) transmit
	5 She to L	ondon since last mor	nth. She is still there.		
	a) has gone	b) has been	c) hasn't	been	d) hasn't gone
	6 The of t	he ship consists of sev	ven sailors and the ca	aptain.	
	a) staff	b) team	c) band		d) crew
	Some animals li	ve in very par	ts of the world.		
4	a) isolated	b) insulated	c) insulte	ed	d) installed
	1 You bought me	a theatre ticket yester	rday, so Iyou	some money.	
	a) lend	b) borrow	c) owe		d) own
	While I was revise	sing my lesson, my mo	other dinner		
	a) was preparin	g b) preparing	c) is prep	paring	d) prepares
	10 A man k	by the company he ke	eps, so we have to cl	noose our friends w	vell.
	a) is known	b) knows	c) has kn	own	d) was known
	We need to wak	te up early tomorrow.	The train to Aswan	at 6 a.m.	
	a) is going to le	ave b) leaves	c) will lea	ave	d) leave
	_	nt toIndian re		_	
	a) an/The	b) a/The	c) the/Th		d) the/a
	My sister	buy a new dress. Sh	e's already decided t	o do so.	
	a) will	b) would	c) is goin	_	d) can
	We never allow	at school. It h	as bad effects on chi	ldren.	

c) cyberbully

d) to bully

a) bully

b) bullying

		I T	
_	ınaı	ILACI	۲c
	па	1 1 1 2 3	La

15 The boy on t	he wall when he fell	down.	
a) was walking	b) walked	c) walks	d) was walked
🔞 During the exam, I	a friend of mi	ne cheating.	
a) was seeing	b) was see	c) see	d) saw

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The <u>advantage</u> of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used: the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one herb that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

	,
Natural remedies are attracting attr	ention because they
a) are used in Egypt	
b) have side effects	
c) are exported from Egypt	
d) can treat a lot of diseases	
Garlic is an example of	
a) natural remedies	b) artificial herbs
c) chemical medicines	d) modern drugs
🕒is a physical condition that	shows you may have a particular disease.
a) Prescription	b) Property
c) Symptom	d) Remedy
A herbalist writes out a prescription	nchecking his reference books.
a) during	b) after
c) while	d) before
The pronoun "his" in the last paraging	aph refers to the
a) herbalist	b) shop
c) customer	d) prescription

Final Test 2



Choose Two of the Five options:

0	Science fiction	films are horing	The annosites o	of the word "boring"	are
	Science netion	minis are borning.	The opposites o	n the word borning	are

a) annoying

b) interesting

c) terrifying

d) exhausting

- e) exciting
- - a) ignored

b) cared for

c) left

d) nursed

e) found about

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- Germany is European country. It has an area of 357,021 square kilometers.
 - a) the

b) a

c) an

- d) no article
- 4 Manal hasn't phoned usthe summer holiday. It's unusual of her.
 - a) ago

b) since

c) already

d) for

- 5 We met a lot of our friendsour stay in Austria.
 - a) while
- b) in

c) since

- d) during
- 6 We always to school when we were young as the school wasn't far from our house.
- (0)
- a) walk
- b) walked
- c) are walking
- d) were walking

- The police have so far failed todown the criminal.
 - a) track
- b) tick

c) trek

d) truck

- 3 It's the first time we have been to Naples.
 - a) ever
- b) never

c) since

- d) yet
- I don't know how to operate my tablet. Don't worry, Iyou.
- a) show
- b) am showing
- c) am going to show
- d) will show

- O Do you think the words "dine" and "fine".....?
 - a) rhythm
- b) compose
- c) rhyme

d) belong

- 1 My grandfather died 84.
 - a) age

b) aging

c) aged

- d) ages
- (2) The bank lost a lot of money. They think their computer system had been into.
 - a) baked
- b) caked

c) backed

d) hacked

- Use your mind and don't take anything granted.
 - a) at

b) for

(1) with

- d) from
- (1) She certainly hasn't done anything that that cruel punishment.
 - a) reserved
- b) deserved
- c) observed
- d) reversed

- (5) Mum useddelicious meals before she started her job.
 - a) cooking b) to cook
- c) to cooking
- d) that cooking

- 16 We should avoidinto troubles with people we love.
 - a) to get b) that get
- c) getting d) to getting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



With the development of modern civilisation, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours streets are so blocked that it takes a driver age to get to his destination.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - a) it is expensive
- b) getting on and off the bus is difficult

c) it is very slow

- d) bus drivers drive carelessly
- 18 The pronoun "they" refers to
 - a) taxi drivers

b) taxis

c) buses

- d) passengers
- Most people insist on possessing a private car to keep the long wait at the bus stop.
 - a) up

b) away from

c) on

- d) down
- 20 Possessing a private car is to doctors and engineers.
 - a) unnecessary

b) kind

c) indispensable

- d) bad
- - a) complex

b) simple

c) easy

d) noncomplex

According to the writer, possessing a car ca	an be a trouble because
a) cars take a space in the garage	b) cars have to be left in the streets
c) drivers are careless	d) traffic is incredible
The best title for this passage is "".	
a) Traffic Rules	b) Types of Cars
c) Driving carelessly	d) Transportation
According to the passage, it takes drivers a	long time to reach their destination when
a) the streets are empty	b) it's the rush hour
c) the drivers drive slowly	d) the garages are full
49 According to the passage, some taxi drivers	s are
a) greedy b) good	c) honest d) funny
The sentence "it takes a driver age to get to	his destination" shows that
 a) people don't know their destination 	b) GPS always misleads people
c) drivers can't drive	d) it takes long time
Translate into English:	
سيئة تنتشر بين الشباب وتهدد الناس في كل مكان.	عجب أن يتعاون كل أفراد المجتمع لمحاربة التنمر؛ فهو مشكلة اجتماعية المحاربة التنمر؛ فهو مشكلة اجتماعية ا
3 Translate into Arabic:	
To achieve your ambitions in life, you shou well as a sense of responsibility.	lld have determination, courage, patience as 3
Write an essay of about (150) words on t	he following tonic:
'	
	nt of their time practising sports. Discuss the advantage:
and disadvantages of this, ose specific reas	sons and examples to support your answer."
7	

Final Test (3)



Choose Two of the Five options:



- a) observe
- b) look for
- c) monitor
- d) see off
- e) collect
- a) support
- b) decrease
- c) reduce
- d) raise
- e) strengthen

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- The rich should money to charities to help the poor.
 - a) donate
- b) steal

c) rob

d) take

- Firefighters should wearclothes while facing fires.
 - a) protection
- b) protected
-) protective
- d) protects
- - a) ground
- b) sky

c) earth

- d) moon
- Just as the dinner, my father was reading the newspaper.
 - a) was preparing

b) was being prepared

c) was prepared

- d) is preparing
- Iliving away from my family before travelling abroad.
 - a) wasn't used to
- b) used to
- c) didn't use to
- d) is used to

- - a) tricky
- b) tiny

- c) sustainable
- d) boring
- Ragab to the beach every summer when he was young.
 - a) went
- b) goes

c) go

- d) going
- 10 Most of the students feel when they start a new school as it isn't easy.
 - a) happy
- b) glad

c) stressed

- d) pleased
- 1 If you have a problem, you can me for advice by phone or email any time.
 - a) contact
- b) conduct
- c) connect

- d) communicate
- 2 Mona doesn't mind to the cinema tonight as she is not busy.
 - a) go

b) to go

c) going

- d) goes
- 13 The best thing to do when you are thirsty is to drink glass of water.
- a) no article
- **b**) a

c) the

- d) an
- (1) I only bought my new car last week, but I 5000 km with it so far.
 - a) already driven

b) have already driven

c) had already driven

d) drove

/	
\	

- (b) My trousers well every week by the laundry. They are professional.
 - a) are wash b) is washed
- c) are washed
- d) is washing
- 6 Our bus driverus to school on time. He is very punctual.
 - a) always drive b) always drives
- c) drive always
- d) drives always

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Advertising has become very specialised in modern times. In the business world of today, supply is usually greater than demand. There is great competition between the different manufactures of the same kind of product to persuade customers to buy their own particular make. They always have to remind the customer of the name and the quality of their product. They do this by advertising. The manufacturer advertises in newspapers and on posters. He sometimes pays for songs to be sung about his product on commercial radio programmes. He employs attractive sales girls to distribute samples of it. He organises competitions with prizes for the winners. He often advertises on the screens of local cinemas. Most important of all is on television. He has advertisements put into the programmes whenever this is possible. Manufacturers often spend large sums of money on advertisements.

We buy a particular product because we think that it is the best. We usually think so because the advertisements say so. Some people never pause to ask themselves if the advertisements are telling the truth.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - a) the product is good
 - b) we don't need them
 - c) supply is greater than demand
 - d) we need them
- 10 One of the following is not mentioned and it is a way of advertising
 - a) newspapers and TV

b) posters

c) cinemas

- d) trains
- - a) advertisement

b) factory

c) product

- d) customer
- The best title of this text is "......".
 - a) Ways of Advertising

b) Competition

c) A specialised activity

- d) Manufacturers
- The antonym of the word "particular" is
 - a) choosy

b) unique

c) selective

d) common



Final Test 4



Choose Two of the Five options:



a) disordered

b) disappointed

c) tidy

d) unhappy

- e) untidy
- - a) confused

b) busy

c) pleased

d) crowded

e) delighted

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- 3 The horrible accident was the of high speed.
 - a) cause
- b) result

c) reason

- d) affection
- Radi suffers from a heart disease. Doctors recommend an urgent heart operation.
 - a) transmission
- b) transport
- c) transfusion
- d) transplant
- Sara sent me SMS just now. She told me that our exams had postponed.
 - a) a

b) an

c) the

d) no article

- 6, which is dried grape, is much used in cooking.
 - a) Currant
- **b)** Currency
- c) Current

- d) Curtain
- 7 Your blue jeanshung in the wardrobe. You always forget.
 - a) is

b) have

c) are

d) was

- Amir: I'm presently short of money.
 - Samir: Don't bother about that. I you a loan.
 - a) will give
- b) am giving
- c) going to give
- d) give
- 1 Unlike now, I black coffee. I only drank tea and fruit juice.
 - a) use

- b) didn't use to
- c) used to

d) wasn't used to

- Be careful, the car hit you; it is very near!
 - a) will

b) would

c) is

d) is going to

- 10 He had aface as he had been working all day.
 - a) tiring looking
- b) tired looking
- c) tired looked
- d) tiring looked
- 2 The little girl missing down town. Her mother was very worried about her.
 - a) got

b) went

c) found

d) came

- - a) pen name
- b) pseudonym
- c) nick name
- d) surname
- 49 Sara has enjoyed reading ever since shevery young.
 - a) was

b) is

c) will be

d) has been

- (5) The manager is going to the mechanic because his car every month.
 - a) is repairedb) is repairing
- c) was repaired
- d) repairs
- 6 The plumber managedthe tap and apologised for our neighbours.
 - a) fixing
- b) to fixing
- c) to fix

d) he fixes

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment. Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of its withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the ecological balance, therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Desertification means a wide area of trees.
 - a) clearing

b) planting

c) irrigating

- d) spraying
- - a) desertification

b) global warming

c) environment

- d) CO₂
- (2) Scientists recommend fossil fuels in an attempt to solve the problem.
 - a) using

b) misusing

c) reducing

- d) reusing
- 20 Burning fossil fuelsglobal warming.
 - a) causes of

b) results of

c) leads to

- d) results from
- - a) 30

b) 50

c) 70

d) 90

			Final Tests
The synonym of the u	nderlined word "ecol	ogical"is	
a) environmental	b) biological	c) chemical	d) material
Using nonrenewable s	•	not safe because it	
a) produces gases like		b) can be stolen eas	
c) can be flamed		d) can't be moved f	rom a place to another
According to the pass	age, we the o	destructive effects of the g	llobal warming.
a) will face		b) faced	
c) are already facing		d) have never faced	
45 According to the write	er, these problems ar	e caused by	
a) aircrafts		b) animal	
c) humans		d) plants	
The best title for this p	bassage is "".		
a) National Disasters		b) Global Disasters	
c) Trees and Nature		d) Anthropogenic A	Activities
ن به حصانص تعینه عنی انتیاه	ها من حيوانات افوي. فكل حيوار	لونها بلون البيئة المحيطة لتحمى أنفس	تضطر بعض الحيوانات إلى تغيير 🔰
	ها من حيوانات افوي. فحل حيوار	لونها بلون البيئة المحيطة لتحمى انفس	ضطر بعض الحيوانات إلى تغيير في بيئته الخاصة.
Translate into Arabic			في بيئته الخاصة.
Translate into Arabic		لونها بلون البيئة المحيطة لتحمى انفس	في بيئته الخاصة.
Translate into Arabic No one can avoid bei	ng old as aging is a n	atural process that gradua	في بيئته الخاصة. Ally happens with the

Final Test 5



Choose Two of the Five options:



- a) huge
- b) generous
- c) delighted
- d) gigantic
- e) modern
- - a) celebrated
- b) nameless
- c) well-built
- d) unknown
- e) well-known

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- 3 He felt lonely and after his mother had passed away.
 - a) miser

- b) miserliness
- c) miserably
- d) miserable
- 4 Have you finished writing the essay? You are very quick!
 - a) just

b) yet

- c) ever
- d) already
- 6 His father him a good job as an accountant in a multi-national company.
 - a) is finding
- b) founded
- c) found
- d) has founded

- **6** She ran up theroad leading to the castle.
 - a) gravel

b) plot

- c) digging
- d) gravels
- In time, I will travel to London. I will stay for 2 weeks there.
 - a) two week
- b) two week's
- c) two weeks
- d) two weeks'
- - a) haven't

b) used

- c) didn't have
- d) hadn't

- - a) was saying
- b) am saying
- c) will say
- d) says

- O Doctors after patients in hospitals. It is their job.
 - a) lock

- b) looked
- c) looking
- d) look

- - a) hacks

b) hack

- c) hacking
- d) hijack
- 2 You are no more than awho frightens people online.
 - a) cyberbullying
- b) cyberbully
- c) phishing
- d) terror
- Sports stars arefor thousands of youngsters so they should behave well.
 - a) role games
- b) role models
- c) role makers
- d) role players
- The accident is a of one that happened to her three weeks ago.
 - a) reputation
- b) repetition
- c) revision
- d) religion

(5) As soon as I the key, I will set off very fast.

a) found

a) worked

b) had found

c) was finding

d) have found

6 Ias a professor since I was 30, and this is the first time to see this theory.

a) more

c) least

a) little help

c) school

b) have worked

c) was working

d) work

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Bullying can take a variety of forms, from the verbal-being called hurtful names — to the physical-being kicked — as well as indirect forms, such as being excluded from social groups. A survey I conducted with Irene Whitney found that in British primary schools up to a quarter of pupils reported experience of bullying, which is about one in ten cases was persistent. There was less bullying in secondary schools, with about one in twenty-five suffering persistent bullying, but these cases may be particularly rebellious.

Bullying is clearly unpleasant and can make the child experiencing it feel unworthy and depressed. In extreme cases, it can even lead to suicide, though this is thankfully rare. Victimized pupils are more likely to experience difficulties with interpersonal relationships as adults, while children who persistently bully are more likely to grow up to be physically violent and convicted of anti-social offences.

Until recently, not much was known about the topic, and little help was available to teachers to deal with bullying. Perhaps, as a result, schools would often deny the problem. "There is no bullying at this school" has been a common refrain, almost certainly all true. Fortunately, more schools are now saying: There is not much bullying here, but when it occurs we have a clear for dealing with it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

a) don't	D) alan't
c) had	d) hadn't
1 Being is an indirect form of bull	ying.
a) called hurtful names	b) kicked
c) excluded from social groups	d) slashed
① Children experiencing an extreme case	of bullying may commit
a) suicide	b) theft
c) tolerance	d) violence
A recent survey found that in British sec	ondary schools there wasbullying than in primary
schools.	

b) less

d) much more

b) bullying

d) refrain

Teachersknow how to deal with bullying, but now they do.

			_
mal	Tests	E35	
The sy	nony	m of	fth

	The synonym of the	e underlined word " <u>condu</u>	icted" is	
	a) performed	b) attached	c) linked	d) ignored
	3 When a school has	a case of bullying	• •	
	a) they neglect it		b) they make up betw	een students
	c) they deal with it	strictly	d) they report it to the	e police
	The the best title fo	r the passage is ""	•	
3	a) Bullying can be T	reated	b) Students are Disres	pectful
Ī	c) Schools Need Re	form	d) Bullying as a Social	Disease
	3 Teachers to	deal with bullying.		
	a) are ready	b) are supported	c) are not trained	d) can't be trained
	3 Being exposed to b	ullying, the child suffers f	rom	
	a) over happiness	b) depression	c) creativity	d) disrespect
	3 Translate into Eng	lich:		
	_		عدك لكى تنفع نفسك وعائلتك وبلدك، ف	علىك أن تبذل قصاري حد
			cause it creates job opport	cunities and
	***************************************		must all work together to t	develop it.
	>	about (150) words on th		develop it.
200	Write an essay of a	about (150) words on th	e following topic:	develop it.
2	Write an essay of a			develop it.
e c	Write an essay of a		e following topic:	develop it.
e c	Write an essay of a		e following topic:	develop it.
	Write an essay of a		e following topic:	develop it.
30	Write an essay of a		e following topic:	develop it.
	② ② Write an essay of a		e following topic:	develop it.
	Write an essay of a		e following topic:	develop it.
	Write an essay of a		e following topic:	develop it.
	Write an essay of a		e following topic:	develop it.

Final Test 👵



Ch	10060	Two	ftha	Eivo.	options:
Ų.	ioose	IWUU	n une	rive	options:



- a) kept
- b) presented
- c) received
- d) asked
- e) gave

- a) denied
- b) regretted
- c) adapted
- d) concealed
- e) avoided

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- O He deniedthat bad thing. In fact, he was innocent.
 - a) to do
- b) did

c) doing

d) do

- a are fully grown persons.
 - a) Children
- b) Old people
- c) Teenagers
- d) Adults

- (5) When I was young, I always before going to school.
 - a) crying
- b) cry

c) cried

- d) was crying
- (3) When I heard the of the gun parts, I know the man was about to shoot.
- (O.)
- a) direct
- b) object

c) check

- d) click
- We use friendly materials in ecotourism to keep the surroundings.
 - a) environment
- b) environmental
- c) environmentally
- d) environmentalist
- He had lost his job, so he couldn't pay back the money he
 - a) owned
- b) earned
- c) gave

- d) owed
- - a) While
- b) During
- c) Just as

d) When

- - a) replaced
- b) replacement
- c) replace

- d) replaces
- 1 Monaon holiday next Sunday. She's arranged to do so.
 - a) will go
- b) will have gone
- c) goes

d) is going

- ② There is plenty of meat, but there is not bread.
 - a) plenty
- b) many

c) much

d) a lot

- (3) Decision needs knowledge and experience.
 - a) doing
- b) having
- c) making

d) saying

- (4) I have passed this test
 - a) already
- b) yet

c) just

d) so far

- (a) will start b) starts c) is going to start d) is starting
- While, me sister fell off the bed and got injured.
 - a) sleep b) she was slept c) slept d) sleeping

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



"Necessity is the mother of invention" is a famous common proverb which means that our needs always motivate our minds to create new things in order to manage well with a world full of speed changes.

Man's needs have often directed him to discover the natural resources around him, and to make with his own hands the things he wants.

Thus, he made tools to cultivate the land and get its crops. Those tools played an important part in establishing civilisation. Food, clothing and shelter are still considered to be man's basic needs. The progress of technology has enabled man to satisfy all these needs. It has helped him to take wide steps in developing agriculture, industry and public services.

Thus, we are now enjoying the blessing of modern civilisation. When civilisation developed and man lived in organised societies, he found himself in need of more than his necessities; Education is next to food in importance because it is the only way to <u>acquire</u> experience and the qualifications necessary to earn a living.

Education changed our style of living and led to higher thinking levels. He invaded space. He invented the computer. No wonder that man has great abilities which will enable him to create more inventions in the future.

(2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or u:			
The underlined word "acquire" has a similar meaning to			
a) require	b) demand		
c) obtain	d) contain		
According to the passage education is of great importance because			
a) it gives us experience and making a living			
b) it is pre to food in importance			
c) it is natural resource before us			
d) the tools played a role in our civilisation			
Man needed more than his necessities when he			
a) needed tools	b) lived in organised societies		
c) discovered natural resources	d) made the things he wanted		
⊕ "He made tools to cultivate the land" another word for "cultivate" is			
a) ignore	b) destroy		
c) plant	d) abandon		

Final Test 🕖



			40
Choose Two of the Fi	ve options:		
Maya likes wearing	fashionable clothes. 1	The synonyms the word of "fa	shionable"
are		•	
a) old	b) c	lean	c) stylish
d) expensive	e) c	ool	
2 Your question isn't	clear. Can you clarify v	what you want? The antonym	s of the word "clear"
are			
a) ambiguous	b) p	oure	c) bright
d) complicated	e) o	bscure	
Choose the correct a	nswer from a. b. c or	d:	144
		pinions and ideas, even if the	ev are different from you
a) leader	b) friendship	c) diversity	d) punctuation
(1) A: We have not got		,	, p
B: I know, I	•		
a) won't buy	3	b) am going to buy	
c) will be buying		d) will have bought	
He has been doing	three jobs to get out	of	
a) debit	b) doubt	c) count	d) debt
3 The countryside is r	nainlyby farn	ners and their families.	
a) populated	b) population	c) unpopulated	d) pollution
We all recommended	edthat book.		
a) that read	b) that he read	c) to read	d) to reading
What is the correct	plural of the word "be	lief"?	
a) Believes.	b) Beliefs.	c) Beliefes.	d) Believe.
Finally, my mother .	how to use th	e internet. Now she can send	e-mails.
a) learns	b) has learnt	c) had learnt	d) was learning
10 A/An is som	neone who is legally r	esponsible for looking after s	omeone or something.
a) biologist	b) guardian	c) hunter	d) admirer
There are di	fferences between pe	eople in Upper Egypt and tho	se in the Delta.
a) culture	b) cultural	c) cultured	d) culturally
2 Do not open the do	or until Iyou.		
a) told	h) had told	c) tell	d) was told

hours.

a) storyteller

b) an

- c) playwright
- d) dancer

- b) poet (1) My uncle arrived on Sunday, after my birthday.
 - a) a
- c) the

d) no article

- (5) I've many countries but I like Egypt the most.
- a) been
- b) been to
- c) gone

- d) gone to
- 6 I boughtmp3 which can be connected to the car via Bluetooth.
 - a) a

b) an

c) the

d) no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. The dark figure stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The strange sound, the creaky stairs, the darkness and the dark figure Sally.
 - a) screamed

b) scared

c) cared

- d) cracked
- (B) Sally reading ghost stories.
 - a) enjoyed

b) did not enjoy

c) feared

- d) avoided
- 19 Who does the underlined phrase "The dark figure" refer to?
 - a) The strange noise.

b) Sally.

c) Sally's brother.

- d) The ghost.
- 20 Sally realised it was not a ghost when her brother
 - a) stretched his hand

b) turned on the lights

c) walked down the steps

- d) laughed
- - a) couldn't stop

b) couldn't breathe

c) couldn't give a hand

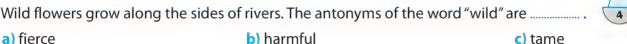
d) couldn't sleep

Ken wher had been outs	Sally started reading the		
a) had been outs	i Sally Started reading the	e story.	
a) nau been outs		b) had been on the ro	of
c) hadn't entered	·		the bed
3 Sally thought it w	as a ghost because all of	her family	
a) were asleep		b) got out	
c) went shopping	I	d) didn't like tricks	
The best title to tl	nis passage is "".		
a) Reading is imp	ortant	b) Scary Tales Effects	
c) Ken is coward		d) Sally's brother's tric	k
49 What kind of text	s is this passage?		
a) A Letter.	b) A short film.	c) A short story.	d) An Email.
The word from th	e passage which means "c	discover" is	
a) turn on	b) walk into	c) find out	d) push
Translate into Er	adich:		
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
ى اللياقة البدئية وتجديد	وممارسه الرياضة تساعد في الحفاظ علر	ة وتحصيل المعرفة النافعة في وقت الفراغ، و	3
			النشاط.
49 Translate into A	abic:		
Building good cit	tizens and creating a crea	tive society are the main aim	as of education. $\frac{1}{3}$
This will teach th	em self-reliance		
cooli en	citi seli reliarice.		
		ho following tonics	
	f about (150) words on t		6
	f about (150) words on t	the following topic: antages of teamwork"	6
	f about (150) words on t		6
	f about (150) words on t		6
	f about (150) words on t		6
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t		6
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t	antages of teamwork"	
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t	antages of teamwork"	
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t	antages of teamwork"	
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t	antages of teamwork"	
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t	antages of teamwork"	
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t	antages of teamwork"	
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t	antages of teamwork"	
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t	antages of teamwork"	
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t	antages of teamwork"	
Write an essay o	f about (150) words on t	antages of teamwork"	



c) tame

Choose Two of the Five options:



- d) domestic e) legal
- b) hike c) losing
 - a) fishing d) fabricating e) journey

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- As an, you should travel in a way that shows respect to nature. a) ecotourism b) ecotourist d) eco-friendly c) ecosystem
- emails usually targets your bank accounts.
- a) Fishing b) Phishing c) Cyber d) The internet 5 He was a great who wrote many poems.
- a) novelist b) author d) illustrator c) poet
- 6 You should have your sight regularly.
- a) checked b) shocked c) choked d) shook
- Tamilies should their children's internet activity.
 - b) click a) meet c) monitor d) scam
- My friend keeps photos all day.
- a) logging in b) posting c) lighting d) connecting
- a) slept b) sleeping c) was sleeping d) has slept
- @ anybody need help? b) Does d) Are a) Do c) Is
- 1 haven't seen him since hea child.
- a) is b) has been c) been d) was He doesn't have money.
- b) few d) much a) many c) a lot
- 16 years old.
- a) is going to be b) going to be c) will be d) is being
- (1) He is looking forward to his friends. a) meet b) meets c) met d) meeting

15 Physics m	y favourite subject. I like	Newton and Einstein very	much.
a) is	b) are	c) have been	d) is being
6 I my aunt	eagerly last Friday. I can't	t stand waiting for the nex	t month.
a) have visited	b) has visited	c) visited	d) visit

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dangerous substances discharged by factories cause toxic or poisonous air pollution. The emissions have serious effects on public health. Needless to say, exposure to high levels of these toxic emissions will cause a lot of human suffering through chest ailments and diseases.

Toxic chemicals, which do not break down easily in the atmosphere have been known to travel great distances and come down to earth. Moreover, pollutants emitted from automobiles, cars and other means of transport and dry cleaners are considered very dangerous. In this way, a huge quantity of cancer-causing chemicals are released into the air.

Benzene is known to cause leukemia in humans. This is a serious problem which is serious to human health. The World Health Organisation "W.H.O." reaffirms that the gap of the ozone layer has been widening. Two thirds of the layer that protects the globe have been completely destroyed. Ozone absorbs the harmful ultraviolet rays that cause skin cancer and damage eyesight.

Many countries are now taking action to reduce pollution. But this pollution problem may solve itself when the world oil wells have run out. Then we hope that alternative sources of energy will have been found.

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or d:			
The ozone layer, being widened by pollutants,				
a) prevents ultraviolet rays from coming down to earth				
b) protects the globe				
c) allows ultraviol	et rays to come down to e	arth and cause human suf	ffering	
d) absorbs the ha	rmful pollutants			
18 Toxic chemicals	•			
a) break down ea	sily in the atmosphere			
b) do not break d	own easily in the atmosph	ere and don't come down	to earth	
c) come down to	earth because they do not	break down easily in the	atmosphere	
d) are emitted fro	m the atmosphere and co	me down to earth		
Toxic emissions so	ometimes cause			
a) ultraviolet rays	to break down easily	b) chest ailments and	d other diseases	
c) ultraviolet rays d) the reduction of pollution		ollution		
A suitable title for	the passage is "".			
a) Ultraviolet rays		b) Toxic air-pollution	ı	
c) Leukemia in humans c) The World Health Organisation			Organisation	
@of the laye	er that protects the globe i	is remaining.		
a) Two thirds	b) One third	c) Three fifths	d) Half	

	 The ozone layer is important because	e earth	
	 The industry is responsible for polluting the env a) factories don't pay taxes c) many people work in industry 	ironment becauseb) factories discharge da d) building new factorie	ingerous substances
	 When the petrol runs out from the world, a) there will be a big problem in energy price c) there will be an energy crisis 	b) the pollution will disa d) the deserts will fade	ppear
	The antonym of the underlined word "toxic" is		D
	a) healthy b) creepy	c) unhealthy	d) weak
	According to the last paragraph of the passage,a) ignore the case	all countriesb) want to solve the pro	hlem
	c) dig more oil wells	d) create solar panels	
	Translate into English:		
	ونمو الاقتصاد المصرى من خلال اهتمامها بأسرتها ووظيفتها في نفس	دائمنا دورًا حيوينًا في تحسين المجتمع	لقد لعبت المرأة المصرية الوقت.
	② Translate into Arabic:		
	Egypt hosted the last Africa Cup of Nations in 20 the Cup for the second time.	019 and the Algerian Nati	onal Team won 3
	Write an essay of about (150) words on the form	llowing topic:	
e C	"Poll	ution"	6

40	

Choose Two of the	Five options:		
There is a major p	problem with parking in L	ondon. The antonyms of th	ne word "major"
are			
a) minor	b) triv	<i>y</i> ial	c) fundamental
d) remarkable	e) tre	mendous	
2 "Exotic birds are s	een here in winter." In this	s sentence, the word 'exotic	c'is a synonym of
a) native	b) un	usual	c) unconventional
d) foreign	e) ori	ginal	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or d	:	14
3 Children like to	new games and m	ovies from the internet.	
a) upload	b) download	c) downside	d) destroy
4 has made	e the world a smaller plac	e.	
a) Any plane	b) Planes	c) The plane	d) The planes
Suxor is considered	ed a main for mos	st tourists.	
a) location	b) cooperation	c) destination	d) foundation
6 I started r	ny profession, I have met	a lot of excellent students.	
a) On	b) Before	c) After	d) Since
The money saved	l for buying clothes	on that table.	
a) was	b) were	c) has	d) had
Although he look	s smart, he has a	across his forehead.	
a) scar	b) scarce	c) scared	d) scare
3 I was talk	ing on the phone, the do	orbell rang.	
a) Since	b) During	c) While	d) After
Theset th	e prisoner free when he	realised that he was innoce	ent.
a) master	b) manager	c) magistrate	d) servant
You should avoid	friends with such	n bad people.	
a) to make	b) making	c) makes	d) to making
Wicked young pe	ople and media fans som	etimes try hard to	the accounts of famous men.
a) pack	b) hack	c) mock	d) highjack
Good people nev	er or tell lies. The	y are respected characters.	

c) cheat

c) is going to be

d) wear

d) will be

a) behave

a) is

b) beat

b) is being

Twenty years from now, I think my city a fantastic place to live in.

- (5) The coach advised me to practise more to get fit shortly.
- a) jogging
- b) to jog

- c) to jogging
- d) jog

- 16 Have you cleaned your room?
 - a) just

- b) till now
- c) yet

d) never

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Octopuses are extremely <u>intelligent</u>. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. Do you want to know how they do that? Well, the octopus is like a chameleon because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand. This colour change happens in less than a minute.

Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a siphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. It will change the colour of those arms to match a sea snake.

If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Don't worry though. The octopus's arm will grow back.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ais an animal that attacks and kills octopuses.
 - a) prey

b) predator

c) chameleon

- d) magician
- When an octopus is in a sticky situation, that means it's
 - a) easy

b) dangerous

c) covered in stick

- d) unable to move
- The synonym of the word "intelligent" is
 - a) smart

b) dangerous

c) venomous

- d) visible
- - a) swim in the same way

b) eat the same food

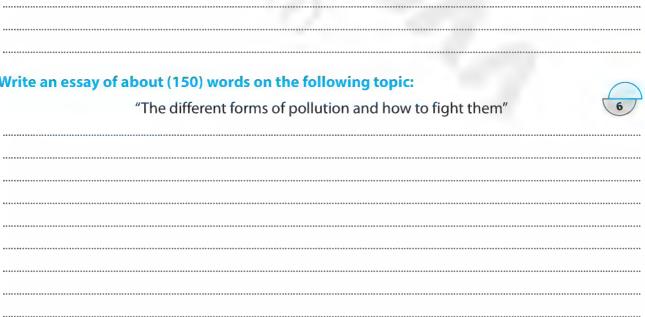
c) catch small fish

- d) can change their skin colour
- - a) distract the predator

b) renew it

c) catch a prey

d) lay eggs





Chanca	True of	i ahaa 4		ntione
Choose	I WO OI	mei	ive o	puons:

Voluntary work is of	a great importance. The antonyms of the word	"voluntary" are
a) optional	b) exceptional	c) obligatory

d) compulsory e) obligation

- b) approve c) disapprove a) praise
 - d) appreciate e) prove

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3 Some people'sin money gets them to do illegal things.
- a) interesting b) interested c) interests d) interest

c) the

- 4 He got his degree in economics from university in Finland.
- d) these a) a b) an **5** We should leave for work early, or we might get in the traffic jams.
- a) struck b) stock c) stuck d) through
- 6 He felt exhausted as he isn't used tosuch hard work.
- b) did c) doing d) done
- - b) granted a) grants c) granting d) grant
- 3 If you want to connect to the internet, on this icon.
- a) kick b) click c) clock d) block

b) treasure

- d) not studying a) to study b) to studying c) studying

a) pleasure

a) behaves politely b) usually polite c) usual politely d) usually politely

c) pressure

- 1 Before the operation, the doctor should check the blood of the patient.
- @ Moneyto Egypt by the tourists, so we should keep our country clean and safe.
- a) brings b) is bringing c) is brought d) are brought
- 13 the last two weeks, we have prepared for our graduation party.
- b) At c) For d) While a) Since
- Now and then we ask our parents advice on what we should do.
- a) of b) about c) to d) for

d) measure

a) Lots

- (b)children don't like schools because they want to play all the time.
- Samy is a fantastic boy. I think he the record of the other class.
 - a) won't break b) isn't going to break c) is going to breaking d) will break

c) A lot

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

b) Lots of



d) Any

Dear Mr. Reda,

I hope everything is Ok with you. Yesterday, I had a night party with my friends, so I had to stay up very late. Let me tell you that the party was amazing. We had lots of fun there. The food was tasty and fresh; those people are excellent at hosting guests. However, I don't like fish at all; they should have asked me what to eat. Never mind! The video games were up-to-date and I beat them all. My friend's father loves sports, so we enjoyed playing tennis table and volleyball. But let me tell you that all of them liked my outfit. They laughed out loud once they saw me with my fascinating orange shoes, red trousers and checked-colourful shirt. Ahmad and Amgad threw tissues at me. I am always fashionable as you know. At the end of the day, we had many pictures which you can find in the attachments below. I couldn't find any transportation, so I requested a ride. It cost only half the price of my sunglasses which costs 150 pounds. When I got home I realised that I had forgotten my wallet at my friend's, but my mum solved the problem and the driver was understanding. Anyway, I'm writing to inform you that I will not show up today because I haven't done any task yet and I'm tired a little bit because of the dancing. See you soon, my manager.

Best regards,

Anas

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What kind of passages is this one?
 - a) A short story. b) An email. c) A letter. d) A diary.
- 18 To whom is this speech written?
- a) Anas. b) Amgad. c) Ahmad. d) Reda.
- - a) didn't like his appearance b) liked his appearance
 - c) made fun of his appearance d) were ashamed of his shoes
- The underlined word "up-to-date" means
 - a) old b) ancient c) modern d) fast
- The house, where the party was held, is
- a) narrow b) vast c) boring d) old-fashioned
- 22 What is the purpose of this passage?
 - a) The writer wants to tell a story. b) The writer is not going to work.
 - c) The writer is proud of his mum. d) The writer is showing his abilities.

According to the	passage, the writer is	••• •	
a) careful	b) punctual	c) careless	d) hard-working
49 How much did it	cost the writer to go home?		
a) 150 pounds.	b) 300 pounds.	c) 75 pounds.	d) 225 pounds.
The writer sent	in the attachment.		
a) his tasks	b) his shoes	c) his photos	d) nothing
36 How could the wi	riter pay for the ride?		
a) He paid by a vi	sa card.		
b) He asked the d	Iriver to return to his friend's	house.	
•	for him when he reached ho	me.	
d) The driver didr	n't take money.		
Translate the fol	lowing into English:		
للطبيعية المعزولة التي	سر؛ فمصر تمتلك الكثير والكثير من الأماكن	برًا من مصادر الدخل القومى فى مم	عتبر السياحة البيئية مصدرًا مباث
			يرغب السياح في زيارتها.
28 Translate the fol	lowing into Arabic:		
Some youth sper	nd a long time on the interne	et nowadays unaware o	of the potential
dangers there. Th	ney are vulnerable to many k	rinds of crimes.	
Write an essay or	f about (150) words on the	following topic:	
o mile an essay o		is a precious thing."	6
•)	Thendship	is a precious triing.	

••••••			





English

الصف 1 الثانوي

إجابات نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسي الأول

2021 - 2022

Answers To Final Tests

Final Test

Choose Two of the Five options:

- 1. b) satisfied / e) pleased
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- **3. b)** earn
- 4. c) donate
- 5. a) has gone
- **6. d)** crew
- 7. a) isolated
- **8. c)** owe
- 9. a) was preparing

- 2. a) faraway / d) distant
- 10. a) is known
- **11. b)** leaves
- 12. a) an/The
- 13. c) is going to
- 14. b) bullying
- 15. a) was walking
- **16. d)** saw

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- choose the correct answer from a, b, c or

17. d) can treat a lot of diseases

- **18.** a) natural remedies
- **19. c)** Symptom
- **20. b)** after
- 21. c) customer
- 22. c) it cures and protects from side effects
- 23. a) demerit
- 24. a) The herbal medicine benefits
- 25. c) It can be fried on fire to be served
- **26.** d) willow tree

27. Translate into English:

A lot of youth are keen on taking part in social work to develop their country. Young people are the basis of the development for any nation, so the developed countries pay special attention to youth.

28. Translate into Arabic:

إن البطالة قنبلة موقوتة تهدد الأمن والاستقرار للمجتمع المصري وحل هذه المشكلة سوف يجلب استثمارات جديدة والتي ستوفر المزيد من فرص العمل.



Choose Two of the Five options:

1. b) interesting / e) exciting

2. b) cared for / d) nursed

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **3. b**) a
- **4. b)** since
- 5. d) during
- 6. b) walked
- 7. a) track
- **8.** a) ever
- 9. d) will show

- **10. c)** rhyme
- **11. c)** aged
- **12. d)** hacked
- **13. b)** for
- 14. b) deserved
- **15. b)** to cook
- **16. c)** getting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
- 18. a) taxi drivers
- 19. b) away from
- **20.** c) indispensable
- 21. a) complex
- 22. b) cars have to be left in the streets
- 23. d) Transportation
- **24.** b) it's the rush hour
- **25. a)** greedy
- **26.** d) it takes long time

27. Translate into English:

All members of society should cooperate to fight bullying as it is a bad social problem spread among youth and threatens people everywhere.

28. Translate into Arabic:

لتحقيق طموحاتك في الحياة يجب عليك أن تمتلك الإصرار والشجاعة والصبر بالإضافة إلى الشعور بالمسئولية.

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) observe / c) monitor

2. b) decrease / c) reduce

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. a) donate
- 4. c) protective
- **5. d)** moon
- 6. b) was being prepared
- 7. a) wasn't used to
- 8. c) sustainable
- **9.** a) went

- 10. c) stressed
- 11. a) contact
- **12. c)** going
- **13. b**) a
- **14.** b) have already driven
- **15.** c) are washed
- 16. b) always drives

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. b) we don't need them
- **18. d**) trains
- 19. c) product
- 20. a) Ways of Advertising
- **21. d)** common
- 22. c) to persuade customers to buy their own particular make
- 23. a) distribute products
- 24. a) The Power of Advertisements
- 25. c) to advertise their products
- **26.** c) the advertiser is truthful or not

27. Translate into English:

Helping the disabled is the responsibility of every one in society so we should do our best to make them mix with other members of society.

28. Translate into Arabic:

إن التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم على حد سواء المتقدمة والنامية.

Choose Two of the Five options:

- 1. a) disordered / e) untidy
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 3. b) result
- 4. d) transplant
- **5. b**) an
- 6. a) Currant
- **7. c)** are
- 8. a) will give
- 9. d) wasn't used to

- 2. b) busy / d) crowded
- 10. d) is going to
- 11. b) tired looking
- **12. b)** went
- 13. c) nick name
- **14.** a) was
- **15. a)** is fixed
- **16. c)** to fix

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. a) clearing
- **18.** b) global warming
- 19. c) reducing
- **20. c)** leads to
- **21. c)** 70
- 22. a) environmental
- 23. a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
- **24.** c) are already facing
- **25. c)** humans
- **26.** b) Global Disasters

27. Translate into English:

Some animals have to change their colours to match their surroundings to protect themselves from stronger animals. Each animal has characteristics that help it live in its own environment.

28. Translate into Arabic:

لا أحد يستطيع تجنب كبر السن لأنه عملية طبيعية تحدث تدريجيًا بمرور الوقت.

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) huge / d) gigantic

2. b) nameless / d) unknown

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. d) miserable
- 4. d) already
- 5. c) found
- 6. a) gravel
- 7. d) two weeks'
- 8. c) didn't have
- 9. a) was saying

- **10. d)** look
- 11. c) hacking
- **12.** b) cyberbully
- 13. b) role models
- 14. b) repetition
- 15. d) have found
- 16. b) have worked

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **17. b)** didn't
- **18.** c) excluded from social groups
- 19. a) suicide
- **20.** b) less
- 21. b) bullying
- 22. a) performed
- 23. c) they deal with it strictly
- **24.** d) Bullying as a Social Disease
- 25. c) are not trained
- **26.** b) depression

27. Translate into English:

You must do your best to benefit yourself and your country. Hard work and diligence are the only way to succeed in life.

28. Translate into Arabic:

إن السياحة ضرورية جدًّا لمصر لأنها تخلق فرص عمل وتجلب العملة الصعبة للبلد؛ لذلك يجب أن نتعاون جميعا لتنميتها.



Choose Two of the Five options:

1. b) presented / e) gave

2. a) denied / d) concealed

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. c) doing
- 4. d) Adults
- **5. c**) cried
- **6. d**) click
- 7. c) environmentally
- **8. d)** owed
- 9. b) During

- 10. b) replacement
- **11. d**) is going
- 12. a) much
- **13. c)** making
- 14. d) already
- **15. b)** starts
- 16. d) sleeping

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **17. c)** obtain
- 18. a) it gives us experience and making a living
- **19.** b) lived in organised societies
- **20. c)** plant
- **21.** b) invent agricultural tools
- 22. b) man has extraordinary abilities
- 23. b) Conditions create inventions
- 24. a) manage
- **25.** b) the education led to this
- **26.** c) Man made wars which destroyed the planet

27. Translate into English:

When you make a promise, you shouldn't break it, don't say nothing but truth, don't afraid to say the truth and don't praise someone for just praise.

28. Translate into Arabic:

عندما تعطى شخصنا تعليمنا قيمنا فأنت لا تنعش الأمة فقط، بل أيضنا تساعده على التفكير والإبداع ليكون مواطئا صالحنا.

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) stylish / e) cool

2. a) ambiguous / d) complicated

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. c) diversity
- 4. b) am going to buy
- **5. d)** debt
- 6. a) populated
- 7. b) that he read
- 8. b) beliefs
- 9. b) has learnt

- 10. b) guardian
- 11. b) cultural
- **12. c)** tell
- 13. c) storyteller
- 14. d) no article
- **15. b)** been to
- **16.** b) an

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **17. b)** scared
- 18. a) enjoyed
- 19. c) Sally's brother.
- **20.** b) turned on the lights
- 21. a) couldn't stop
- 22. a) had been outside
- 23. a) were asleep
- **24. b)** Scary Tales Effects
- 25. c) A short story
- **26. c)** find out

27. Translate into English:

Reading is a means to develop culture and getting knowledge in spare time and doing sport helps to keep fit and renew energy.

28. Translate into Arabic:

إن بناء المواطنين الصالحين وخلق مجتمع مبدع هي الأهداف الأساسية للتعليم وهذا سيعلمهم الاعتماد على النفس.

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) tame / d) domestic

2. b) hike / e) journey

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. b) ecotourist
- 4. b) Phishing
- **5. c)** poet
- 6. a) checked
- 7. c) monitor
- 8. b) posting
- 9. c) was sleeping

- **10. b)** Does
- **11. d)** was
- **12. d)** much
- **13. c)** will be
- 14. d) meeting
- **15.** a) is
- **16. c)** visited

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. c) allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering
- 18. c) come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere
- 19. b) chest ailments and other diseases
- **20.** b) Toxic air-pollution
- 21. b) One third
- 22. b) it prevents the harmful rays from reaching the earth
- 23. b) factories discharge dangerous substances
- **24.** b) the pollution will disappear
- **25.** a) healthy
- **26.** b) want to solve the problem

27. Translate into English:

The Egyptian woman has played a vital role in improving society and developing the Egyptian economy through her interest in her family and job at the same time.

28. Translate into Arabic:

استضافت مصر كأس الأمم الإفريقية الأخيرة عام ٢٠١٩ وفاز الفريق الجزائري بالكأس للمرة الثانية.

Final Test ⁹

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) minor / b) trivial

2. b) unusual / c) unconventional

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. b) download
- 4. c) The plane
- 5. c) destination
- 6. d) Since
- **7.** a) was
- **8.** a) scar
- **9. c)** While

- 10. c) magistrate
- **11. b)** making
- **12. b)** hack
- **13. c)** cheat
- **14. d)** will be
- 15. a) jogging
- **16. c)** yet

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. b) predator
- 18. b) dangerous
- **19. a)** smart
- 20. d) can change their skin colour
- 21. a) distract the predator
- 22. a) defend themselves
- 23. b) helps it hide from the attackers
- 24. b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
- 25. a) The Magician Octopuses
- **26.** c) renew its arms

27. Translate into English:

The Egyptian Olympic football team won the African Nation Cup and pleased a lot of Egyptians and we congratulate our dear Egypt from the bottom of our hearts.

28. Translate into Arabic:

بلا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمي وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.



Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) obligatory / d) compulsory

2. a) praise / d) appreciate

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **3. d)** interest
- **4.** a) a
- **5. c)** stuck
- **6. c)** doing
- 7. b) granted
- **8. b)** click
- 9. d) not studying

- 10. b) usually polite
- 11. c) pressure
- 12. c) is brought
- **13. c)** For
- **14. d)** for
- **15. b)** Lots of
- 16. d) will break

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **17. b)** An email
- **18. d**) Reda
- 19. b) liked his appearance
- **20. c)** modern
- **21. b)** vast
- 22. b) The writer is not going to work
- 23. c) careless
- **24. c)** 75 pounds
- 25. c) his photos
- **26.** c) His mum paid for him when he reached home

27. Translate into English:

Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

- 28. Translate into Arabic:
 - يقضى بعض الشباب الكثير من وقتهم على الإنترنت هذه الأيام ولا يدرون المخاطر الكامنة هناك. فهم عرضة للعديد من أنواع الجرائم.
- 29. Student's own answer.